

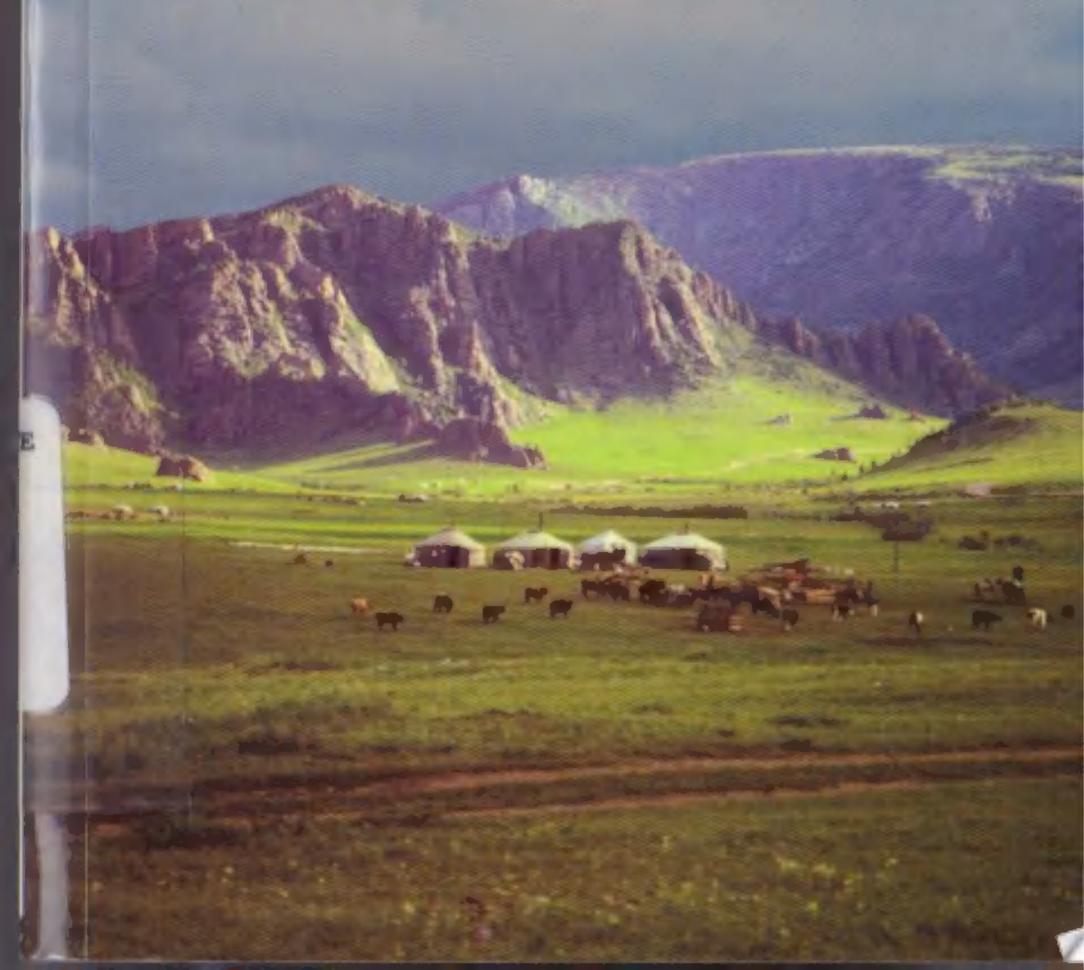
available sett

COLLOQUIAL

# MONGOLIAN

The Complete Course for Beginners

Alan J. K. Sanders and Jantsangiin Bat-Ireedüi



First published 1999 by Routledge 11 New Fetter Lane, London EC4P 4EE

Simultaneously published in the USA and Canada by Routledge 29 West 35th Street, New York, NY 10001

Reprinted 2002

Routledge is an imprint of the Taylor & Francis Group

© 1999 Alan J. K. Sanders and Jantsangiin Bat-Ireedüi

Typeset in Times by The Florence Group, Stoodleigh, Devon Printed and bound in Great Britain by Biddles Ltd, Guildford and King's Lynn

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reprinted or reproduced or utilised in any form or by any electronic, mechanical, or other means, now known or hereafter invented, including photocopying and recording, or in any information storage or retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publishers.

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

Library of Congress Cataloguing in Publication Data Sanders, Alan J. K.

Colloquial Mongolian: the complete course for beginners / Alan J. K. Sanders and Jantsangiin Bat-Ireedüi.

p. cm.

Includes bibliographical references and indexes.

1. Mongolian language—Textbooks for foreign speakers—English.

2. Mongolian language—Grammar. 3. Mongolian language—Vocabulary.

I. Bat-Ireedüi, Jantsangiin, 1964– II. Title. PL403.S25 1998

494'.2382421-dc21

98-22130 CP

ISBN 0-415-16714-0 (book) ISBN 0-415-16715-9 (cassettes) ISBN 0-415-28949-1 (CDs) ISBN 0-415 16716-7 (book, CDs and cassettes course)

## Contents

Foi	reword	vii
Ac	knowledgements	<b>kii</b>
Int	roduction	1
The	e alphabet	3
	nunciation	11
1	Сайн байна уу?	17
2	Hello!	34
	Хуухэдтэй хуний хэл амардагтүй A parent's tongue never rests	.)4
3	Ярихаар яв, хэлэхээр хий	53
	Actions speak louder than words	
4	Айвал бүү хий, хийвэл бүү ай	75
	Nothing ventured, nothing gained	
5	Давс хийвэл уустал, ажил хийвэл дуустал	93
	Never do things by halves	
6	Өргөстэй боловч өөрийн нутаг	116
	There's no place like home	
7	Ус уухгүй үхрийн толгойг бүү дар	138
	You can lead a horse to water	
8	Долоо хэмжиж нэг огтол	160
	Look before you leap	
9	Өргүй бол баян, өвчингүй бол жаргал	182
	Having no debt is wealth and no illness happiness	2.01
10	Эзэн хичээвэл заяа хичээнэ	201
	Heaven helps those who help themselves	

Grammar summary	220
Key to exercises	250
Mongolian-English vocabulary	277
Mongolian abbreviations	300
English-Mongolian vocabulary	303
Grammar index	323
Suffix index	326
Bibliography	328

## Foreword

Mongolia is the homeland of Genghis Khan and the heartland of the world's largest land empire created by him 800 years ago. The Mongol empire stretched at its greatest extent from Hungary to China and from Russia to Iran, yet the period of its growth and supremacy lasted little more than a century, from Genghis Khan's unification of the Mongol tribes in 1189 to the death of the fifth and last Great Khan, the Yuan Emperor Kubilai, in 1294. Weakened by feuding amongst the descendants of Genghis Khan, the Mongol empire soon began to disintegrate. The Ilkhans of Iran adopted Islam. In China the Ming overthrew the Yuan in 1368. In Russia the Golden Horde was defeated by Dmitrii Donskoi in 1380, the same year a Chinese military expedition destroyed Karakorum, the Mongol capital.

For the next two centuries Mongolia was again the theatre of struggle between tribal alliances. In the mid-16th century Altan Khan of the Tümed (eastern Mongols) established peace with Ming China and founded Khökhkhot, today the administrative centre of Inner Mongolia. Altan Khan was converted to Buddhism and in 1578 he received the Tibetan leader Sonam Gyatso in Qinghai and created for him the title 'Dalai Lama'. The 17th century was a period of rapid growth of Tibetan Buddhism in Mongolia. In 1639 Zanabazar, the four-year-old son of the Tüsheet Khan of Khalkha Mongolia, a descendant of Genghis Khan, was identified as the incarnation of a Buddhist saint and proclaimed leader of Mongolia's Buddhists with the title Öndör Gegeen, 'High Enlightened One'. His palace was nomadic until 1770, when it settled on the Tuul river where Ulan Bator stands today.

However, the Khalkha Mongols were under growing threat from the Jungarian Khanate of the Oirat Mongols to the west and from Manchu expansion to the south-east. In 1644 the Manchus captured Peking and proclaimed the Qing dynasty. It was the Manchus who made the distinction between Inner Mongolia, the Mongol lands close to Peking they conquered in the 1620s, and Outer Mongolia, the Khalkha territory beyond the Gobi. Seeking protection from the Jungarian Khanate, the princes of Khalkha made a treaty with the Manchus in 1691. The Manchus destroyed the Jungarian army, but stationed their own troops in Khalkha. For over 200 years Inner and Outer Mongolia were administered by Manchu governors. Russia acknowledged Qing control of Outer Mongolia and the northern border territory of Tannu Tuva in the 1727 Treaty of Kyakhta.

When Qing rule in China collapsed in December 1911, the princes of Outer Mongolia declared independence under the rule of their Buddhist priest-king the Bogd Khan ('Holy Khan'), but their appeal to the Mongols of Inner Mongolia to join them was unsuccessful. Neither the new Republic of China, nor Tsarist Russia, recognized Mongolia's independence, only its autonomy as part of China, although Mongolia concluded a treaty with Tibet. Taking advantage of the turmoil of the 1917 Bolshevik Revolution in Russia, the Republic of China reasserted control of autonomous Outer Mongolia in 1919, but the civil war in Russia spilled over into Mongolia, too. In 1921 Mongolian armed revolutionaries, accompanied by units of the Soviet Red Army, marched on the Mongolian capital from their base in Siberia. They forced the Chinese army to withdraw and dispersed the Cossacks under the command of the Tsarist Baron Roman von Ungern-Sternberg, who in an attempt to form his own government of Mongolia had briefly held the Bogd Khan prisoner.

A revolutionary government was installed in Mongolia, and when the Bogd Khan died the Mongolian People's Republic (MPR) was proclaimed in 1924, but only Soviet Russia recognised it. Under Comintern guidance a Soviet-style communist revolutionary party established a political monopoly in Mongolia. Soviet-controlled Tannu Tuva was accorded 'independence' as the People's Republic of Tuva and recognized by the MPR in a treaty of 1926. Stalin's rise to supreme power in the USSR and the subsequent pursuit of Stalinist methods in Mongolia brought death or slavery to tens of thousands of innocent people on false charges of treason and 'anti-party activity' – not only prime ministers, generals, and administrators, but also lamas, teachers, workers and herdsmen.

The 1930s were also overshadowed by the assertion of Japan's imperial power in Manchuria and Inner Mongolia, and Soviet preparations to confront it. After probing Mongolia's eastern

border, Manchurian and Japanese military units launched an invasion in August 1939. Mongolian troops and the Soviet Red Army halted the invasion at Khalkhyn Gol in a famous battle which may have persuaded Japan to give up plans for invading the USSR and turn towards the conquest of South-East Asia.

Mongolia was not directly involved in the Second World War until its last few days, when it joined the USSR in declaring war on Japan and invading Manchuria and northern China. In a plebiscite held under the terms of the 1945 Yalta agreement between Britain, the USA and the USSR, the people of Mongolia voted for independence. The MPR's independence was recognized by the Republic of China in 1946 and by the People's Republic of China in 1949. Britain established relations with Mongolia in 1963.

Soviet investment in Mongolia in the postwar period boosted the country's economy. A railway line built across Mongolia from the Soviet to the Chinese border became an important factor in relieving the disadvantages of Mongolia's landlockedness, providing it with revenues from transit traffic and linking it with new markets in Eastern Europe and China.

Mongolia's renewed link with China was soon broken again, first by the Sino-Soviet dispute over leadership of the communist movement, with its sharp military focus on territorial claims, and then by the Cultural Revolution in China, with its persecution of China's Mongols. It was only after Mikhail Gorbachev introduced perestroika, his own brand of political and economic reforms, and launched his Vladivostok initiative to improve relations with China, that Mongolia's geopolitical situation returned to normal.

Then in the 1990s the Mongols' world was turned upside down. In Eastern Europe communist regimes fell with the Berlin Wall until eventually their final bastion, the USSR itself, disintegrated in 1991. After seventy-odd years of close Soviet control, with hospitals, schools, subsidized jobs and military protection provided in exchange for political allegiance, Mongolia was projected into an unfamiliar world of multiparty politics and the dollar market. Mongolians had to learn quickly how to use their new-found political and economic freedom to survive.

Mongolia is now well along the road of political, economic and social transition. Its would-be reformed communists have finally lost political power, and a new and youthful government of democrats is providing the vital stimulus to drive the country on towards a fundamental reform of ownership which will revolutionize traditional patterns of life. With foreign aid and investment the

economic stagnation inherited from the Soviet past is giving way to new growth in the key economic areas of gold, copper, oil and cashmere. Mongolia's reform programme has the steady financial support of the international banking organizations and important bilateral donors like Japan, the USA and Germany.

Mongolia is a land of contrasts – blue skies, snowy mountains, forests of larch, grassy plains and sand dunes, fresh- and salt-water lakes, rivers full of fish, 30 million head of livestock and rich wildlife. Ancient ruins, brightly painted monasteries and the herders' white tents are scattered across the landscape. However, over half the population of 2.5 million live in towns, with smoky power stations, rusty pipes, shabby tenements, and crowded buses on pot-holed roads. Some of Mongolia's people are still hardy horsemen in colourful national costume, but others have become businessmen in suits. Life is tough for civil servants, the unemployed and pensioners, but the once nearly empty shops are full of goods, and this youthful nation has gained new freedoms and opportunities.

Before, it was hard for foreigners to visit Mongolia without official invitations or group visas and closely guided tours. Now there are virtually no restrictions on travel to and within Mongolia, at least, none other than the cost of getting there, and the crowded trains and planes and rough roads. Tourism is still in its infancy, but thousands of foreigners brave such small hardships every year to breathe Mongolia's fresh air, to see its rare animals and birds in their habitat, enjoy the peace of its vast open spaces, savour the scent of its wild flowers, and count a million stars in the Gobi's night sky.

Mongolians used to be educated and trained in Soviet ways of doing things, often in the Soviet Union itself, but today they travel, work and study freely in many parts of the world once closed to them. Hundreds of Mongolian students have studied in Britain. The first foreign language Mongols used to learn was Russian, with its vocabulary of technology and communist political correctness; now it is English, the language of international communication oriented towards computers and business.

The friendly people of Mongolia, with their devotion to their history and nomadic traditions, together with the great natural beauty and variety of their country, make a Mongolian experience unforgettable. I hope our book will help you prepare for your own.

It is customary for authors to say that they are grateful for the help and cooperation they have received, adding that the authors Mone are responsible for any errors. Our book is no exception. First I would pay tribute to my Mongolian colleague Bat-Ireedüi, with whom I worked together at SOAS for three years. It was thanks to his initiative that *Colloquial Mongolian* came to be written, but he had to return to the Mongolian National University in Ulan Bator before the text was completed. His contributions and his oversight of the Mongol text were essential.

I would also like to thank the distinguished Mongolist Professor Emeritus Charles Bawden for agreeing to read our manuscript and suggesting ways of improving the accuracy and clarity of our text. It was Charles Bawden who first introduced me to Mongol and the Mongols some 35 years ago, and he has been a true and generous friend ever since, always encouraging me to press on with Mongolian studies in the face of various difficulties.

I am grateful to Routledge's editors too, for their work on Colloquial Mongolian, in particular Editorial Assistant James Folan for his advice, Desk Editor Kate Hopgood, and Series Editor Gary King for his sharp eyes and incisive views which have helped greatly in formulating what I hope will prove to be a user-friendly text-book of modern spoken Mongolian, the first to be published in English for 30 years.

Alan J.K. Sanders
Reading
December 1998

# Acknowledgements

Page 134: Cartoon by G. Baidi from Tonshuul. (March 1996)

Page 170: Cartoon by S. Tsogtbayar from Ardyn Erkh. (25 August 1992)

Pages 201-2: Extracts from Mongolyn nuuts tovchoo in transcription by Acad. Damdinsüren. State Publishing House. (1990)

Page 205: Extracts from Chingis khaany tsadig by Acad. Natsagdorj. Ulan Bator: Soyombo Publishers. (1991)

Pages 207-9: Extracts from Vol III of BNMAUlsyn tüükh, edited by Acad. Shirendev. Ulan Bator: Academy of Sciences and State Publishing Committee. (1969)

Pages 211–15: Script samples from Mongol bichig by Choi. Luvsanjav, J. Luvsandorj and Tse. Sharkhüü. Ulan Bator: Ministry of Education (textbook division). (1986)

Page 217: Cartoon by L. Ölziibat from Ardyn Erkh. (Date unknown)

Page 218: Cartoon by S. Tsogtbayar from Ardyn Erkh. (16 June 1992)

Page 249: Stanzas from poem by Natsagdorj from a collection edited by Acad. Damdinsüren. Academy of Sciences and Mongol Writers' Union, State Publishing Committee. (1961)

Every effort has been made to obtain permission to reproduce copyright material. If any proper acknowledgement has not been made, or permission not received, we would invite copyright holders to inform us of the oversight.

## Introduction

There are about seven million Mongolian (Mongol) speakers in the world – over two million in independent Mongolia (the former Outer Mongolia and Mongolian People's Republic), around 3.7 million in Inner Mongolia, some 500,000 in other parts of China, and another half million or so in the Buryat and Kalmyk Republics and elsewhere in Russia. Khalkha Mongol, named after Mongolia's largest ethnic group and the country's official language, is also spoken in parts of Inner Mongolia and China's north-eastern provinces. Mongols living elsewhere in China and Russia and small related groups in Mongolia itself, such as the Oirats and Buryats, speak western and northern dialects of Mongol which are somewhat different from Khalkha.

Mongol is an Altaic language, distantly related to Turkic languages of Central Asia like Kazakh and Tuvan, and displays the typical features of agglutination and vowel harmony. Briefly, agglutination means that word-building is based on invariable stems to which single or multiple suffixes are added to modify meaning and achieve inflection (tense, case, etc.). Vowel harmony means that all the vowels in a word stem, and any suffixes attached to it, belong to one class of either 'back' or 'front' vowels, which are not mixed. While these features are unfamiliar to speakers of English and most other European languages, they need not present difficulties, once the principles have been grasped. They are explained in detail below.

The basic Mongol-Turkic vocabulary of Khalkha, centred on the nomadic way of life, has been subjected to a range of influences since the time of the Mongol empire (12th-13th centuries). Religious terminology in Tibetan and Sanskrit was spread by Buddhism, and Manchu and Chinese words and titles were added under Qing rule (17th-20th centuries). Russian technical terms and political phraseology were introduced under communist rule in this century,

and knowledge of Russian became widespread. Now that English has become the most popular foreign language in Mongolia, English words like 'broker', 'change' and 'hobby' have entered circulation in Mongol form.

The Mongols have written their language in several different scripts, the oldest and most durable of which, called the classical Mongol script, was introduced 800 years ago under Genghis Khan. Derived from Uighur writing and written in vertical columns, from left to right, it has 30 letters in initial, medial and final forms. Although the classical script is still used by Mongols in Inner Mongolia and elsewhere in China, its use in Mongolia was discouraged after the introduction of a modified Cyrillic (Russian) alphabet in the 1940s.

Khalkha having undergone many changes over the centuries, the language of the classical Mongolian script is now archaic, but it is important to Mongols both linguistically and culturally. Mongolia's democratic revolution in the early 1990s led to demands for the restoration of the classical script. However, its planned official reintroduction in 1994, initially for the government's official publications, was postponed until the next century because of the lack of proper preparation, a shortage of publishing facilities, and also resistance from the many Mongols who wanted to keep Cyrillic.

# The alphabet

The 35 letters of the Mongolian Cyrillic script are those of the Russian alphabet plus e and y, to represent ö and ü. Some Russian letters are pronounced differently in Mongol, and others are used only to write words which have entered Mongol from Russian.

The letters of the Mongolian Cyrillic alphabet have been given English written equivalents (transliteration). Because Mongolian Cyrillic has more letters than the English alphabet, some Cyrillic letters are represented by two or more English letters. Transliteration schemes like this are used for writing Mongolian place names in atlases and personal names in the printed media, although there are traditional English spellings for some Mongolian names, e.g. that of the capital Ulan Bator.

The table below lists the Mongolian Cyrillic alphabet in capital and small letters in Mongolian alphabetical order with the English equivalents plus an indication in brackets of what they sound like. Alphabets and transliteration schemes alone do not give an accurate guide to pronunciation, which is discussed in more detail from page 11.

There is no agreed international system of transliteration, and elsewhere you may come across variations like dzh for j (x), dz for z (3) and h for kh (x), as well as the use of additional diacritical marks (accents) e.g. ĭ for i (b). Some may have been carried over from schemes for transliterating the classical Mongolian script, e.g. š for sh.

Mongolian alphabet		English equivalent		
A.	a	a (like 'a' in 'cat')		
Б	б	b (like English 'b')		
В	В	v (like English 'v')		
Г	Г	g (like English 'g')		
Д	д	d (like English 'd')		

E	е	yö (like 'yea' in 'yearn')
Ē	ë	yo (like 'ya' in 'yacht')
Ж	ж	j (like 'j' in 'jewel')
3	3	z (like 'dz' in 'adze')
И	K	i (like 'i' in 'tin')
Й	並	i (only appears after another vowel)
K	K	k (like English 'k'; in loan words)
Л	Л	l (like English 'l')
M	M	m (like English 'm')
H	H	n (like English 'n'; final 'n' like 'ng' in
		'song')
0	0	o (like 'o' in 'hot')
θ	0	ö (like 'ea' in 'yearn')
П	п	p (like English 'p'; mostly in loan words)
P	p	r (like Scottish 'r'; initially in loan words)
C	c	s (like 's' in 'sun')
T	T	t (like 't' in 'took')
У	У	u (like 'aw' in 'awful')
Y	Y	ü (like 'u' in 'put')
Φ	ф	f (like English 'f'; only in loan words)
X	X	kh (like 'ch' in 'loch')
Ц	ц	ts (like 'ts' in 'cats')
Ч	ч	ch (like 'ch' in 'chat')
Ш	ш	sh (like 'sh' in 'shoe')
Щ	Щ	shch (as in 'cash-cheque'; in Russian
		words)
	ъ	no sound (after unpalatalised consonant;
		may be written as a double quotation
		mark or ignored)
	ы	y (like 'y' in 'marry')
	Ь	'short' i (after palatalised consonant; may
		also be written as a single quotation
		mark)
Э	3	e (like 'e' in 'den')
Ю	Ю	before y: yū (like 'you' in 'you'); before
		y: yū (like ū with an initial y sound)
Я	Я	ya (like 'ya' in 'yard')

The letters B, B and B cannot be capital or first letters in a word.

## Learning to read

Use the following practice words to familiarize yourself with the Mongolian Cyrillic alphabet. If you have the recordings you can also listen to the words. It will be useful to to study this section in conjunction with the recordings as the transcriptions are only approximate. These practice words are stressed (vowels underlined) to tell you which syllable to put most emphasis on when the word has more than one syllable.

Consonants			
Mongolian letter	Practice word	Transcription	Meaning
б	багш	bagsh	teacher
И	ваар	vaar	vase
P.	гэр	ger	felt tent, yurt
Д	дерев	döröv	four
Ж	жижиг	jijig	little
3	зуу	zuu	hundred
K	кино	kino	film
л	лам	lam	lama
М	муу	muu	bad
II	ном	nom	book
п	пуужин	puujing	rocket
p	орос	oros	Russian
C	сусэг	s <u>ü</u> seg	faith, belief
T	татвар	tatvar	tax
ф	фабрик	f <u>a</u> brik	factory
x	хаан	khaan	khan
ц	цэцэг	ts <u>e</u> tseg	flower
ч	чулуу	chuluu	stone
ш	щашин	shashin	religion

There is one letter which is neither consonant nor vowel, the so-called hard sign b which is written after unpalatized consonants e.g. Tobber (tov-yog) 'register'.

The words nam and tobser are from Tibetan. Others, like farm and nyykun, are of Chinese origin. Buddhism has provided mamuse from Sanskrit. The word nom for a book may have come from Greek. In modern times фабрик and нино have entered Mongolian via Russian. Mongolian has quite a large international vocabulary of metric measurements and technical terms.

Vowels: Mongolian letter	Practice	Transcription	Meaning
a	сандал	sandal	chair
aa	харандаа	kharandaa	pencil
8 TO 15	ec	yös	nine
ë	ëc	yos	rule, custom
II .	сонин	sonin	newspaper
ий	THĚM	tiim	yes
0	XOT	khot	town
00	одоо	odoo	now
Θ	өдөр	ödör	day
99	негее	nögöö	other/another
У	ус	us	water source
уу	уул	uul	mountain
Y	уд	űd	noon
YY	УУД	üüd	door, gate
ы	таны	tany	your
ь	LOBP	govi	Gobi 'desert'
33	энэ	en	this
39	ширээ	shiree	table
Ю	ЮМ	yum	something
Я	ЯC	yas	bone

## Learning to write

Now copy out the letters of the Mongolian Cyrillic alphabet from the table on pages 7 and 8.

The Cyrillic small  $\pi$  looks like the English handwritten g, p looks like English p, and c like English c.

For clarity it is usual to write a short horizontal line below the letter  $\mathbf{m}$  and above the letter  $\mathbf{\tau}$  (which when handwritten looks like the English m) to avoid confusion with  $\mathbf{x}$  and  $\mathbf{\pi}$  (which when handwritten look like English u and n).

Three of the letters,  $\pi$ ,  $\mathbf{m}$  and  $\pi$ , begin with a small 'hump' on the base line before the upward stroke.

Note also that in handwriting Y and y and Y and y have tails going below the line while Y and Y stand on the line.

## Writing the letters of the alphabet

		,		
A	a	A	a	Aa
Б	б	8	8	95 J
В	В	B	8	B 6
Γ	Г	T	2	T a
Д	Д	2		D 9
E	е	8	e	8 e
Ë	ë	8	ë	E ë
Ж	ж	20	20	M no
3	3	3	3	3 3
И	И	U	u	U u
Й	й	U	ú	Ü ŭ
К		K	K	Kn
Л	Л	1	1	As
M	M	M	w	M m
Н	Н	H	H	H n
0	0	0	0	0 0
	Θ	0		0 0
П	П	Th	n	M n

P P $\mathcal{P}$ $\mathcal{P}$ $\mathcal{P}$ $\mathcal{C}$ C $\mathcal{C}$ $\mathcal{T}$ $\mathcal$	
C c C C T T M m	P p
Т т Т т	8 0
y y y y y y y	M m
Y Y Y	y y
7	4 4
Ф ф \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$	ĝ ø
x x X x	96 x
	24, 4,
Ц ц <i>у</i> у ч ч ч	el r
ш ш Ши	Ul u
Щ щ Щ щ	Ш, щ
ъ	10
ы ы	66
ь 6	0
Э э Э э	9 9
Ю ю 70 ю	10 no
я я Я я	

## Practising writing words

When you have practised shaping the letters correctly, try linking several letters together to form words, as shown on page 9. Some letters are difficult to join together without changing their shape. This is particularly so of 6 which is best left with its tail in the air.

Write each word out at least twice, the first time with an initial capital letter, the second time with an initial small letter. Be careful not to mix up letters of similar shape.

## Word writing exercise

Mongolian		Practice		
lette		word		
Б	б	багш	Travu	багли
В	В	ваар	Baap	baap
r	Г	гэр	Top	20/0
Д	д	дерев	Dopob	доров
Ж	ж	ЛИЖИЖ	Musicus	эксиэксиг
3	3	зуу	344	344
K	K	кино	Kuno	KUNO
Л	л	лам	Aan	AGAL
M	M	муу	Myy	ngy
H	H	ном	Han	nan
П	п	пуужин	Myzneun .	пуужин
P	p	орос	Орос	opoc
C	C	сусэг	Cycse	oyese
T	т	татвар	Mambap	mambap
Φ	ф	фабрик	Dudpun	фабрик
X	X	хонь	96ono	00000
Ц	д	цэцэг	Ususe	4,94,98
Ч	q	чулуу	Hyryy	wynyy
Ш	ш	шашин	Ulanum	шашик
	ъ	товъёг	Mobroës	moboës
A	a	харандаа	96apangaa	оарандаа
E	е	ес	Ec.	ec
B	ë	ëc	Ec	öc
И	H(H)	ТИЙМ	Muin	meiin
0	0	одоо	Ogoo	ogoo
Θ	Θ	нөгөө	Horse	960800
У	у	уул	Yy i	yyı
Y	Y	үүд	Myg	449
	ы	таны	Manoe	таны
	ь	говь	Tobo	acelo
Э	9	пирээ	Ulupso	umpoo
Ю	Ю	MOM	Hom	POLAL
Я	Я	яс	Ac	386

## Alphabet recognition exercise

Test your knowledge of the alphabet and work out the meaning of the following words (most of which have come from Russian):

Useful words for the tourist:

паспорт, автобус, театр, такси, билет, люкс, концерт, цирк

Food and drink:

цай, ресторан, бутерброд, баар, шницель, кофе, бургер

Measurement:

сантиметр, килограмм, литр, километр, гектар, вольтметр

People and institutions:

инженер, компани, социал-демократ, институт, атташе, банк

Technical terms:

импорт, радио, цемент, телевиз, карбюратор, машин, атом

Sporting terms:

тенние, программ, гольф, спорт, хоккей, олимпиад

Cities of the world:

Лондон, Берлин, Москва, Улаанбаатар, Бээжин, Ром, Каир

Countries of the world:

Англи, Монгол, Орос, Герман, Хятад, Америк, Франц, Япон

So now why not practise writing these words?

# Pronunciation

00

The Mongol Cyrillic script is not phonetic, and transliteration alone, whichever scheme is used, can give only a rough indication of pronunciation. Some words have no standard spelling, some letters are not always pronounced, and others are pronounced in a different order from that written. The guide to pronunciation takes account of these features, but the recordings are an essential guide to the correct pronunciation.

## Consonants

As we learned how to recognize individual Cyrillic letters and write the Mongolian alphabet we saw that many initial consonants are much the same as in English. However, in speech most Mongols do not distinguish between p and f or kh and k (f and k are found in loan words). They also find words beginning with r difficult to pronounce without an initial vowel: e.g. Russian opoc.

The sound of some consonants is modified when they stand at the end of a word. Note in particular the following final consonants:

B sounds rather like w, final r like k and final A like t:

tav five
r бичиг bichig writing/letter
д гадаад gadaad foreign

Sometimes final ■ may be nasalized as ng e.g. nyyman (punjing) 'rocket', also can (sang) 'fund' or 'store'. A final vowel after ■ is not pronouced but ensures that the n is not nasalized e.g. >10 (en) 'this', nono (chon) 'wolf'. See page 20 (hidden g). A vowel is also written to distinguish voiced final -g from voiceless final -g: 6ara (bag) 'little', 6ar (bak) 'mask'.

## Short and long vowels

Now we are going to look at the pronunciation of Mongolian vowels in detail, distinguishing first between short and long vowels; this can affect meaning:

```
цас/цаас (tsas/tsaas) snow/paper
уд/ууд (üd/üüd) noon/door
ул/уул (ul/uul) sole/mountain
ул/уул (ül/üül) not/cloud
```

The short vowels are (in Mongolian alphabetical order):

```
■ (a) as the 'a' in 'cat': сандал (sandal) chair и (i) as the 'i' in 'tin': сонин (sonin) news(paper)
```

```
o (o) as the 'o' in 'hot': xor (khot) town
```

э (e) as the 'e' in 'den': энэ (en) this

All but one of the long vowels are doubled short vowels:

```
(aa) as the 'a' in 'bath': харандаа (kharandaa) pencil ий (ii) as the 'ea' in 'team': нем (tiim) yes oo (oo) as long 'au' in 'haunt': одоо (odoo) now (öö) as long 'ea' in 'earn': негее (nögöö) another yy (uu) as long 'aw' in 'awful': уул (uul) mountain үү (üü) as long 'u' in 'put': үүд (üüd) door, gate ы (у) as the 'i' in 'ill': таны (tany) your
```

ээ (ee) as long 'e' in 'den': mирээ (shiree) table

Short and long vowels can start with a glide or y-sound:

```
(ya) as the 'yu' in 'yum': (yamaa) goat

яа (yaa) as the 'a' in 'yarn': яам (yaam) ministry

ё (yo) as the 'ya' in 'yacht': ёс (yos) rule, custom

ёо (yoo) as the 'o' in 'yore': ёотоя (yooton) sugar lump

е (yö) as the 'yea' in 'yearn': ес (yös) nine

во (yu) as the 'you' in 'you': юм (yum) (some)thing

юу (yuu) as long 'you' in 'you': юу (yuu) what?

юу (yüü) as y plus long 'u' in 'put': (see page 13).
```

Vowels may combine to form diphthongs:

```
ай (ai) as the 'eye' in 'eyes': далай (dalai) sea
```

на (ia) as 'ia' in 'Asia': амиараа (amiaraa) individually

ой (oi) as the 'oy' in 'boy': нохой (nokhoi) dog

ya (ua) as 'wo' in 'wonder': хуаран (khuaran) barracks

уй (ui) as the 'wi' in 'will': уйлах (uilakh) to cry

үй (iii) as the 'u' in 'put' + 'i': үйлдвэр (iiildver) factory

эй (ei) as the 'ea' in 'yea': хэрэггэй (kheregtei) necessary

## **Vowel harmony**

Vowels are classed as 'back' or 'front' and are 'harmonized', that is to say, different classes do not mix within the same stem or its suffixes.

The back vowels produced at the back of the mouth are a, o and y (a, m and u) and their y-glide equivalents x, ë and to (ya, yo and yu), and the (ya), as in syprate (zurgaa) 'six', Homber (nomyn) 'of a book', smap (yamar) 'what', ëc (yos) 'rule, custom' and tom (youm) 'thing', etc.

The front vowels produced at the front of the mouth are ■ and y (ö and ü) and their y-glide equivalents e and ю (yö and yü), and э (e), as in өнөөдөр (önöödör) 'today', үүд (üüd) 'door', энэ (en) 'this' and ec (yös) 'nine'.

Note that the vowel to represents a back vowel in the combination to but a front vowel in to e.g. the interrogative particles after words ending in a long vowel:

Харандаа юу? (kharandaa yuu?) Is this a pencil? Ширээ юу? (shiree yüü?) Is this a table?

Initial ■ (i) is a front vowel: ирэв үү? (irvüü?) 'did come?' (unstressed short vowels like the э in ирэв almost disappear). The letter ■ is neutral and can be mixed with back or front vowels, e.g. ижил (ajil) 'work', эчигдэр (öchigdör) 'yesterday'.

Besides distinguishing vowel length (page 12) it is equally important to distinguish vowel quality. Note the differences between the following back- and front-vowel words:

зуу/зүү (dzuu/dzüü)	hundred/needle
олон/елен (olon/ölön)	many/thin
yc/yc (us/üs)	water/hair
ул/үл (ul/ül)	sole/not
уул/үүл (uul/üül)	mountain/cloud

ь (short i) as the 'i' in 'Gobi': говь (govi) Gobi

## Apparent exceptions to vowel harmony

The negative suffix -güi can be attached to back or front stems and their suffixes: Байхгүй (baikhgüi) 'There isn't any'; Байхгүй юу? (baikhgüi yuu) 'lsn't there any?' ирээгүй (ireegüi) 'didn't come'. Mongolian personal or place names which seem to break the vowel harmony rules consist of two (or more) separate elements: Сухбаатар (Sükh-baatar), Лувсанчулгэм (Luvsan-chültem), Өндөрхаан (Öndör-khaan), etc.

## Possible vowel sequences

The vowels of each syllable depend on those of the immediately preceding syllable. Note that o cannot follow a or y, a cannot follow o, m cannot follow o or y, and o cannot follow o, and y and y appear only in the first syllable. The following rules indicate what sequences are possible:

vowel of preceding syllable	vowel of following syllable
а, аа, ай, у, уу, уй, ю (юу) я, яа	(short) a (long) aa, yy, ы, юу, ш (diphthong) aй, уй, на, ну
э, ээ, ү, үү, үй, ю (юү)	(short) э (long) ээ, сэ, үү (diphthong) эй, үй
O. OO. OĬ, Ë, ËO	(short) o, ё (long) oo, ёo, уу, ы (diphthong) oй,
0, 00, c, co	(short) e, e (long) ee, ee, yy, (diphthong) eğ, yğ
и (first syllable only), ий	(short) и, э (long) ээ, үү, (diphthong) эй, үй

## Writing short vowels

Mort vowels not beginning word or not appearing in the first allable are written according to rules which categorize consonants 'vocalized' (with a vowel) or 'unvocalized':

```
vocalized consonants (7) м, н, г, л, б, в, п
unvocalized consonants (9) д, ж, з, с, т, х, ц, ч, ш
```

The seven vocalised consonants must be either preceded or tollowed by a vowel, e.g. "mouth', rypbah 'three'. The nine invocalized consonants may follow a '7' (see above) without a towel, e.g. rspr 'at home', cypq 'studying'. As and r cannot be the third consecutive consonant in a word a vowel must be inserted:

"g. мандана 'rises', халбага 'spoon'. Clusters of three consonants are possible if the middle one is a '9' (see above): e.g. арслан 'lion'. At the end of a word '77' or '97' are not possible, and '99' and '790' are rare.

## **Stress**

The stress in words with short vowels only falls on the first short vowel: олон (olon) 'many', ална (alan) 'kills', from to kill'.

In words with one long vowel or diphthong the stress is me the long vowel (diphthong): улаан (ulaan) 'red', далай (dalai) 'sea'. When followed by a long vowel a short vowel becomes indistinct or may disappear: (olon) 'many', олноо (olnoo) 'by many'.

In words with more than one long vowel the stress is on the penultimate long vowel: ганцаараа (gantsaaraa) 'on one's own', оорийгоо (ööriigöö) 'oneself', уучлаарай (uuchlaarai) 'sorry!'

Mongolian personal and place names may consist of two or more elements which are stressed separately: e.g. Гомбосурэн (Gombosiiren), Баян-Өлгий (Bayan-Ölgii), Улаанбаатар (Ulaan-baatar).

Words of Russian origin are stressed the Russian way: e.g. abrooyc (avtobus) 'bus', (mashin) 'machine', etc.

## Word formation

Dictionaries of Mongolian list noun stems without suffixes. The stems are the carriers of basic meaning, e.g. yyn (uul) 'mountain',

rsp (ger) 'yurt' (round felt tent), and by extension 'home'. Most Mongolian dictionaries list verbs as present-future verbal nouns (verb stem plus suffix -x with a linking vowel after consonants): e.g. cyy-x cyyx 'to sit'/'live', y3-9-x y39x 'to see'/'study'.

Suffixes modify the meaning of the stems and cannot occur alone. Derivational suffixes create new stems, e.g. from rsp the verb rspnsx (ger-lekh) meaning 'to get married' (i.e. 'acquire a home'), and rspnyynsx (ger-liii-lekh) 'to marry off'. Inflectional suffixes play the role of noun declension, e.g. rspnss (ger-lie) 'of a yurt' (lit. 'yurt-of'), or verb conjugation, e.g. rspnss (ger-lee) 'married' (lit. 'yurt-has acquired'). Noun stems may receive a series of suffixes: e.g. rspnishrsshrss 'with one's family' (rsp-ийн-х-эн-тэй-гээ 'yurt-of-person-s-with-own').

## Word order

The usual word order in a sentence is subject-object-verb, but not all these components need to be present. 'I study Mongolian' is Би монгол хэл үзнэ (bi mongol khel üzen) 'I Mongol language study.' Interrogative (бэ, уу?) or emphatic (туу дээ!) particles may follow the final verb, and sometimes a name or pronoun for emphasis: Сайн байна уу Та? (sain bainuu ta) 'How are you?'

# 1 Сайн байна уу?

#### In this lesson you will learn:

- Some forms of greeting and saying goodbye
- How to identify yourself
- · Various ways of expressing 'to be'
- Some simple questions and answers
- Personal and possessive pronouns

## Dialogue 1

### Брауныхан Улаанбаатарт The Browns in Ulan Bator

David Brown, a British businessman, and his wife Julie have arrived at Ulan Bator airport. As they are about to leave the terminal David is approached by Sükh, a Mongolian official he had met once before in London.

Сух: Ноён Браун!

Девид: Сух ээ! Сайн байна уу? Сух: Сайн. Та сайн байна уу?

Девид: Сайн байна аа!

Сүх: Сонин сайхан юу байна?

Девид: Тайван сайхан байна. Танайхан сайн уу?

Сүх: Сайн. Энэ хэн бэ? Девид: Энэ миний гэргий.

SUKH: Mr Brown!

David: Hey, Sükh! How are you? Sukii: I'm well. How are you?

DAVID: I'm fine.

SUKH: What's new?

DAVID: Nothing much. How's the family?

SOKH: Fine! Who's this? DAVID: This is my wife.

## Шинэ Yr Vocabulary

байна	am/is/are	та	you (polite)
бэ/вэ	(interrogative)	тайван	peaceful
гэргий	wife	танайхан	your family
МИНТИЙ	my	γγ/γγ/ιογ/ιογ	(interrogative)
ноён	Mr	ХЭH	who?
сайн	good, well	энэ	this
сайхан	nice; pretty	99(88/00)	(emphatic)
сонин	news		

## Language points

## The article

There is no definite or indefinite article in Mongolian, and in translating Mongolian into English 'the' or 'a', 'an' should be inserted as appropriate, according to context. However, Mongols do use the numeral 'one' (HOT) for 'a' man or 'a' person (HOT XYH).

## The verb 'to be'

The word байна is the present-future tense form of the verb байх 'to be' and means 'am', 'is' or 'are'. Like all Mongolian verb forms, байна is invariable for number and person: сайн байна 'am/is/are well'. Sometimes, however, the verb 'to be' is understood. In the dialogue, for example, Sükh asks David: Энэ хэн бэ? 'this who?' and David answers: Энэ миний гэргий 'this my wife'. Similarly one can say: Миний гэргий багш 'my wife teacher', etc.

#### Present-future tense -на

The present-future tense is formed by adding to the verb stem the auttix -на or one of its variants -но, -но, -но in keeping with the stem vowel; бай- байна and similarly бол- болно 'may', от- отно 'gives', пр- ирно 'comes', бүч- бүчно 'surrounds' and so on. The final a in байна is not pronounced. The final vowels in the other examples are poken between the last two consonants: болно (bolon), подоп) and ирно (iren). The short final vowel may be lengthened to emphasis: Байна аа! 'I/you/they) is/am/are (indeed)!'

## **Asking questions**

Mongolian uses interrogative particles to form questions from datements, for example, yy? in the question Cath Gatha yy? ('well o'are?'), where Gatha has back vowels. The front vowel equivalent is yy? (for back and front vowels, see page 13). Энэ ном уу, цэвтэр үү? 'Is it a book or a notebook?' After nouns ending in long vowels the yy? and yy? become toy? and toy? as in Энэ гэргий toy? ('this wife?').

In sentences containing an interrogative word ('who?' or where?', for example), the interrogative particles used are бэ or as in Энэ бэ? ('this who?') or Энэ юу вэ? ('this what?') бэ after words ending in -в, -л, -м ог -н and — after other letters.

## The suffixes -x and -xan

One way to express the idea of belonging is to attach the suffix to the possessor, e.g. та 'you', танай 'yours', танайх 'of yours'. The suffix "хан ("хон, "хэн) for people e.g. танайхан 'those of yours', 'your family' can be added to names: Брауныхан 'the Browns', Cyхийнхэн 'Sükh's family', observing vowel harmony.

## Noun cases

Dictionaries and vocabularies list noun stems without suffixes. When a suffixless stem is the subject of a sentence it is said to be in the nominative case. However, the stem of a noun which is the subject of a sentence may not be suffixless; for example, it may have plural suffix. Also, the fact that a stem is suffixless does not necessarily mean that it is the subject of sentence.

It is generally considered that Mongolian has seven grammatical cases. The other six are called the accusative, genitive, dative/locative, ablative, instrumental and comitative cases. According to the relationship with other words in the sentence, they modify meaning by the attachment of case suffixes to the stem. The cases, their suffixes, meaning and use are described in the text. Some grammarians consider that Mongol has an eighth case, the 'directional' using the word pyy 'towards', but I have treated pyy as a postposition.

## Fleeting n

Many Mongolian nouns include a 'fleeting n' which is not apparent in the suffixless stem or the accusative, instrumental and comitative suffixes, but appears in the genitive, dative/locative and ablative suffixes e.g. мод 'tree', 'wood' модыт 'the tree' (object) модоор 'by means of wood' модтой 'with wood', but модны 'of the tree' модноос 'from the tree'.

Used as an adjective attributively мод has the n-form модон meaning 'wooden'. Vocabularies may indicate in brackets the fleeting n e.g. мод(н), от if a vowel changes the full n-form e.g. арав (арван), морь (морин). Occurrence of fleeting n is irregular.

## Hidden |

Some Mongolian word stems ending in -н have a 'hidden g' sound, so that the is pronounced 'ng': e.g. туудан (shuudang). Similar words include байний 'building' and сан 'fund', 'treasury', Vocabularies may indicate hidden g e.g. туудан(r).

# Meeting and greeting people in Mongolia Greetings

The all-purpose Mongolian greeting Cağı баğı yy? means literally 'Arc (is) (you, he) well?' It is used for 'Good morning', 'Good afternoon', 'How do you do?' or 'How are you?' When visiting a family, especially in the country, you should agree that everybody's fine before you proceed to other matters.

The next question to ask is Cohuh caŭxah юу байна? 'news nice what is?', to which the answer is usually **Тайван байна** 'peaceful'/ 'quiet is' i.e. nothing much is happening.

These initial questions are not intended to elicit specific answers, that are expressions of goodwill. Such ritual questions and apponses are considered quite natural and necessary when nomads offer hospitality to strangers.

## Calling people by name

When David sees Sükh, he says Cyx 39! 'Hey, Sükh!' There is no contive case for nouns in Mongolian, but the effect is produced by adding a suitable long vowel to stress the name (or title) of the person called: Bar aa! 'Hey, Bat!' 300rg 60! 'Waiter!'

#### 1 xercise 1

Rourrange these sentences to make a conversation:

чанн байна aa! Сайн байна уу? Сүх ээ! Сайн. Та сайн байна уу?

#### Exercise 2

Answer these questions with reference to the dialogue:

- 1 Энэ хэн бэ?
  2 Сонин сайхан юу байна?
- Танайхан сайн байна уу? 4 Энэ ноён Девид Браун уу?
- З Тайван байна уу?

Answers are to be found in the Key to exercises.

#### Exercise 3

Till in the blanks in the following dialogue:

- I Девид: Сайн байна \_\_\_\_?
- 2 Сух: \_\_\_\_ Та сайн \_\_\_\_ уу?
- 3 Девид: Сонин \_\_\_\_ юу байна?
- 4 Сух: \_\_\_\_ байна. Танайхан \_\_\_\_ ?
- 5 Девид: Сайн \_\_\_\_!

## Dialogue 2

## Ta хаана суудаг вэ? Where do you live?

Julie Brown gets to know Sükh and finds out where he lives.

Сух: Хатагтай Браун? Сайн байна уу?

Жюли: Сайн. Та сайн байна уу?

Сүх: Сайн байна аа! Миний нэр Сүх. Таны нэр хэн бэ?

Жюли: Миний нэр Жюли. Таны овог нэр?

Сүх: Миний овог нэр Чулууны Сүх. Миний гэргийн нэр

Оюун. Та нар хаанаас ирсэн бэ? Жюли: Бид саяхан Лондон хотоос ирсэн.

Сух: Ядарсан уу?

Жюли: Үгүй.

Сүх: Та нар хаана сууж байна вэ?

Жюли: Бид «Улаанбаатар» зочид буудалд сууж байна. Та

хаана суудаг вэ?

Сүх: Би гэрийн хороололд суудаг.

Sükh: Mrs Brown? How are you?

JULIE: I'm well! How are you?

SUKH: I'm fine. My name is Sükh. What's your name?

JULIE: My name is Julie. What's your full name?

SUKIL: My full name is Chuluuny Sükh. My wife's name is Oyuun.

Where have you come from?

JULIE: We have just arrived from London.

SOKH: Are you tired?

JULIE: No.

SOKH: Where are you staying?

JULIE: We're staying at the Ulaanbaatar Hotel. Where do you live?

SUKH: I live in a yurt district.

Note: In the outer suburbs of Ulan Bator people live in rsp or yurts, round felt tents grouped in fenced compounds.

## Шинэ Yr Vocabulary

бид	we	гэр	yurt; home
буудал	stop, station	304MH	visitor, guest

MUNX	to come	угуй	no
emp	(plural particle)	хаана	where?
шир	name	хатагтай	Mrs, Miss
1100492"	father's name	хороолол	district
HBXNA	recently	хот	town
+ VVX	to live, sit	ядрах	to tire
FRHILI	VOHT		

## Language points

## The genitive case

the suffix for the genitive noun case (meaning 'of') is -н (-ын, илн) or -ы (-ил) added to the stem as follows:

-н to stems ending in a diphthong:

e.g. нохой - нохойн of a dog

-ы to back-vowel stems ending in -н:

e.g. Чулуун - Чулууны Chuluun's

-ын to back-vowel stems unless ending in ь, и, г, ж, ш, ч:

e.g. ном - номын of a book

-ийн to back-vowel stems ending in ь, и, г, ж, ш, ч:

e.g. багш - багшийн of the teacher

and to front-vowel stems with a short vowel:

e.g. rэр - гэрийн of a ger or yurt;

ий to front-vowel stems ending in -н:

e.g. хүн - хүний of a man

-ний to long front-vowel stems with fleeting n:

e.g. mирээ - mирээний of a table

-гийн to stems with hidden g:

e.g. шуудангийн of the post

Mongolians have no inherited surname. The genitive suffix attached to the father's name distinguishes it from a person's given (personal) name: Чулууны Бат 'Bat (son) of Chuluun'.

### The ablative case

The suffix for the ablative noun case (meaning 'from' or 'than') is -aac (-ooc, -ooc, -ooc, -оос) or -иас (-иос) added to the stem as follows:

back vowels: where from?

from town XOT - XOTOOC Улаанбаатараас from Ulan Bator front vowels: xyH - xyH990 from a man from the night шене - шенеес from a yurt гэр - гэрээс hidden g: шуудан - шуудангаас from the post fleeting n: ширээ - ширээнээс from the table back-vowel stems ending in m or b: from the school сургууль - сургуулиас

### The dative/locative case

The suffix for the dative/locative noun case (meaning 'at', 'in', or 'to') is - $\pi$  added to the stem after any vowel, diphthong or - $\pi$ , - $\pi$  or - $\pi$  (sometimes with a linking vowel):

back vowels: зочид буудалд at the hotel хотод in the town шууданд in the post front vowels: шөнөд in the night хүнд to the man fleeting n: ширээ – ширээнд to the table

Otherwise the suffix is -T after -c, -r, -p:

гэрт in the yurt Улаанбаатарт in Ulan Bater

with some exceptions including улс - улсад and ус - усанд.

## Personal pronouns

The personal pronouns in the first and second person are:

би 1 бид we чи you (to a child or close friend) та you (polite or plural)

For the third person he/she/it is usually **TSP** 'that' or **TSP XYH**, 'that person', and 'they' **TSA**. It is possible to specify the sex of the third person by adding 'man' **SP** (**SPORTSH**) or 'woman' (**SMORTSH**) e.g. **TSP SM XYH** 'that female person' **SHO SP XYH** 'this male person'.

## Plural particle нар

The personal pronoun та (and тэд 'those') may attract the plural particle нар which is also used after nouns designating people: та нар 'you' (all), тэд нар 'they', нар 'lamas', багш нар 'teachers', etc.

## Possessive pronouns

the possessive pronouns are the same as the personal pronouns in the genitive case form.

	Singular		Plural	
d person	миний	my your (thy)	манай/Пилний	our
ad person	таны (т)үүний	your	танай тэдний	your their

unginally the inclusive манай meant 'ours and yours' while the xclusive билний meant 'ours but not yours', a distinction now hardly made. The possessive form of та нар із та нарын.

#### Present-future verbal nouns

Verbal nouns are a class of words which grammatically can act as verbs or nouns. Verbal nouns in stem plus -x are called present-tuture verbal nouns e.g. байх 'to be', like the English infinitive. They may be used in questions: Та энд байх уу? 'Will you be here?' They may also attract case suffixes like ordinary nouns: Би Пондонд байхдаа 'When I am in London'.

## Perfective verbal noun -can

The perfective verbal noun with suffix -сан (-сон, -сон, -сон, -сон) is widely used to describe a completed action in the past: e.g. ирсэн is formed from the verb stem ир (from ирэх 'to come' plus the suffix -сэн (ирсэн 'came'). Similar constructions include суу-сан lived', or 'sat', (from суух), ор-сон 'entered' (орох), ор-сон 'gave' (огох), еtc.

## Iterative verbal noun -даг

The iterative verbal noun with suffix -даг (-дог, -дег, -дег) indicates a regular, habitual, repeated or long-term activity: e.g. суудаг is formed from the verb stem cyy (from cyyx 'to live', or 'sit') plus the suffix -даг: суудаг 'live' ог 'lives' (regularly), similarly: бай-даг, ор-дог, өг-дөг 'is', 'enters', 'gives' (habitually). The iterative is of the present tense when it stands alone, but may be modified by the tense of other verbs later in the sentence.

## Imperfective converb -ж/ч

Converbs express an action that precedes, accompanies or modifies that of the main verb. The imperfective converb describes a continuous action. The suffix -xx is attached to the verb stem and followed by байна: e.g. сууж байна 'am/is/are living/sitting' from суух, бичиж байна 'writing' from бичих. After stems ending in -r and most ending in -в or -p instead of -xx we write -ч: огч байна 'giving' from огох, сурч байна 'studying' from сурах. Exceptions include орж байна 'entering' from орох.

#### Names and forms of address

At present Mongols have one given name (HSP) which serves as both forename and surname. Wives do not adopt their husband's name on marriage. Short or familiar forms of the given name are used within the family or among close friends.

To distinguish themselves from others with the same given name. Mongols precede it with their father's name (sometimes their mother's name) plus the possessive (genitive case) suffix (see page 23) – Batsin Дорж, Доржийн Дулмаа, etc., where Dorj's father's name is Bat and Dulmaa's father's name is Dorj. The Mongols call their father's name (patronymic) obor which originally meant 'clan'. The patronymic is often reduced to the initial letter – B. Dorj, D. Dulmaa, etc.

When they write their patronymics in English some Mongols confusingly omit the possessive suffix – Bat Dorj, Dorj Dulmaa, etc.

Mongols address one another by name, relationship or job title, perhaps plus the word ryah, which is a polite form, or an appropriate long vowel: Cyx ryah! 'Mr Sükh!', Aab aa! 'Father!', Xyh ryah! 'Excuse me, sir!'

Children address their parents and elder siblings as **7a**, and wives used to do the same to their husbands, although that custom is no longer so firmly entrenched.

Foreign men are addressed as **noën** 'mister', (originally a prince, and the king in chess), and women as **xararran**.

Note that you ask 'Who is your name?' For more about Mongolian personal names see page 247.

#### Exercise 4a

Put the verb stems into the completed past verbal noun form (stem plus -сан): e.g. бай-сан байсан 'was'.

1	нц	'ate'	2	үз	'saw'	3	ир	'came'
4	унш	'read'	5	бич	'wrote'	6	сур	'studied'

#### Exercise 4b

Put the same stems into the imperfective converb form (stem plus ж or -ч added to байна): e.g. суу-ж байна 'is living'.

#### Exercise 5

Translate the following into Mongol: e.g. би байсан 'I was.'

1 I am.	2 They wrote.	3 You came.
4 He was.	5 They are.	6 We lived.

#### Exercise 6

translate the following sentences into Mongolian:

- 1 Hey, Sükh! Is this your wife?
- ! Bat! Mrs Brown is tired.
- Waiter! What's your name?
- 4 My name is David.

## Dialogue 3

Ta юу хийдэг вэ? What do you do?

After a discussion of language skills and jobs Sükh and the Browns ugree to meet again later.

Сух: Та юу хийдэг вэ?

Жюли: Би Лондоны их сургуулийн багш.

Сух: За, та монгол хэл мэдэх үү?

Жюли: Тийм ээ, би монгол хэл жаахан мэднэ. Би монгол хэл сурч байна. Та монгол хэлний багш уу? Сүх: Биш, биш, би багш биш, би орчуулагч байна. Миний гэргий Оюун эмч, гэвч англи хэл мэдэхгүй. Би гадаад

харилцааны яаманд ажиллаж байна.

Девид: Таны ажил сайн уу?

Сүх: Муугүй шүү. За, би яарч байна. Дараа баяртай!

Девид: За, баяртай!

SUKH: What do you do?

JULIE: I'm a London University lecturer.
Sükii: So you know Mongolian then?

Julie: Yes, I do know Mongolian a bit. I am studying Mongolian.

Are you a Mongolian language teacher?

SUKH: No, I'm not a teacher, I'm a translator. My wife Oyuun

is a doctor, but she doesn't speak English. I am working

at the Ministry of External Relations.

DAVID: Is your work OK?

Sükh: It's not bad. Look, I'm in a hurry. See you later!

DAVID: OK. Goodbye!

## Шинэ Үг Vocabulary

AMUI	work	монгол	Mongol(ian)
ажиллах	to work	муугүй	not bad
англя	English	мэдэх	to know, speak
багш	teacher	орчуулагч	translator
баяртай	goodbye	сургууль	school
бег	1	THŮM	yes
биш	not (this but)	харилцаа	relations
гадаад	foreign, external	XZÜX	to do, make
PET	but	хэл(н)	language, tongue
дараа	later	шүү	certainly (final particle)
<b>WASKER</b>	a little	PMC	doctor
38	OK, well, so, etc.	яам(н)	ministry
EX	big, great	яарах	to hurry

## Language points

## More about the genitive case

Further examples of the genitive case (page 23) in Dialogue 3 illustrate more back and front vowel suffixes:

back vowels: -ын as in зочид буудлын 'hotel's', or -(н)ы as in харилцаа - харилцааны 'of relations', because of the long

final vowel; сургууль follows the rule that a back stem ending in ь adds -ийн: сургуулийн 'of school'.

front vowels: -(н)ий as in хэл - хэлний 'of language', because of fleeting n.

#### Gender of nouns

Mongolian has no grammatical gender, that is, no masculine, feminame or neuter forms of nouns or pronouns. Nouns are not gender specific, so that e.g. баги 'teacher', эмч 'doctor' or орчуулагч translator' can be a man or a woman. The ending -ч ог -гч is a common marker for such nouns. While эмч is formed from another цоип, эм 'medicine', орчуулагч is a verbal noun of agent derived from the verb орчуулах 'to translate'.

### **Derivation of nouns**

The traditional Mongolian word for 'businessman' is наймаачин from наймаа 'trade'. The word худалдаачин from худалдаа (also !trade') has tended to mean a profiteer, while худалдагч is a shop assistant. Under the growing influence of English, the word бизнесмен 'businessman' has entered the Mongolian vocabulary and begun to lose the derogatory sense that it once had in Russian. Derivations from this are бизнесч and бизнес эрхлэгч 'business manager'.

## Word pairs

Nouns which are one word in English may be two in Mongolian, for example, зочид буудал 'hotel' (lit. 'visitors' dismounting-place') und мөнгөн тэмдэгт 'banknote' (lit. 'silver'/'money marked'). True word-pairs create a new if related meaning: халбага 'table-ware', 'glass and spoon', өндөр "height', 'high low'.

## Noun plurals

In the Mongolian for 'hotel' **зочид буудал** the word **зочид** is the plural of 'a visitor' or 'guest'. The plural suffix -д (not to be confused with the dative/locative case suffix -д) replaces the last letter of a small number of nouns: **нохой** - **ноход** dog(s). The plural suffix -c is also possible: **үг** - **үгс** word(s).

However, most noun plurals are formed with the suffixes -(н)ууд/-(н)үүд от -чууд/-чүүд:

- номууд book(s), гэр - гэрүүд yurt(s)

хүүхэд - хүүхдүүд child(ren) dropping the short vowel э

ямаа - ямаанууд goat(s) и separating the long vowels

монгол - монголчууд Mongol, Mongols

бусгуй - бусгуйчууд woman, women

The Mongols don't use plurals as much as English speakers, especially where the number is not specific, or where particular number is specified: Hor south 'a guest', typeah 'three guests', onoh 'many guests'.

## Adjectives and adverbs

Mongolian adjectives stand before the noun(s) they describe and are uninflected: сайн 'good', сайн гэр 'a good tent (yurt)'; их 'big', сургууль 'big school' ('university'), сургуулийн багш 'big school's teacher', 'university lecturer'. Adjectives may also be adverbs: хурдан морь 'a fast horse', and хурдан (from явах 'to go') 'goes quickly'.

## **Negatives**

The basic word for 'no' in Mongolian is үгүй. When 'no' means 'not this (but that)' the Mongols say биш after the word negated: e.g. Үгүй, би багш биш, би орчуулагч (байна) 'No. I'm not a teacher, I'm a translator.'

The Mongolian negative suffix -ryh (from yryh) is very useful for saying 'without', 'lacking', 'not (bad)', 'not (doing something)', etc. because it can be attached to verbal nouns, adjectives and nouns without observing vowel harmony. For example, **6axryh** the present-future verbal noun form of the verb 'to be' **6axr** plus -ryh may mean 'there isn't any', or 'he isn't here' according to context.

This is the usual way of negating verbs e.g. болох уу? 'May I?' Is it permitted?' болно (bolon) 'You may', etc. болохгүй 'may uot', 'not allowed'. Similarly, мэднэ (meden) 'I/you/he/we/they ыном' and мэдэхгүй 'don't know'; ирнэ (iren) 'will come' ирэхгүй won't be coming'; сууна (suun) 'lives' суудаггүй 'doesn't live'; ойигоко (oilgon) 'understands' ойлгохгүй 'doesn't understand'.

Adjectives and nouns are negated with -ryh in the same way:

муугуй 'not bad', багагүй 'not a little'; хүнгүй 'without person',
deserted', усгуй 'without water', 'waterless' and хэрэггүй 'no
matter', 'unnecessary'.

## When you don't understand

Би ойнгохгүй байна. And what you can do next is say, 'Please speak a little more slowly!' Та жаахан удаан ярина уу? The verb порых 'to speak' and a question in the present-future tense is a polite request. Another useful phrase is, 'Please repeat what you mid': Дахиад нэг давт! 'again one repeat!', using the present unperative (давт) which is the same as the stem (of давтах).

### **Farewells**

David replies баяртай! (lit. 'with joy', but the usual way of saying goodbye') when Sükh says to the Browns дараа баяртай! 'afterwards with joy', in the sense 'see you later!' The word баяр is also ut the root of баярлалаа! (bayarlaa) 'thank you!' from баярлах 'to thank' also 'to be happy'.

#### Exercise 7

Choose answers which fit the dialogues:

- 1 Сүх багш уу?
  - (а) Тийм, Сүх багш.
  - (b) Биш, Сух багш биш.
- . Брауныхан саяхан Улаанбаатарт ирсэн үү?
  - (а) Тийм, Брауныхан саяхан Улаанбаатарт ирсэн.
  - (b) Үгүй, Брауныхан Улаанбаатарт ирэхгүй.
- 3 Хатагтай Браун монгол хэл мэдэх үү?
  - (а) Тийм, Хатагтай Браун монгол хэл мэднэ.
  - (b) Үгүй, Хатагтай Браун монгол хэл мэдэхгүй.

- 4 Сүх зочид буудалд суудаг уу?
  - (а) Тийм, Сух зочид буудалд суудаг.
  - (b) Үгүй, Сүх зочид буудалд суудаггүй.

#### Exercise 8

Translate into Mongolian:

- 1 We live in London.
- 2 He is a university lecturer.
- 3 I am not translator, I am a schoolteacher.
- 4 They are in a hurry.
- 5 This school is a big school.

#### Exercise 9

Match the response on the right to the question on the left:

- (1) Сайн байна уу?
- (а) Түүний нэр Оюун.
- (2) Сухийн гэргийн нэр хэн бэ?
- (b) Үгүй, тэр Лондонд суудаг.
- (3) Жюли багш уу?
- (с) Тэд Лондон хотоос ирсэн.
- (4) Девид монгол хүн үү? (d) Сайн. Та сайн байна уу?
- (5) Брауныхан хаанаас ирсэн бэ?
- (е) Тийм, их сургуульд ажиллаж байна.

### Exercise 10

Answer these questions about yourself:

- 1 Таны иэр хэн бэ?
- 2 Та Лондон хотод суудаг уу?
- 3 Та их сургуульд ажиллаж байна уу?
- 4 Та монгол хэл сайн мэдэх үү?
- 5 Та монгол гэрт суудаг уу?

#### Exercise 11

Answer the following questions in the negative:

- 1 Сүх Лондонд суудаг уу?
- 2 Девид багш уу?
- 3 Жюли эмч үү?

🕂 Оюун их сургуульд ажиллаж байна уу? Брлуныхан Москвагаас ирсэн үү?

## Dialogue for comprehension 1

111	Ноён	Браун,	сайн	байна	vv?
	TAMAT	ar breeze and	O-CHILLAN	CHERTIN	3 1 4

Сүх ээ! Сайн байна. Та сайн байна уу? 14 (0143) Сайн байна аа! Сонин сайхан юу байна? 111

Тайван байна. Танайхан сайн уу? Tempo

Сайн байна аа! Энэ хэн бэ? Энэ Хатагтай Браун уу? 1 11.

Тийм ээ, энэ миний гэргий Жюли. Henry, C.

Сайн байна уу? 1 12.

Сайн. Та сайн байна уу? PROBET.

Сайн байна аа! Миний нэр Сүх. Энэ миний гэргий 111 Оюун.

Оюун, сайн байна уу? Та англи хэл мэдэх үү?

Үгүй, би англи хэл мэдэхгүй, харин орос хэл сайн Olover мэднэ.

Та юу хийдэг вэ? эк юли:

Би Улаанбаатарын пэг эмпэлэгт эмч хийдэг. Та хаана CHOVE: ажиллаж байна вэ?

Би Лондоны их сургуульд ажиллаж байна. фаоли:

Та нар саяхан ирсэн үү? FROVEL

Бид Лондон хотоос очигдор ирсэн. Чевид:

1 YX1 Та нар хаана сууж байна?

Бид «Улаанбаатар» зочид буудалд сууж байна. «Улаанбаатар» зочид буудал сайн байна уу? 1 1 X Муугүй шүү. За, бид яарч байна. Баяртай! Пенид:

Баяртай! Chovic

			<del></del>	
opoc	Russian	пецение	hospital	
очигдөр	yesterday	харин	hut	

# 2 Хүүхэдтэй хүний хэл амардаггүй

A parent's tongue never rests

#### In this lesson you will learn:

- About family relationships
- How to count from 1-30
- Some uses of the accusative (objective) case
- The present and future imperative
- Some other new verb forms

## Dialogue 1

Танай байр хэдэн өрөөтэй вэ? How many rooms in your flat?

David and Julie visit Sükh's brother Bat and sister-in-law Delgermau in their Ulan Bator flat.

Девид:

Сайн байна уу, Бат аа?

Бат:

Сайн. Та сайн байцгаана уу?

Девид:

Сайн байна аа.

Бат:

За алив ор, ор. Би Сухийн дуу. Энэ миний

гэргий.

Дэлгэрмаа:

Сайн байна уу? Миний нэрийг Дэлгэрмаа гэдэг.

Таны алдрыг хэн гэдэг вэ?

Девид:

Намайг Девид гэдэг.

Жюли: Дэлгэрмаа: Намайг бол Жюли гэдэг. За, ийшээ ор. Энэ манай зочны өрөө.

Жюли:

Яасан сайхан өрөө вэ?

Бат:

За сууцгаа. Манай зочны өрөөнд диван, хоёр

ширээнээс гадна олон сандал байна.

Жюли:

Танай байр хэдэн өрөөтэй вэ?

Barr

Манай байр нэг том зочны өрөө, гурван

унтлагын өрөөтэй. Бас гал зуухны өрөө, жижиг халуун усны өрөөтэй. Хажууд нь жорлон бий.

Д-опгэрмая:

Та нар өлсч, ундаасч байна уу? Цай уух уу?

Жюли:

Би сүүтэй цай уумаар байна.

DAVID:

How are you, Bat? I'm well. How are all of you?

Byrn DAVID:

Fine!

BAR

Well, come on in. I'm Sükh's younger brother. This

is my wife.

DELGERMAA:

How are you? My name is Delgermaa. What is your

name?

DAVID:

Tru #F:

I'm called David. And I'm called Julie.

DIEGERMAA:

So, come this way! This is our sitting room.

BULLET.

What a nice room!

BATT

Please take a seat. Besides the divan and two tables

there are plenty of chairs in our sitting room.

h 1 11:5 BAU

How many rooms are there in your flat? Our flat has a big sitting room, three bedrooms, as

well as a kitchen and a small bathroom. The lava-

tory is next to it.

DISGERMAA:

Are you hungry or thirsty? How about some tea?

THE BEG

I would like to drink some milky tea.

## Шинэ Үг Vocabulary

name (honorific)	дүү	younger sibling
Come on then!	MUKHI	small
flat	жорлон(г)	lavatory
to be (several)	зуух	stove
also	еспики	this way
is, are	НЬ	of him, his, hers
is (emphatic)	ОЛОН	many
hesides	орох	to enter
fire	елсех	to be hungry
three	ерее	room
to speak, say	санцал	chair
sofa	сууцгаах	to sit (several)
	Come on then! flat to be (several) also is. are is (emphatic) besides fire three to speak, say	Come on then! жижиг  flat жорлон(г)  to be (several) зуух  also ийнээ  is. are нь  is (emphatic) олон  besides орох  fire өлсөх  three өрөө  to speak, say сандал

САА	milk	халуун	hot
TOM	big	хоёр	two; and
ундаасах	to be thirsty	хэдэн	how many?
унтлага	sleeping	цай	tea
ус(усан)	water	ширээ	table
уух	to drink	яасан	what a
XXXVV	side		

Note: Although cyyran nan is translated as 'milky tea' it is mostly cow's milk boiled together with butter, salt and tea-brick shavings. It is quite tasty, but it is not a cup of tea!

## Language points

### The accusative case

The accusative case suffix marks the direct object of a verb. Its use is obligatory for persons and deities, but not for animals and objects unless particularly specified: Та Доржийг үзсэн үү? 'Did you see Dorj?' Where the suffix is not required, the accusative form is the same as the suffixless: Та монгол мэдэх үү? 'Do you speak (know) Mongolian?'

The suffixes are:

-r for stems ending in a long vowel or hidden g:

гэргий - гэргийг, шуудан - шууданг

-ыт for back-vowel words:

ном - номыг, хот - хотыг

-mar for front-vowel words and, disregarding vowel harmony, all words ending in -r, -m, -m and b:

нэр - нэрийг, гэр - гэрийг, хүн - хүнийг, багш багшийг

Final interconsonantal vowels except in proper names are dropped: алдар - алдрыг.

The accusative of the personal pronouns is as follows.

	Singular	Plural
1st person	намайг	биднийг (маныг)
2nd person	чамайт/таныт	та нарыг
3rd person	(т)үүнийг	тйинде(т)

## What's your name?

You can of course just give your name without a verb e.g. миний пор Девид, but in this dialogue Delgermaa gives hers differently: Миний нэрийг Дэлгэрмаа гэдэг. There are two points to notice. First, she uses the word гэдэг 'called' which is the habitual form (iterative verbal noun) of гэх 'to say', and second, the word 'name' attracts the accusative case suffix. Literally, she says 'of me (name acc) Delgermaa called'. Then, when she asks David his name, she uses a different word for 'name' алдар which is an honorific form (used of others but not of oneself): Таны алдрыг хэн гэдэг пэ? David's simplified reply is 'me David called': Намайт Девид тэдэг.

## The comitative case: to have

The comitative case meaning 'together with' has the suffixes:

-тай or -той for back-vowel words:

ном - номтой

with a book

юу - юутай

with what? (thing) and

-тэй for front-vowel words:

ерее - ереетэй

with a room

The comitative case helps express the idea of having:

Танай байр хэдэн өрөөтэй вэ?

How many rooms does your flat have?

Манай байр гурван өрөөтэй.

Our flat has three rooms.

Их дэлгүүр олон тасагтай.

The department store ('big shop') has many departments.

The comitative of the personal pronouns is as follows:

	Singular	Plural
1st person	надтай	бидэнтэй (мантай)
2nd person	чамтай/тантай	та нартай
3rd person	йстнүү(т)	(т)эдэнтэй

For the ablative of the personal pronouns see p. 224.

## Present imperative

The present tense imperative is the same as the verb stem: opox 'to enter' op- (verb stem) Op! 'Come in!' and similarly cyyx 'to sit' cyy- (verb stem) Cyy! 'Take a seat!'

For greater politeness you can add an appropriate pronoun: Ta op! Ta cyy! or you can repeat op! cyy! cyy!

## **Participatory verbs**

To describe activity of several people or groups of people Mongol has a class of verbs called participatory verbs, formed by adding the derivational suffix -maa- to the verb stem. For example, Bat asks his visitors Ta came bandara yy? (ban-maa-ha) instead of the more usual Came bandara yy? Other users of the participatory form would be teachers to a class of schoolchildren, officers to soldiers, etc. However, it would be quite acceptable to emphasise plurality by saying Ta hap came bandara yy? to a small group. Other examples include aburaax 'to all go together' (from spax) and cyymraax 'to all sit together' (from cyyx).

## Cooperative verbs

Mongolian cooperative (or reciprocal) verbs are formed by adding the derivational suffix -m- to the verb stem, to describe activities in which a person joins in with another. Examples: танилцах 'to get to know someone' (from таних, 'to know'), ярилцах 'to converse' (ярих 'to speak'), суралцах 'to study together' (сурах, 'to study').

## Would you like to?

The word уумаар is formed from the stem yy- of the verbal noun yyx 'to drink' with the suffix -маар and combined with the verb 'to be' as уумаар байна means 'would like to drink': Би юм уумаар байна 'I would like something to drink.' The variants are -моор, -мөөр, -мээр, e.g. Би юм идмээр байна 'I would like something to eat.' (from идэх 'to eat'). То say you wouldn't want to do something add the negative suffix -гүй: Би уумааргүй байна 'I don't want to drink.' This -маар form can be used attributively: узмээр кино 'a film worth seeing', унипмаар 'readable'. There is a parallel form in -ууштай: анхаарууштай асуудал 'a matter that should be looked into' (from анхаарах 'to pay attention to'). Negative

adjectives can be formed using the suffix -mry#: yymry# 'undrink-able', mpmry# 'inedible', etc.

## Past perfect tense

We noted (page 31) that баярлалаа! means 'thank you!' It is an example of use of the past perfect tense, formed by adding the suffix -лаа to the stem of баярлах 'to thank'. Similarly, сайхан танилцлаа 'pleased to meet you' from танилцах 'to make someone's acquaintance' means 'pleased to have met you', even when said on first meeting. The sense is a completed act in the speaker's immediate past or future.

#### The verb яах

Julie comments cantan epee By 'what a nice room!' in the form of a question where sacan is the perfective verbal noun form of the interrogative verb to do what?'. Uses include Sacan 69? 'What happened?' and tom 'how big!'

## **Postpositions**

Words like гадна 'besides' and хажууд 'next to' are called postpositions because they follow the nouns they govern; хажууд is itself a noun in the dative/locative case meaning 'on the side'. Postpositions put the nouns they refer to into particular grammatical cases: гудамжны хажууд 'by the side of the road' and ууднай дэргэд 'at the door'; other postpositions attracting the genitive include дор 'under', дотор 'inside' and дунд 'amidst'. The postposition 'together with' requires the comitative case чамтай хамт 'with you', гадна the ablative case туунээс гадна 'besides that' and дээр 'on' the suffixless case with fleeting n: пирээн дээр 'on the table'.

## Postpositional possessive pronouns

Short and unstressed forms of the possessive pronouns are placed after the nouns they refer to: xaxyyx 'side-at' 'of it (is)' xopnous 'the lavatory'. The third-person has is used for both singular and plural: how has 'book of his/hers/theirs' the words being run together and the linked pronounced rather like the last syllable of 'salmon'. The first-person forms are (singular) and (plural) and the second-person warms (singular) and rank (plural).

Sometimes **THES** does not have its literal meaning 'thine' but is added for emphasis: **TSP** 'that one there'.

#### Батын байр

Батын аав, ээж унтлагын		хүүгийн [ унтлагын өрөө [
	↑ =	⇒
30дны өрөө	←	охины ерее [ ⇒
гал зуухны өрөө		халуун усны өрөө
	тасалгаа	⇒ жорлон

## ⇒ үүд ] цонх

Note: The words ax and ager, the more formal words for 'mother' and 'father', appear in such terms as ax open 'homeland' and ax xan 'mother tongue', ager ax (or aas about) 'parents' and ager "sire' (Man = animal, livestock).

эцэг father	эх mother	аан dad, pa	ээж тит, та
охии daughter	xyy son	цонх(н) window	
үүд(н), хаалга(н)	door or gate	уудний тасалгаа	entrance hall

#### Exercise 1

<ul> <li>Батын гэргийн Дэлгэрмаа гэдэг.</li> <li>Дэлгэрмаагийн зочны олон сандал байн</li> <li>Батын байр гурван өрөөтэй юм.</li> <li>Халуун усны өрөөний жорлон байна.</li> <li>Жюли сүүтэй цай байна.</li> </ul>	1.1	Il in the missing words:	
Батын байр гурван өрөөтэй юм. Халуун усны өрөөний жорлон байна.	1	Батын гэргийн	Дэлгэрмаа гэдэг.
1 Халуун усны өрөөний жорлон байна.	3	Дэлгэрмаагийн зочны	олон сандал байна
	1	Батын байр гурван	өрөөтэй юм.
Жюли сүүтэй цай байна.	-[	Халуун усны өрөөний	жорлон байна.
	ř,	Жюли сүүтэй цай	байна.

#### Exercise 2

Translate into Mongolian:

- I I'm called Bat. Pleased to meet you!
- 1 How many rooms has your hotel?
- Do you want something to eat?
- Come into our kitchen.
- Is there a divan in the big sitting room?

#### Exercise 3

Look at the plan of Bat's flat and answer the questions:

- I Батын аав ээжийн унтлагын өрөө зочны өрөөний хажууд уу?
- . Охины унтлагын өрөө хэдэн цонхтой вэ?
- Жорлон цонхтой юу?
- 1 Гал зуухны өрөө, зочны өрөө хоёр аль нь хоёр үүдтэй вэ?
- ъ Бат, Дэлгэрмаа хоёр хаана унтдаг вэ?

## Dialogue 2

Та хүүхэдтэй юу? Do you have any children?

David and Julie continue the discussion of Bat and Delgermaa's home and family.

Жюли: Та хүүхэдтэй юү?

Ват: Дөрвөн хүүхэдтэй. Хоёр хүү, хоёр охинтой.

Зориг, Басбиш, Хонгорзул, Хулан гэдэг.

Жюли: Хэд хэдэн настай вэ?

Бат:	Зориг	арав,	Хонгорзул	долоо,	Хулан	зургаа,

Басбиш тавтай.

Жюли: Таны аав ээж хоёр Улаанбаатарт байнга суудаг

yy?

Дэлгэрмаа: Энд суудаг. Энэ байранд бидэнтэй хамт суудаг.

Харин тэд манай хоёр хүүхэдтэй хөдөө явсан.

Жюли: Хэнийх нь аав ээж вэ? Батынх уу,

Дэлгэрмаагийнх уу?

Бат: Миний аав ээж. Бид тэдэнтэй наймуулаа энд

суудаг юм.

Девид: Тэд хаашаа явсан бэ?

Бат: Өвөрхангай аймаг руу явсан. Аавын ахын

зусланд очсон. Бас Сух миний ах шүү дээ!

Девид: Та хэдэн настай вэ?

Бат: Би гучин наймтай. Та хэдтэй вэ?

Девид: Би гучин гуравтай. Жюли хорин естэй.

Julie: Do you have any children?

BAT: We have four children. We have two sons and two

daughters. They are called Zorig, Basbish,

Khongorzul and Khulan.

JULIE: How old are they?

BAT: Zorig is ten, Khongorzul seven, Khulan six and

Basbish five.

JULIE: Do your parents live permanently in Ulan Bator?

Delgerman: Yes, they live here. They live in this flat together with

us. But they have gone to the country with two of

the children.

JULIE: Whose parents are they? Bat's or Delgermaa's?

BAT: They're my parents. Eight of us live here altogether.

DAVID: Where have they gone?

BAT: They have gone to Övörkhangai province. They are

visiting my father's elder brother's summer camp.

And Sükh is my elder brother!

DAVID: How old are you?

BAT: I am thirty-eight. How old are you?

DAVID: I'm thirty-three. Julie is twenty-nine.

Note: sychan(r) is a herdsman's summer camp, where he sets up his rap in his summer grazing area; it is also a small house in the country used in the summer holidays. Övörkhangai is in central Mongolia.

## Шинэ Yr Vocabulary

иймаг	province	HAC(H)	age
мрав (арван)	ten	ОЧИХ	to go to
16.R.	elder brother	тав(н)	five
олйнга	permanently	хаашаа	where to?
<b>। भग(स)</b>	thirty	XAMT	together
полоо(н)	seven	хорь(н)	twenty
дорев(в)	four	хөдөө	countryside
ции (дее, дээ)	emphatic particle	хүүхэд	child
e¢(B)	nine	недех (дех)	how many?
нургаа(н)	six	хэнийх	whose?
найм(н)	eight	рнц	here

## Language points

## Cardinal numbers

All numerals except 'two' have fleeting n which is present when counting objects and in compound numbers:

11(10)	HOL	3
180	хоёр	хоёр
three	гурав	гурван
Joint .	дөрөв	дервен
five	TAB	
414	зургаа	зургаан
503 CD	долоо	долоон
+ 13th t	найм	найман
none	ec	
bill	арав	арван
11 (12, etc.)	Her (	арван хоёр, еtc.)
20	хорь	хорин
30	гуч	гучин

Both sets of numerals decline as nouns. The n-stem form is used for counting objects: арван сандал 'ten chairs'.

The use of \_\_\_\_\_ is irregular: нэг ширээ 'one table', арван нэг сандал 'eleven chairs' etc. but нэгэн хамтаар 'together', \_\_\_\_ нэгэн 'a certain (person)', нэгэн хоёрын хоёр '1 × 2 = 2'.

The numbers хоёр and гурав can also be translated as 'and': Бат Дэлгэрмаа хоёр 'Bat and Delgermaa', Зориг, Хонгорзул, Хулан гурав 'Zorig, Khongorzul and Khulan'. In principle this could be done with larger numbers, but it isn't practical.

## How old you?

For giving one's age the basic forms of the cardinal numbers are used plus the comitative case suffix -тай (-той, -тэй) аз Зориг аравтай, Хонгорзул долоотой, Хулан зургаатай, Басбиш тавтай.

However, Mongols try to avoid repeating the same case suffix in one sentence, so that Bat says: Зориг арав, Хонгорзул долоо, Хулан зургаа, Басбиш тавтай 'Zorig 10, Khongorzul 7, Khulan 6, Basbish 5-with'.

The comitative case is used to ask 'how old?': хэдэн настай 'how many year-with?' or хэдтэй 'how many with?' Duplication marks a request for plural information in хэд хэдэн настай вэ 'how many how many year-with?' 'How old are they (is each of them)?'

### Collective numerals

Bat says: Бид тэдэнтэй наймуулаа энд суудаг 'With them we are eight of us living here' using наймуулаа which is a collective form of найм 'eight'. More examples: хоёул ог хоёулаа 'two together', гурвуул(аа) 'the three of them', дөрвүүл(ээ) 'four together', etc.

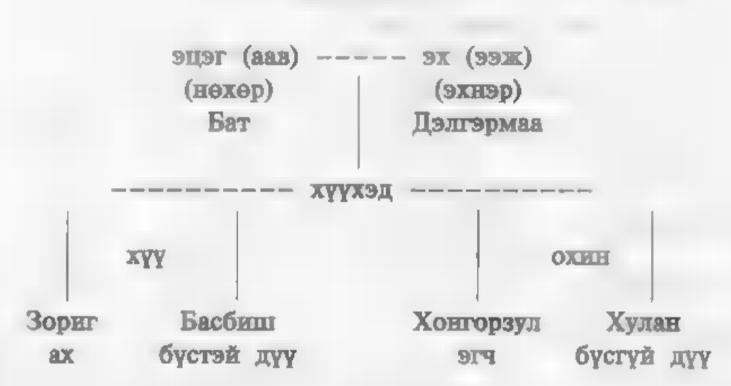
## Place and direction

From the demonstrative pronoun энэ 'this' we can derive энд (энэ plus the dative/locative -д) 'here' or 'in this place'; the dative/locative of тэр 'that' is тэнд 'there'. The interrogative adverb хаана 'where (at)?' has the form \_\_\_\_\_\_ 'where (to)?'

The suffixless (stem) form is sometimes used for the object of movement in a particular direction: хөдөө явсан '(He's) gone to the country.'

нөхөр	husband	нохортэй	married
нөхөргүй	unmarried (woman)	эхнэр	wife
йстденке	married	йуласние	unmarried (man
бүстэй (хүн)	man	бүсгүй (хүн)	woman
бус	belt or sash	гэрлэсэн	married

#### Батынхан



While xyy means 'son' xyyxэн means 'girl' (you could also say this to call a waitress); xyyxэд is 'child' despite its final -д.

'Do you have any children?' Та хүүхэдтэй юү? in colloquial speech is contracted to Та хүүхтэй юү?

#### Exercise 4

Answer the questions:

- 1 Зориг хэдэн дүүтэй вэ?
- . Батын аав ээж хоёр хот явсан уу?
- Өвөрхангай аймаг хаана байдаг вэ?
- 4 Бат хэдэн настай вэ?
- Дэлгэрмаа хэдэн настай вэ?

#### Exercise 5

Answer these questions about yourself:

- Г Та хотод суудаг уу?
- ! Та аав ээжтэйгээ хамт суудаг уу? (See p.49)
- 1 Та хэдэн настай вэ?
- 1 Та хүүхэдтэй юү?
- таны аавын нэрийг хэн гэдэг вэ?

#### Exercise 6

Answer the questions with reference to the diagram above:

- 1 Хулангийн ахын нэрийг Басбиш гэдэг үү?
- 2 Хонгорзулын ээжийн нэрийг Бат гэдэг үү?
- 3 Басбиш Хонгорзулын бүсгүй дүү юү?
- 4 Басбиш Батын бүстэй дүү юү?
- 5 Зориг Дэлгэрмаагийн нөхөр үү?

## Dialogue 3

## Caйн яваарай! Have a good journey!

David is looking at Bat's books when Khulan and Basbish return home from a visit to Oyuun.

Девид: Яасан сонин ном бэ? Би энэ орос жуулчдад

зориулсан лавлах номыг уншмаар байна.

Бат: Та энэ номыг унцимаар байна уу? Та орос хэл

мэдэх үү? (хонх дуугарна)

Дэлгэрмаа: Оюун?

Оюун: Сайн байна уу? За ямар олон зочинтой байх

юм бэ?

Дэлгэрмаа: Англиас ирсэн Брауныхан гэдэг улс. Хулан чи

гар нүүрээ угаа! Басбиш чи цамцаа хиртүүлсэн байна аа! Нааш ир. Чи өнөөдөр ямар ямар новш

гэртээ авчирав?

Оюун: Басбиш нэг сонин жижиг шавьж олсон.

Бат: Тэр шавьжаа хогийн саванд хий! Хүүхэдтэй

хүний хэл амардаггүй гэж үнэн шүү!

Девид: За, бид явлаа!

Оюун: Битгий яв! Жаахан байж бай!

Девид: Бид одоо явах болсон. Өнөө орой бидэнд зав

байхгүй, бас маргааш бид их ажилтай.

Дэлгэрмаа: Жаал суухгүй нь харамсалтай байна. Та нар

хэдий хүртэл Монголд байх вэ?

Девид: Ирэх сарын эцэс хүртэл.

Дэлгэрмаа: Тэгвэл улам сайн. За баяртай! Сайн яваарай!

Девид: Баяртай, сайн сууж байгаарай!

Бат: Дахиад ирээрэй! Дараа тэр номыг аваарай!

Девид: Баярлалаа! Баяртай!

DAVID: What interesting books! I would like to read this

guidebook intended for Russian tourists.

HAT: You want to read that book? Do you know Russian?

(the bell rings)

DELGERMAA: Oyuun?

UNUUN: Hello! Oh, what a lot of visitors you have!

Deficiency They're the Browns from England. Khulan, wash

your hands and face! Basbish, you have made your shirt all dirty. Come here! What kind of rubbish have

you brought home today?

OSTIUN: Basbish found an interesting little insect.

HAT: You put that insect of yours in the dustbin. It's true

what they say, a parent's tongue never rests!

DAVID: Well, we have to go.

ONTOIN: Don't go! Please stay a bit.

DAVID: Now it's time to go. We have no free time this

evening, and tomorrow we have a lot of work.

DEIGERMAA: It's a pity you can't stay a bit. How long are you

going to be in Mongolia?

DAVID: Until the end of next month.

Deferman: So much the better. Goodbye! Have a good journey!

DAVID: Goodbye! Stay well!

BALL Come again! Come and collect that book later!

DAVID: Thank you! Goodbye!

## Illинэ Yr Vocabulary

инирах	to bring, fetch	олох	to find
имрах	to rest	енее орой	this evening
биттый	Don't!	енеедер	today
enp	hand	can(H)	bin, container
нуугарах	to sound, ring	сар	month
• уулчин	tourist	тэгвэл улам	all the better
1631	free time, leisure	угаах	to wash
<b>ториулах</b>	to be intended	улс	people, state
ниплях ном	guidebook	уншех	to read
маргааш	tomorrow	унэн	truth
Manie	(to) here	харамсал	regret
nonto	rubbish	хиртуулэх	to make dirty
пүүр(н)	face	KOL	rubbish
01(00	пом	XOHX	bell

хэдий хүргэл	till when?	эцэс	end
цамц	shirt	юм	is, are
шавыж	insect	ямар	what (kind of)?

## Language points

## Present and future imperatives

There are some more examples here of the present imperative: up! 'come', from upox and xun! 'Do it' or 'Put it' from xunx. The negative present imperative is formed by placing битгий before the stem: Битгий хий! 'Don't do it!'

Mongolian distinguishes between the present imperative (verb stem) and future imperative (stem plus -аарай, -оорой, -ээрэй: Haam ир! 'Come here!', Дараа ирээрэй! 'Come (back) later'. Ном ав! 'Take a book', Ном аваарай! 'Take a book (next time you come)', etc. Likewise Битгий ирээрэй! means 'Don't come back!' The future imperative is less abrupt than the present imperative and can be further softened by adding a personal pronoun: Та суугаарай! 'Do please take a seat!'

When you leave a Mongolian's home he may say to you Came manapan! which means 'Travel well!', 'bon voyage'; the traditional reply is came cyyx famapan! meaning 'well staying be!' Both these expressions use future imperatives.

## Expressing a wish or need

We have seen (page 38) use of the suffix -маар to express a wish: David says: Би энэ орос . . . номыт унимаар байна meaning 'I would like to read this Russian book.' Another way of expressing a wish or need is with the verbal noun plus гэсэн юм (гэсэн is the perfective verbal noun of гэх). Thus David could also have said: Би энэ орос номыт унших гэсэн юм. Note the accusative case suffix on the specified object: энэ орос номыт.

## Future of the past perfect

We have seen that **танилилаа** is the past perfect tense of the verb **танилиах** and expressing a completed action means literally 'pleased to have met (you)'. In this dialogue we have from **явах** 

to go' the form бид явлаа meaning 'We have to go.' In the same way, 'Stop or I shoot!' is Зогс буудлаа!

## Meanings of болох

A colloquial use of болох by David Бид явах болсон means 'It's time to go,' The verb болох has several meanings, including 'to become', and is used with time expressions. With the comitative ense it means 'to acquire': e.g. — номтой болсон 'became with many books', 'acquired a lot of books'. Another meaning of болох is 'to be permitted', as in Болох уу? 'May !?'

## Reflexive suffix for nouns

When Delgermaa tells her daughter Khulan we rap hyypos yraa! she is telling her to wash her (own) hands and face, and Mongolian has a reflexive suffix -aa (-oo, -oo, -oo, -oo) to add to the appropriate houn (hyyp-so) to express the idea of 'one's own', in the accusative case replacing the usual suffix -r, etc. Delgermaa also tells Bashish off for making his shirt dirty nammaa xupryyncon байна using the reflexive suffix (памщ-аа). Add -r- after long vowels.

Note that, when speaking to Khulan, Delgermaa adds the suffix only to the second of the two nouns rap Hyypss; this again shows that Mongolian is sparing in its use of suffixes.

Another example of the reflexive is rapras (rap-r-ss) with the tlative/locative case meaning 'at (or to) one's own home'.

## Dative/locative of personal pronouns: to have

A common way of saying that you have something is to put the personal pronoun in the dative/locative case. The example in the dialogue is бидэнд 'to us'/we have'. The personal pronouns in their dative/locative case forms are:

	Singular	Plural
st person	надад	бидэнд (манд)
d person	чамц	танд
rd person	(т)уунд	(т)эдэнд

#### Other points

Хуухэдтэй хуний хэл амардаттуй 'child-with person's tongue rests regularly not' is a Mongolian proverb: 'One chick keeps a hen busy.'

Instead of the more usual Caйн байна уу? Oyuun might have said Aмар сайн уу? where aмар means 'calm, quiet'. The verbal noun авчрах 'to bring' is a contraction of авч 'taking' (from авах) and ирэх 'to come'; авчрах and амрах displace short vowels: compare the forms авчирсан and амардаг.

Both 'month' and 'moon' are cap but 'month' is regular: сарыг, сарын, сары, сараас, сараар, сартай, while the 'moon' has a fleeting n сар(н): сарыг, сарны, саранд, сарнаас, сараар, сартай.

Delgermaa says **xmap xmap** when asking what Basbish has brought home, in the expectation that he has brought several things. Similar duplication includes **109** to y i.e. 'what (things)?' The same principle can be applied to nouns:

Хүн хүн өөр өөр өнгөнд дургай байдаг. Different people like their own colours.

#### Exercise 7

Answer the questions:

- 1 Басбиш гэртээ юу авчирсан бэ?
- 2 Девид ямар ном уншмаар байсан бэ?
- 3 Девид Жюли хоёр өнөө орой завтай юу?
- 4 Бат өнөө орой завгуй юү?
- 5 Дэлгэрмаа хэдэн хүртэл Монголд байх вэ?

#### Exercise

Translate into Mongolian:

- 1 Come back next month!
- 2 Please don't go!
- 3 Take a seat!
- 4 Please come in!
- 5 Have a good trip!

#### Exercise 9

translate into Mongolian:

- I Khulan made her shirt dirty.
- ? Basbish washed his hands.
- David and Julie have to go.
- 1 Did Delgermaa have a lot of visitors?
- Zorig and Khongorzul went with their father's parents to the country.

## Dialogue for comprehension 2

Ценид: Сайн байна уу, Бат аа?

Невид: Сайн. Та сайн байна уу? Исвид: Сайн байна аа.

bar: Ta op, op!

Цэлгэрмаа: Сайн байна уу? Миний нэрийг Дэлгэрмаа гэдэг.

Невид: Намайг Девид гэдэг. Жюли: Намайг Жюли гэдэг.

Дэлгэрмаа: За, ийшээ ор! Энэ манай гал зуухны дулаахан

өрөө.

Бат: Гал зуухны өрөөнд нэг жижиг ширээ, дөрвөн

сандал байна.

Жюли: Танай байр хэдэн унглагын өрөөтэй вэ? Бат: Манай байр гурван унтлагын өрөөтэй. Дэлгэрмаа: Та ундаасч байна уу? Кофе уух уу?

Девид: Би хүйтэн шар айраг уумаар байна.

Жюли: Та хүүхэдтэй юү?

Бат: Дөрвөн хүүхэдтэй. Зориг, Басбиш, Хонгорзул,

Хулан гэдэг,

Жюли: Хэд хэдэн настай вэ?

Бат: Том хүү Зориг арав, том охин Хонгорзул долоо,

бага охин Хулан зургаа, бага хүү Басбиш тавтай.

Жюли: Таны аав ээж хоёр Улаанбаатарт суудаг уу?

Дэлгэрмаа: Миний аав нас барсан. Миний ээж Улаанбаатарт

суудаггүй. Батын аавын ахтай Өвөрхангай аймагт

амьдардаг.

Жюли: Та хэдэн настай вэ?

Дэлгэрмаа: Би гучтай. Девид: За, бид явлаа! Дэлгэрмаа: За баяртай, сайн яваарай!

Жюли: Баяртай, сайн сууж байгаарай!

Бат: Дараа дахин ирээрэй! Девид: Баярлалаа! Баяртай!

дулаахан warm хүйтэн cold бага small кофе(н) coffee map айраг beer нас барсан has died/is dead амьдрах to live

Note: Beer in Mongolian is map ampar which means 'yellow koumiss'; the real koumiss ampar is fermented mare's milk, which is drunk in the countryside during the summer months. Sometimes man(H), the Russian word transo, is used for beer.

# 3 Ярихаар яв, хэлэхээр хий

## Actions speak louder than words

#### In this lesson you will learn

- The instrumental case of nouns and pronouns
- How to find your way and give directions
- · The use of some new postpositions
- · More verb forms and their correct sequence

## Dialogue 1

Хотын дурсгалт газруудаар Round the city sights

David and Julie discuss with Sükh some of the places in central Ulan Bator that they might visit.

Цевид: Улаанбаатар хотын төвд ямар ямар сонирхолтой газар байдаг вэ?

Хотын түүхийн дурсгалт газруудын нэг пь Сүхбаатарын талбай. Энэ өргөн талбайн дунд Сүхбаатарын хошоө бий. Тэр морьтой хүнийг Дамдины Сүхбаатар гэдэг. Тэр хүн манай улсын 21 (хорин нэгэн) оны Ардын Хувьсгалт цэргийн дарга байсан.

Жюли: Сүхбаатарын хөшөөний хойд талд нэг том саарал байшин бий. Тэр юу вэ?

Сүх: Саарал байшин чинь Төрийн ордон шүү дээ. Төрийн ордонд Мошгол Улсын Ерөнхийлөгч, Ерөнхий сайд, Улсын Их Хурлын гишүүд ажилладаг.

Девид: Сухбаатарын талбайн баруун талд дуурь бүжгийн театр бий юу?

Cyx:	Үгүй, талбайн баруун т	галд биш, зүүн талд бий. Харин
		буудлын баруун талд байдаг.
	Талбайн баруун талд	Тов шуудан, хөрөнгийн бирж
	байдаг. Хөрөнгийн	бирж хуучин кино театрын
	байранд байдаг юм.	
Жюли	Суубаатарын тапбайн	упп талл жижиг цэцэрлэгийн

Жюли: Сүхбаатарын талбайн урд талд жижиг цэцэрлэгийн цаана нэг өргөн гудамж бий. Энэ гудамжийг юу гэж нэрлэдэг вэ?

Сүх: Энэ гудамжийг Энх тайвны гудамж гэж нэрлэдэг. Англи Улсын элчин яам энэ гудамжны зүүн хэсэгт оршдог.

David: What interesting places are there in central Ulan Bator?

Sukh: One of the historical sights of the city is called Sükhbaatar Square. The Sükhbaatar monument is situated in the middle of this broad square. The man on horseback is Damdiny Sükhbaatar. He was the army commander in our country's People's Revolution of '21.

JULIE: There's a big grey building on the north side of the Sükhbaatar monument. What's that?

SOKH: Why, that grey building is the State Palace. The Mongolian President, the Prime Minister and the State Great Khural members work in the State Palace.

David: Is the opera and ballet theatre on the west side of Sükhhaatar Square?

No, it's not on the west side of the square. It's on the east side. But it's on the west side of the Ulaanbaatar Hotel. On the west side of the square there's the central post office and the stock exchange. The stock exchange is situated in an old cinema building.

JULIE: There's a wide street on the south side of Sükhbaatar Square, beyond the gardens. What's that street called?

Sükh: That street is called Peace Street. The British Embassy is situated on the eastern section of this street.

## Шинэ Үг Vocabulary

ард people бүжиг баруун west газар dance, hallet place, land

сиппуун	member	TOB	centre
гудамж(н)	street	терийн орд(н)	state palace
парта	chief, boss	түүх	history
дупд	in the middle	урд	south
пурстал	memorial	хойд	north
цуурь	opera	хөрөнгийн бирж	stock exchange
<b>РТӨЦЙИХН</b> ӨФ	president	хөшөө	monument
оронхий сайд	prime minister	хувьсгал	revolution
нуун	east	хурал	assembly
вино театр	cinema	хуучин	old
иврлэх	to call, name	X9C9T	section
ориних	to be situated	цаана	beyond
оргон	wide, broad	цэрэг	soldier, army
саврал	grey	цэцэрлэг	garden
сонирходтой	interesting	шуудан(г)	post, postage
CBJ1	side	(н)мак нирпе	embassy
<b>налбай</b>	square	энх тайван	peace

(listorical Note: Damdiny Sükhbaatar (1893–1923) was Commander-in-Chief and Minister of War and one of the founding members of the Mongolian People's Party which with Soviet help installed the 'People's Government' in July 1921, and was renamed the Mongolian People's Revolutionary Party apparently in 1924, although this, is disputed. Some Mongolians now say that calling it a 'revolutionary' party was a Soviet Russian idea.

The Yackin Ux Xypan or 'great assembly' is the 76-seat Mongolian parliament. The main parties in the assembly elected in 1996 were the Mongolian National Democratic Party (Monronger Yhrachia apprunean nam) and Mongolian Social Democratic Party (Monronger commander tham) forming the 'Democratic Alliance' (Apprunean xon600), and the opposition Mongolian People's Revolutionary Party (Monron applies xybectant nam), a reformed communist party which previously was the ruling party. When written in full, only the first word of most official titles is written with a capital letter. In the Mongolian press the names of the political parties are usually abbreviated -- MYAH, MCJH, MAXH, etc. From 1924-92 Mongolia was the EHMAY, Byrg Hanpamax Monron App Ync or Mongolian People's Republic. Mongolian (Monron naxional magnetic areas) thanks for the Mongolian news agency.

ардчилах	to democratize	үндэс(н)	root, nation
мэдээ	information	холбоо	alliance, union
нам	(political) party	цахилгаан	electric(ity)

## Language points

#### Place and direction

Each of the four major points of the compass has two names: north хойно/умар, south емне/урд, east зүүн/дорно, west баруун/ерне. The paired names are mostly interchangeable. However, it is necessary to distinguish between being situated in ■ place and moving in a direction or from a direction: e.g. хойд (sometimes хойт) and умард mean 'in the north' or attributively 'northern' (any distinction between хойно and хойд, for example, is not always made); хойш, with the -ш suffix used for direction towards, means 'northwards', 'to the north'; and хойноос, with the ablative case suffix, means 'from the north'.

Another way to indicate place or direction by the compass involves use of the words tan 'side' and syr 'direction' e.g. xountain 'north side' and xountain 'on the northern side'; xountain (or xountain syr pyy) 'in a northern direction', xountain syrsec 'from the north', etc. The use of compass points for locations and directions is quite usual in Ulan Bator, which has few named streets.

Some compass directions are also used as postpositions: хойно 'north', 'behind' and "south', 'in front', as well as зуун and баруун 'east' and 'west', 'left' and 'right', e.g. — дэлгүүрийн тайно 'behind the department store', галт тэрэгний буудлын өмнө 'in front of the railway station' (галт тэрэг 'train'), зүүнээс баруунаа 'from left to right', etc.

## Nouns attributives

Attributive use of nouns as adjectives is common, particularly with materials, metals, etc: мод(н): модон хаалга 'wooden door', мөнгөн ус 'silver water', 'mercury', цаас(н): цаасан шувуу(н) 'paper bird', 'kite', etc.

Note the variations as different linking vowels are used in the nouns морь and ундэс which attract fleeting n:

морь (horse) - genitive form морины but attributive морин e.g. морин хуур horse(head) fiddle (a popular musical instrument)

ундэс (root) – genitive form ундэсний, attributive ундсэн e.g. ундсэн хууль basic law, constitution

```
Compass points
                          хойд (умард)
                            northern
                          in the north
       хойноос \ from the
                                        to the xoar (ymap) syrr
                   north
                                        north
                                                      MINOX
                         ХОЙНО (умар)
                            NORTH
 ервед WEST (өрнө) БАРУУН\Leftarrow\otimes\Rightarrow ЗҮҮН (дорно) EAST дорнод
western \Leftarrow баруун тийш
                                        зүүн тийш ⇒
                                                         eastern
        баруун (өрнө) зүгт
in the
                                       зүүн (дорно) зүгт
                                                          in the
 west
                                                           east
                          ӨМНӨ (урд)
                            SOUTH
                  to the
                                      from the
        ӨМҢӨ
                                                    OHMO
                  south
                                        south
         SYT
                                                    37133C
      (AAL bAA)
       урагия
                                                  урдаас ↑
                          емнед (урд)
                           southern
                          in the south
```

## Noun suffix -T forming adjectives

The noun suffix -т can change a noun into an adjective: e.g. дурсгал 'memorial' and дурсгалт 'memorable'; хувьсгал 'revolution' and хувьсгалт 'revolutionary'. Similarly эрдэмт 'learned' is derived from эрдэм, meaning 'knowledge', and forms the plural эрдэмтэн, which however has come to mean 'scholar' (singular).

## **Numbers for years**

A way of counting years is illustrated here, using cardinal numbers plus fleeting n: манай улсын хорин нэгэн оны Ардын Хувьсгал 'our country's people's revolution of (19)21'.

## The verb 'to be'

The verb 'to be' (verbal noun байх, present-future байна) is used in Mongolian when the subject is indicated or can be seen: Сайн байна уу? The word бий, also meaning 'is', has the sense of general existence, when the subject cannot be seen but its existence is known: Дуурь бүжгийн театр талбайн зүүн талд бий 'The opera and ballet theatre is on the square's eastern side.'

## Finite past tense -жээ

The finite past tense of байх is байжээ. It is used mainly in the third person, in stories and narratives when the speaker was not a witness of the long-past events described. After stems ending in -в, -г and -р the suffix is -чээ: e.g. өгчээ from өгөх. There is a colloquial short form for questions dropping the final -ээ: Хөдөө явж уу? 'Did he go to the country?' This is not the imperfective converb, which must be accompanied by another verb (see example below).

## Uses of rax

The verb form гэж нэрлэдэг 'is called' combines гэж, the imperfective converb of гэх, 'to say', with нэрлэдэг, the iterative verbal noun form of нэрлэх, 'to name'. Note the constructions: Би юу гэж тайшээ юм? 'Why should I go there?' and Юу гэж? as well as, expressing surprise, Юу гэнэ ээ? 'What did you say?'. Also, гэх тэт means 'etc'.

#### Exercise 1

Translate into Mongolian:

- 1 South of the State Palace. 4
- 4 West of the post office.
- 2 North of Sükhbaatar Square.
- 5 In the middle of the little
- 3 East of the old cinema.
- garden.

## Exercise 2

Complete the sentences by adding the correct suffixes to the bracketed words:

- 1 Улаанбаатар (хот) (төв) олон сонирхолтой (газар).
- 2 (Морь) (хүн) Сүхбаатар (гэх).

- 3 (Талбай) зүүн (тал) дуурь (бүжиг) театр бий.
- 4 (Талбай) өмнө (тал) Орос (Улс) элчин яам (орших).
- 5 Энэ том (байшин) юу (гэх) (нэрлэх) вэ?

#### Exercise 3

Translate into English:

- 1 Сухбаатарын хөшөөний хойд талд цэцэрлэг байхгүй.
- 2 Англи Улсын элчин яам Энхтайвны гудамжинд байдаг.
- 3 Дуурь бүжгийн театр «Улаанбаатар» зочид буудлын хажууд оршдог.
- 4 Дамдины Сүхбаатар Ерөнхий сайд биш, Хувьсгалт цэргийн дарга байжээ.
- 5 Бирж талбайн баруун талд, хуучин кино театрт оршдог.

## Dialogue 2

How shall we go?

David and Julie decide to visit a museum, but are not sure whether to take a taxi or go by bus.

Сүх: Та Улаанбаатар хотод ирээд музей үзсэн үү?

Жюли: Бид энд ирээд Монголын Үндэсний Түүхийн музейг үзсэн. Өөр музей үзээгүй. Одоо Байгалийн Түүхийн музейг үзмээр байна.

Сух: Та одоо хаашаа явах гэж байна вэ? Байгалийн Түүхийн музей рүү юу?

Девид: Тийм, Байгалийн Түүхийн музей рүү.

Сүх: Та хэн нэгэн хүнтэй уулзах уу? Та тийшээ юугаар явах вэ?

Девид: Таксигаар явна. Одоо таксины буудал руу очиж тэндээс такси аваад Байгалийн Түүхийн музей рүү явна.

Сүх: Та явган явахгүй юу? Хол биш шүү.

Жюли: Бид тийшээ явган явж болох уу?

Сух: Болно оо. Бас автобусаар ч явж болно.

Девид: Байгалийн Түүхийн музей рүү явдаг автобусны зогсоол хаана байдаг юм бэ?

Сүх: Зочид буудлын дэргэд байдаг юм.

Девид: Ярихаар яв, хэлэхээр хий гэж за бид явлаа.

Sukh: Have you been to any museums since you came to Ulan

Bator?

JULIE: We've been to the History Museum since we arrived, but

we haven't seen any other museums. Now we would like

to see the Natural History Museum.

Sukh: Where are you thinking of going now? To the Natural

History Museum?

DAVID: Yes, to the Natural History Museum.

SUKH: Are you meeting anybody? How are you going to get

there?

David: We'll go by taxi. We'll go now to the taxi stand, take a taxi

from there and go to the Natural History Museum.

SUKH: Won't you walk? It's not far.

JULIE: Can we go there on foot?

SUKH: Of course you can. You can go by bus too.

DAVID: Where is the stop for the bus going to the Natural History

Museum?

SUKH: & It's outside the hotel.

DAVID: Actions speak louder than words, so let's go.

## Шинэ Yr Vocabulary

байгаль	nature	еешйнт	that way
дэргэд	next to	уулзах	to meet
зогсоол	(bus) stop	хол	far, quite far
музей	museum	хепех	to speak, say
өөр	other	хэн нэгэн хүн	someone
руу/рүү	to(wards)	ч	too, though
TAECH(H)	taxi	явган явах	to walk

## Language points

## Perfective converbs -аад

The verb forms **ирээд** and **аваад** are perfective converbs, formed by adding the suffix -**аад** (-**оод**, -**өөд**, -**ээд**) to the verb stem. They stand in mid-sentence and indicate the completion of one action before another.

One of the sentences in this dialogue illustrates sequence of tenses using (1) the imperfective converb, (2) the perfective converb and (3) the present-future tense. David says: Одоо гаксины буудал руу (1), тэндээс такси аваад (2) музей (3). 'Now visiting the taxi stand (and) having taken a taxi from there (we) shall go to the museum.'

### Use of the instrumental

This dialogue contains some examples of use of the instrumental cuse (suffix -aap, oop, -eep, -eep):

With adjectives and nouns to say 'by means of' e.g. abrobycaap by bus', rakcuraap 'by taxi', toyraap 'by what means?' (from toy what?') where the -r- separates the vowels; xbraap (irregular form) rabrahaap 'on foot' (xbrah means 'to walk'; sopyury pedestrian', 'pavement').

With verbal nouns, indicating aim or purpose, 'through', 'for the take of', 'in order to', e.g. явахаар as in Бид музей явахаар такси высан 'In order to visit the museum we took a taxi.'

The proverb Ярихаар яв, хэлэхээр хий! with ярихаар (from чрих, 'to talk') and хэлэхээр (from хэлэх, 'to speak or say') illustrates a form of the comparative through use of the instrumental and means 'better' or 'rather': 'Rather than to talk, go!' (And) Rather than to speak, do!'

## Instrumental of personal pronouns

The instrumental case forms of the personal pronouns ('by me', tc.) are as follows:

	Singular	Plural
1st person	надаар	бицнээр (манаар)
2nd person	чамаар	танаар
3rd person	$qeeryy(\tau)$	(т)эднээр

## Uses of IOM

There are two words tom. The noun means 'thing': yyx tom 'something to drink'. The 'predicate particle' means 'is'/'are' in affirmation, or in questions: Тэр яасан юм? 'What happened

to him?' There is a past tense form, verbal noun -x plus юмсан 'would quite like to ...'.

## Directions from and to

The ablative case (suffix -aac) enables us to say xaanaac 'where from?' and тэндээс 'from there'.

We use the derivational suffix -m plus the reflexive to show direction: 'where to?' and тийшээ '(to) there'. For 'to' and 'towards' the postposition руу (рүү) is used with the suffixless case, after final -p it becomes луу (лүү): Улаанбаатар луу.

#### Place and Direction

			<b>хойно</b> ehind		
	to the			жойно from b	
<b>∈ баруу</b> to the	н тийш right	баруун right		з <b>уун</b> left	 тийш ⇒ the left
	<b>у</b> рда from in		Ü	<b>ypa</b> forw	

in front

хойт	rear/hind (leg, etc.)
урд	front (wheel, etc.)
хойш урагшаа	back and forth
тэр үеэс хойш	since then
хойшоо (бай)!	'get back!'
хаалгаан хүртэл	as far as the door
цетчух оодо	until now

## Imperfective verbal noun -aa

Used to describe an action which has been started but is unfinished, the imperfective verbal noun is formed by adding a suitable long vowel to the stem (-aa, -oo, -oo, -oo, -oo):

rapaa going out, up99 coming, yumaa reading

To separate long vowels the letter -r is inserted:

хийгээ doing, байгаа being, суугаа sitting

This verbal noun can be combined with the imperfective converb:

хийж байгаа 'is doing'; and may also be used attributively: ... хийж байгаа хүн 'the man (who is) doing ...'

## Past tense negation

Questions using the perfective verbal noun (suffix -сан, -сон, etc.) may be answered in the imperfective verbal noun form plus negative suffix (байгаагүй, etc.):

Та уэсэн үү?Have you seen (it)?Үзээгүй.(No), I haven't seen (it) (yet).

The suggestion is with yasary# that the action has not yet taken place, while with yacanry# that the action was recent and perhaps even disappointing. Yacanry# 'I didn't see it.'

Another example:

Хийсэн үү? Хийгээгүй.

Have you done (it)? No, I haven't done it (yet).

Юу хийж байна вэ? What are (you) doing? (I'm) not doing anything. Ямар авсангүй. (I) didn't buy any books.

One can also ask negative questions, which are considered less direct and more polite: Ta ysconryh wy? 'Haven't you seen it?'

## Uses of rex

The imperfective converb rox of the verb rox has the colloquial meaning 'with the aim of thus when Sükh says

Caátha ao? 'where to go to thinking are?' he asks: 'Where are you thinking of going?'

## Other points

The negative suffix -ry# is used with nouns to express the idea 'both . . . and':

өглөө үдэшгүйmorning and eveningөдөр шөнөгүйday and nightтэндгүйhere and there

#### Exercise 4

Translate into Mongolian:

1 Can't one walk there?

2 Delgermaa came from behind the History Museum.

3 Have you seen that new red book?

4 David will take a taxi from the taxi rank and go to the Central Museum.

5 Sükh went behind the Central Palace.

#### Exercise 5

Translate into English:

1 Худалдагч их дэлгүүрт ороод ажлаа хийнэ.

2 Музей рүү явдаг автобус зочид буудлын дэргэд автобусны буудлаас явна.

3 Девид Жюли хоёр Англиас ирээд Улаанбаатар хотод сууна

4 Эмч ажлаа хийгээд гэртээ харина.

5 Сүх Дэлгэрмаа хоёр байрандаа ороод цай ууна.

#### Exercise 6

Rearrange the words to make sentences:

1 юугаар та вэ явах тийшээ

2 түүхийн үзнэ ирээд энд бид музейг

3 байна одоо явах та вэ гэж хаашаа

4 «Баянгол» такси буудал явна зочид руу аваад тэндээс

5 оршдог өмнө автобусны луу галт Улаанбаатар буудал буудлын явдаг тэрэгний

# Dialogue 3

Та хаачаад ирэв? Where have you been?

After walking round town David and Julie meet Sükh again and they tell each other where they have been.

та хаачаад ирэв? Байгалийн Түүхийн музей очсон уу? Аколи: Очсон. Байгалийн Түүхийн музейгээс саяхан ирдээ.

тук: За, Байгалийн Түүхийн музей таалагдав уу?

жюли: Таалагдлаа. Сайхан музей байна. Девид үлэг гүрвэлийн өндгөнд их дуртай.

Та музей үзээд дараа нь хаашаа явсан бэ?

Ценид: Байгалийн Түүхийн музей үзээд дараа нь гудамжаар жаал явлаа.

Та ямар унаагаар явсан бэ?

Пенид: Бид автобусаар явж им дэлгүүрийн өмнө буусан. Тэгээд их дэлгүүрт ойрхон нэг номын дэлгүүрт орсон. Номын дэлгүүр хуучин кино театрын хойно байдаг юм байна.

Жюли: Гэвч ямар ч ном худалдан авсангүй. Номын дэлгүүрээс гараад Тов шуудангийн хажуугаар явж Чойжин ламын сүмд очлоо.

Гух: Чойжин ламын сүм музейг хуучин шашпы музей гэдэг байсан юм. Танд сүм таалагдав уу?

Жюли: Бид цамын баг олныг үзсэн. Гэвч надад «Бэгз», «Их Харын» муухай харц жаахан эвгүй санагдсан шүү.

Ценид: Чойжин ламын сүм Сүхбаатарын талбайгаас холгүй учир сүмээс гараад зүүн тийшээ явган явж, зам хөндлөн гараад гэртээ харьсан.

Where have you been? Did you visit the Natural History Museum?

101 III: Yes, we've just got back from the Natural History Museum.

Sukh: So, did you like the Natural History Museum?

11 (11): Yes, we did. It's a nice museum. David especially liked the dinosaur eggs.

Sukh: Where did you go after you had visited the museum?

DAME: After visiting the Natural History Museum we went round the streets a bit.

NORTH: What transport did you take?

DNID: We took a bus and got off in front of the department store.

Then we visited a bookshop quite close to the department store. The bookshop is behind the old cinema.

JULIE: But we didn't buy any books at all. We left the bookshop, went past the central post office and visited the Choijin Lama temple.

Sükh: The Choijin Lama temple used to be called the Museum of Religion. Did you like the temple?

JULIE: We saw a lot of tsam masks, But the ugly looks of Begtse and Mahakala seemed to me rather nasty.

David: Choijin Lama temple is not far from Sükhbaatar Square, so we left the temple, turned east, crossed the road and walked home.

Note: The temple of Choijin Lama houses a big collection of colourful papier-maché masks of Lamaist gods made for performances of the *tsam* or lama dances at religious festivals. Begtse or **Bars**, 'coat of mail', is the god of war and protector of horses. Mahakala (Mongol name **Hx Xap**) means 'the great black one'; he has three eyes and six arms. In the 16th century the Dalai Lama made Mahakala the protector of **Mongol Buddhists**.

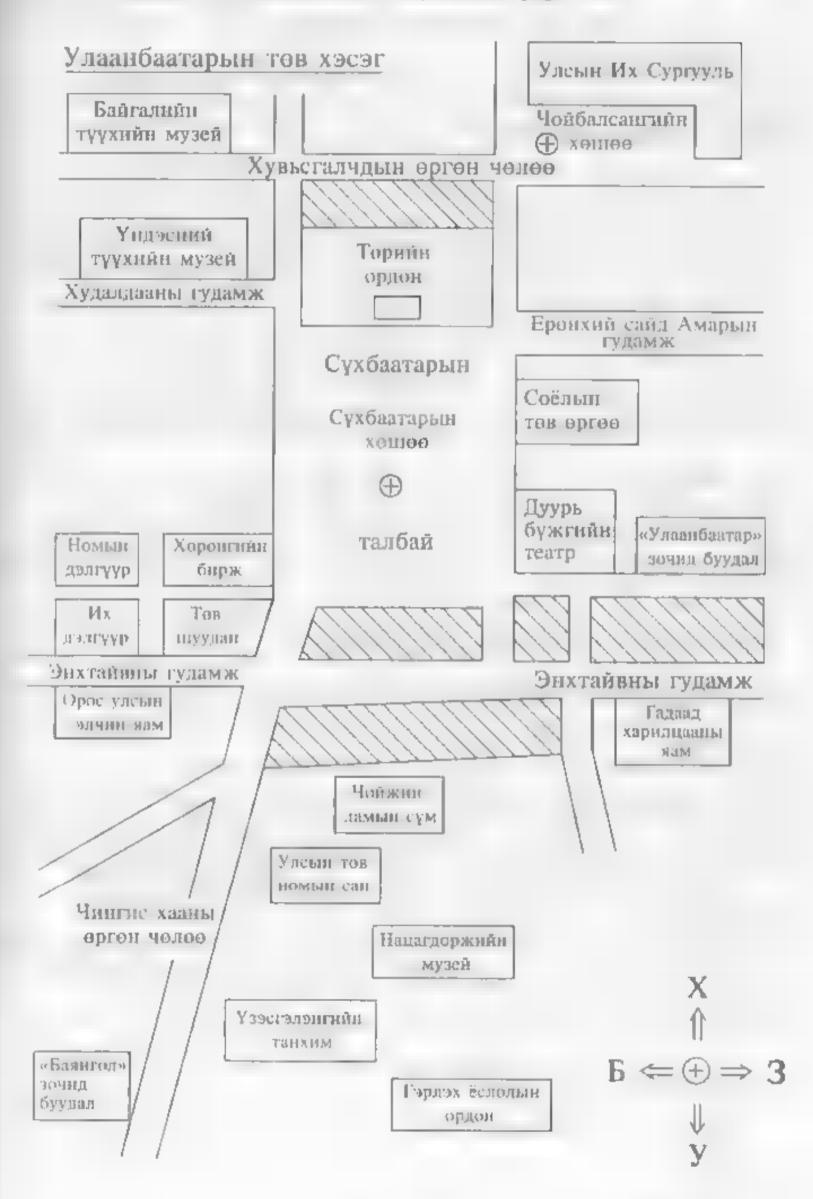
# Шинэ Yr Vocabulary

баг	lama mask	тэгээд	so, then
буух	to get off	унаа	transport
rapax	to go out, leave	учир/учраас	because
дуртай	like	улэг гүрвэл	dinosaur
зам	road	хар	black
лам	lama, monk	харнх	to return
муухай	ugly	жарц	look
ойрхон	quite near	хөндлөн гарах	to cross
өндөг(н)	egg	худалдан	to buy
санагдах	to seem	Цам	lama dance
сум	temple; church	эвгүй	nasty
таалагдах	to please		

Historical Note (see map on page 67): Khorloogiin Choibalsan (1895–1952), whose statue stands outside the Mongolian University, is sometimes called 'Mongolia's Stalin'. Choibalsan purged the country's leadership in the 1930s and as Prime Minister (1939–52) had absolute power. Some Mongols admire him for defending Mongolia's independence.

Anandyn Amar (1886–1941), after whom a street is named, was one of Choibalsan's purge victims. He was head of state 1932–36 and Prime Minister 1928–30 and 1936–39, Choibalsan and Amar were both founder members of the Mongolian People's (Revolutionary) Party.

Dashdorjiin Natsagdorj (1906–37), whose museum lies south of the State Central Library, was Mongolia's first 'socialist classic' writer. He was one of a group of soung Mongols educated in Germany between 1926 and 1929 and on return he litiped set up what later became the Writers' Union. He wrote stories, plays and poems, including a well-known poem called Manual ayrar describing the natural beauty of Mongolia (for extracts from the poem see page 249).



Энхтайвны гудамж is sometimes called Энхтайвны ерген челее.

гэрлэх ёслол	wedding	танхим	hall, chamber
номын сан(г)	library	үзэсгэлэн	exhibition
өргөн чөлөө	avenue	хувьсгалч	revolutionary
соёл	culture		

# Language points

## Definite past tense -B

The definite past tense formed with the suffix -B (-AB, -OB, -OB, -OB, -OB, -OB) expresses an action completed in the past as in upon and 'came' and 'went'. This tense is often used to ask questions which are usually given an affirmative answer in the past perfect (-JAA):

За узэв үү? Үзлээ.

So did (you) see (it)? (Yes), (I) saw (it).

A negative answer is given with the perfective verbal noun (-car):

Та уу? Авсангүй. Did (you) buy (it)?

(1) didn't buy (it).

Note that болов уу means 'perhaps', and is not to be confused with Болох уу? meaning 'May I?', etc:

Үүнийг үнэн болов уу гэж санадаг.

(1) think this may perhaps be true.

#### Because ...

In the dialogue David says for 'because' учир, 'the reason': Талбайгаас холгүй учир ... 'Because (it) isn't far from the square ...' The ablative case form учраас is also possible: Би гэртээ хоол идсэн учраас ... 'Because I ate at home ...'

Another way of saying 'because' is to use the verbal noun **болох** plus the instrumental case suffix, **болохоор**: **Хол болохоор** ... 'Because it was (we were) far away ...'

#### More about the instrumental

The dialogue illustrates more uses of the instrumental case:

гудамжаар унаагаар around the streets

by (what) means of transport

Literally year means 'riding animals' but the term is used for transport generally, including Ulan Bator's reper ('goat carts') or trolleybuses, so called because the overhead electricity poles look like goats' horns.

шуудангийн хажуугаар

past (by the side of) the post office

хуучнаар as it used to be (called), old style, in olden times, from the adjective хуучин old

Adverbs may be formed from adjectives by adding an appropriate instrumental case suffix:

их big
ихээр greatly
чанга firm
чангаар firmly

## Dative/locative case constructions

To have a liking for something is дуртай: Та юу идэх дуртай вэ? 'What would you like to eat?' Disliking is дургүй. The object liked or disliked is in the dative/locative case: Та музейд дуртай юу? 'Did (do) you like the museum?' Би өндгөнд дургүй 'I don't like eggs.' • чамд хайртай 'I love you.'

The postposition ойрхон '(quite) near' also governs the dative case: номын дэлгүүрт ойрхон '(quite) near the bookshop'.

## Doing thus and going where?

Like the interrogative verb яах 'to do what?' (page 39), тэгэх 'to do thus' has no exact equivalent in English but turns up quite frequently in various forms: тэгээд 'having done thus' means 'thereupon', 'next', 'then', etc., and Тэгье 'Let's (do thus)' is a common voluntative (see page 77). Similarly the interrogative verb (perfective converb хаачаад) means 'to go where?': Та хаачаад ирэв? means literally 'you having been where have come?'

Note that the interrogative particle is sometimes omitted; in the case of which is an exception it would be 69.

## More on the sequence of tenses

In Dialogue 3 we see further examples of the perfective converb being followed by past tense forms:

- (1) Очоод ... явав: та музей үзээд дараа нь явав? Where did you go after you had visited the museum?
- (2) Очоод ... явлаа: музей узээд бид гудамжаар Аfter visiting the museum we went round the streets.
- (3) Гараад ... явж ... очлоо.

We left the bookshop, went past the central post office and visited the Choijin Lama temple.

(4) Гараад ... явж ... харьсан.

We left ... and walked home.

One of the sentences in this dialogue illustrates the sequence of tenses using (1) the imperfective converb, (2) the perfective converb and (3) the present-future tense. David says: Одоо буудал руу очиж (1), тэндээс такси аваад (2) музей рүү (3) 'Now visiting the taxi stand (and) having taken a taxi from there (we) shall go to the museum.'

#### Exercise 7

Translate into English:

- 1 Жюли үлэг гүрвэлийн өндгөнд дургүй учраас гэртээ харьсан.
- 2 Девид их дэлгүүрт ойрхон номын дэлгүүрт ороод хэдэн ном худалдан авсан.
- 3 Би цамын баг үзмээр байгаа учир Чойжин ламын сүмд очно.
- 4 Дэлгэрмаа гудамжаар удаан явсан учраас их ядарсан.
- 5 Сүх ээ! Та гэр лүүгээ ямар унаагаар харих вэ? Ямаан тэргээр шүү дээ!

#### Exercise 8

Translate into Mongolian:

- We thought that the looks of Begtse and the Great Black One were rather nasty.
- 2 Turn right at the central post office and walk along Peace Street.
- 3 I crossed the road and went into the Bayangol Hotel.
- 4 Delgermaa walked along the eastern side of Sükhbaatar Square and next to the Central Palace of Culture bought a newspaper from a little shop.
- Go along Peace Street from the west, turn the corner at the central post office, come as far as the Sükhbaatar monument and meet me there.

#### Exercise 9

Жюли:

Reverse the sense using 'because' and the negative (e.g. 'Because I didn't go into the shop I didn't buy a book.'):

- I Би дэлгүүрт ороод нэг монгол ном худалдан авсан.
- . Автобус төв талбайгаас зүүн тийшээ гараад зочид буудлын гудамжаар явлаа.
- Дэлгэрмаа Оюун хоёр Ардчилсан Холбоонд дуртай болохоор холбооны гишүүн болсон.
- Их Хурал холгүй учраас Ерөнхий сайд явган явж ирлээ.
- У Би гэрээсээ гараад автобусны буудал руу явсан.

# Dialogue for comprehension 3

Девид: Улаанбаатар хотын төвд олон сонирхолтой газар бий.

Сүх: Тийм ээ. Сүхбаатарын талбайн дунд Сүхбаатарын хөшөө, Сүхбаатарын хөшөөний хойд талд Төрийн ордон оршдог. Төрийн ордныг «саарал байшин» гэдэг юм.

Жюли: Төрийн ордонд хэн хэн ажилладаг вэ?

Сух: «Саарал байшин»-д Улсын Ерөнхийлөгч, Ерөнхий

сайд, Их Хурал, засгийн газрын гиппүүд ажилладаг. Том «саарал байшин»-гийн өмнө бас нэг

жижигхэн байшин байдаг. Тэр юу вэ?

Сүх: Тэр жижиг байшин бол Сухбаатар, Чойбалсангийн

бунхан. Хуучин БНМАУ, «Ху» намын удирдагч жил бүрийн долдугаар сарын арван нэгэнд бунхан дээр гараад цэргийн баярын жагсаал зогсож үздэг

байсан.

Дэлгэрмаа: Долдугаар сарын арван нэгэн бол хорин нэгэн

онд ялсан Ардын Хувьсгалын ой.

Девид: Сухбаатарын талбайн зүүн талд дуурь бүжгийн

театр байхгүй бил үү?

Сүх: Тийм ээ. «Улаанбаатар» зочид буудлын хажууд

байдаг. Хөрөнгийн бирж талбайн баруун талд Төв шуудангийн хажууд хуучин кино театрт байдаг

юм.

Дэлгэрмаа: Сухбаатарын талбайн өмнө талд цэцэрлэгийн

цаана нэг оргон гудамж бий. Энх тайвны гудамж гэж нэрлэдэг. Англи Улсын элчин яам энэ

гудамжинд байдаг.

Сух: Та одоо хаашаа явах гэж байна вэ? Гандан хийд

рүү юү?

Девид: Үгүй, Гандан хийд рүү биш, Богд хааны өвлийн

ордон музей рүү явах гэж байна. Тийшээ явган

явж болох уу?

Сух: Холхон болохоор унаагаар явах хэрэгтэй. Богд

хааны өвлийн ордон музей рүү явдаг автобусны

буудал зочид буудлын дэргэд байдаг юм.

Жюли: Баярлалаа! Баяртай!

бил үү	isn't it?	ой	anniversary
бунхан	tomb	овол	winter
жагсаал	parade	удирдагч	leader
жил бүр	every year	унаа	transport
засгийн газар	government	хийд	monastery
зогсох	to stand; stop	хөдлөх	to set off

Note: Gandan monastery is Mongolia's Buddhist centre, situated on a low hill a mile or so north-west of Sükhbaatar Square. Its temple of Megjid Janraiseg, with a 28-metre gilded brass figure, is a city landmark. The Bogd Khan was Mongolia's religious leader and head of state 1911–24. His winter palace and the temple next door, situated on the south side of Ulan Bator city towards the river Tuul, is a museum.

#### Улаанбаатар дахь музейнүүд

#### БАЙГАЛИЙН ТҮҮХИЙН МУЗЕЙ

Самбуу болон Сүхбаатарын гудамжуудын огглол дээр (Засгийн газрын ордоноос баруун хойш) Ажиллах: Да 10.00-15.00, Мя-Ня 10.00-16.30 Үнэ: 100 төг (30 төг хүүхэд), 300 төг - галаалын

#### УЛААНБААТАРЫН ТҮҮХИЙН МУЗЕЙ

пргэд Утас: 321716

энх тайваны өргөн чөлөө Хөх г шгэрийн гудамжийн Уулзварын хажууд Ажилдах: Ча-Ба гаригуудад 09.00-13.00, 14.00-18.00, Бя 09.00-14.00, Иямя амариа. Унэ: 45 тог том хүн, 25 тог хүүхэд Угас: 50960

#### чойжин ламын музей

жамъян Гүний гудамж

Пу амарна, бусад өдөр 10.00-17.00 Үнэ: Хүүхэд - 50 төг, том хүн - 100 төг, гадаадын иргэд 1000 төг Утас: 324788 буддын шашны ховор нандин бүгээлүүд.

#### монгол ан музей

Запабазарын гудамж, Гандан сумийн урд талын 2 давхар шар байшин

Ажиллах: Да-Бя 10.00-17.00

Үнэ: 150 төг

Утас: 363917, 360248

#### БОГД ХААНЫ МУЗЕЙ

Чингисийн өргөн чөлөө
(Танкийн хөшөөний урд)
Одөр бүр 10.00-17.00 Үнэ: 100 төг
(50 төг хүүхэд), 1000
төг - гадаадын иргэд
Утас: 342195
Богд хааны эдэлж хэрэглэж байсан
эд юмс, түүний дотор 130
булганы арьсаар хийсэн дээл.

#### ДҮРСЛЭХ УРЛАГИЙН МУЗЕЙ

Худалдааны гудамж,
Барилгачины
талбайн зүүн талд
Өдөр бүр 10.00-17.00
Үнэ: 100 төг (том хүн), 500 төг
- гадаадын иргэд
Утас: 23986
Занабазарын урласан сонгодог
бүтээлүүд, Ногоон дарь эх,
язгуурын таван бурхан зэрэг.

## НАЦАГДОРЖИЙН МУЗЕЙ

Жамъян Гүний гудамж, Үзэсгэлэнгийн ордон, Чойжин ламын музей хоёрын хооронд 2 давхар хүрэн байшин Өдөр бүр 09.00-18.00 Үнэ: Хүүхэд 100 төг, том хүн 50 төг Утас: 327879

#### УНДЭСНИЙ ТҮҮХИЙН МУЗЕЙ

Худалдааны гудамж (Засгийн газрын ордны баруун талд) Өдөр бүр 10.00-17.00 Үнэ: 100 төг (том хүн), 200 төг - гадаадын иргэд Утас: 325656, 326082

# Нэмэлт Үг Additional vocabulary

ан	hunting	өдөр	day
булга(н)	sable	өнцөг	corner
бутээл	article	өргөө	pavilion
давхар	storey	утас (утсан)	telephone
дурслэк урнаг	fine arts	үнэт	valuable
пэнж	terrace	ховор	гаге
дээл	gown	хөх тэнгэр	blue sky
зэрэг	and so on	жүрэн	brown
нргэн	person, citizen	Эдлэх	to use
нандин	precious	эд 📰	things
ОГТИОЛ	intersection	язгуурын	original
олдвор	find		

Notes: The Öndör Gegeen 'Lofty Brilliance' Zanabazar (1635–1723) was Mongolia's first xyrarr or high reincarnated lama. Said to be descended from Genghis Khan and from a Bodhisattva, he was enthroned at the age of five. He studied in Tiber and was a gifted sculptor, painter, architect and poet besides becoming Mongolia's supreme spiritual authority. After long confrontation with the Oirat Mongols, the Khalkha Mongols under his religious and political leadership opted for an alliance with the Manchu rulers of China in 1691. Zanabazar was murdered in 1723 during a visit to Peking soon after the Manchu emperor died, according to a biography published in 1995.

Бурхан is the Buddha, and a бурхан is a Buddha image or statue. The Horoon Дарь эх or Green Tara is a statue of the protectress of Mongolia made by Zanabazar.

The assn is the traditional brightly coloured silk gown worn by Mongol men and women with a sash of contrasting colour tied round the waist. It is often worn together with the traditional Mongolian leather boots called ryran which have upturned toes.

Days of the	e week (гариг)		
цаваа	Monday	мягмар	Tuesday
лхагва	Wednesday	пурэв	Thursday
баасан	Friday	бямба	Saturday
	ням	Sunday	

Abbreviations may be found at the back of the Mongolian-English vocabulary.

# 4 Айвал бүү хий, хийвэл бүү ай

# Nothing ventured, nothing gained

#### In this lesson you will learn:

- The voluntative form of the verb (let's)
- The conditional converb (if . . . )
- The comparative and superlative (better, best)
- · The names of various kinds of food

# Dialogue 1

Har ресторанд оръё Let's go to ■ restaurant

But telephones to invite David and Julie to dinner at an Ulan Bator testaurant.

lar (утсаар ярьж байна): Байна уу?

цевид: Байна аа. Хэн бэ?

Би Бат байна. Та нар оноо орой завтай юу?

- Ченид: Завтай байлгүй яах вэ. Та юу сураа вэ?

haт: Нэг ресторанд оръё. Хамт явъя.

Ченид: За, тэгье. Ямар ресторанд орох вэ?

Бат: «Солонго» юм уу «Туул» ресторанд оръё.

Ченид: Аль нь дээр вэ?

Ват: «Солонго» «Туул»-аас дээр. Девид: Тэндэхийн хоол сайн уу?

Пат: «Солонго» ресторан их сайн хоолтой. Улаанбаатар

хотын хамгийн сайн рестораны нэг гэдэг юм.

Довид: Өөртөө үйлчилдэг үү?

Ват: Үгүй, үйлчлэгч үйлчилдэг юм. Хамт явъя.

Девид: «Солонго» ресторан хаана байдаг вэ?

Бат: Их дэлгүүрийн урд талд байдаг.

Девид: За, мэдлээ. Хэдэн цагт уулзах вэ?

Бат: Зургаа хагаст.

Девид: Одоо хэдэн цаг болж байна?

Бат: Таван цаг болж байна.

Девид: Зүгээр, зүгээр. Зургаан цаг хагаст «Солонго» ресторанд

уулзъя.

Бат: За тэгье.

BAT (on the phone): Hello?

DAVID: Hello! Who is it?

BAT: This is But. Are you two free this evening?

DAVID: Certainly we're free. What are you asking about?

BAT: Let's go to a restaurant. Let's go together.

DAVID: OK, let's. Which restaurant shall we go to?

BAT: Let's go to the 'Rainbow' or the 'River Tuul'.

DAVID: Which one is better?

BAT: The 'Rainbow' is better than the 'River Tuul'.

DAVID: Is the food there good?

BAT: The food at the 'Rainbow' restaurant is very good. It is

said to be one of the best restaurants in Ulan Bator.

DAVID: Is it self-service?

BAT: No, it's waitress service. Let's go together.

DAVID: Where is the 'Rainbow' restaurant?

BAT: It's south of the department store.

DAVID: I understand. At what time shall we meet?

BAT: Half past six.

DAVID: What's the time now?

BAT: It's five o'clock.

DAVID: Fine. Let's meet at the 'Rainbow' at half past six.

BAT: Let's do that.

# Шинэ Yr Vocabulary

ajth	which	өөртөө	oneself
байлгүй 🚃 🛮	sure, why not?	солонго	rainbow
бие	body, health	cypax	to ask about
дээр	better	хеприйү	to serve
зүгэ <b>эр</b>	fine, alright	РІСПРІЙУ	waiter/waitress
ОДООХОН	just a moment	xarac	half

ниг time; clock юм уу or; either . . . or

"lote: The word ресторан for 'restaurant' has come via Russian; the best Mongolian oquivalent is зоогийн газар (зоог means 'food').

# Language points

## Let's do that

to express the idea of wanting to do something or calling on others to join in an action, for the first-person singular and plural Mongolian adds to the verb stem the voluntative suffixes -ъя, -ъё and -ье or -я, -ё and -е according to the following pattern:

Stems ending in a consonant:

back vowels -a, -y ог -я = -ъя: авах - авъя, явах - явъя

-о = -ъё: орох - оръё

front vowels = -be: тэгэх - тэгье, үзэх - үзье

Stems ending in a vowel:

back vowels -a, -y or -a = -a: yraax - yraaa, cyyx - cyyx

-о = -ё: боох - бооё

front vowels = -e: хийх - хийе, хүлээх - хүлээс

The verb **боох** means 'to tie' and **хүлээх** 'to receive' and 'to wait'. Despite the spelling rules, the voluntative suffix is mostly pronounced -ii and stressed: **Авъя** (awii) - 'Let me (let us) take', Shall we take?' **Үзье** (üzii) - 'Let's see, take a look', etc.

The voluntative is very flexible and is used frequently in responses:

Ресторанд оръё. Хамт за, тэгье.

Let's visit a restaurant. Let's go together. OK, let's.

## Certainly, why not?

lo express likelihood the suffix - лгүй replaces the final -х of the present-future verbal noun, e.g. байлгүй 'likely to be', явалгүй, оролгүй, etc.

When combined with the verb xax in a question, e.g. байлгүй иих вэ? the meaning is 'Why not?', 'How could (one) not?' The иих вэ part is pronounced (and sometimes written) хахав:

Бололгуй яах вэ? Of course you may.

Би мэдэлгүй вэ. Of course I know you.

Хэрэггэй байлгүй яах вэ? How could I manage without?

The suffix -лтай expresses certainty: байлтай 'must be'.

## Comparative

When things are bigger or smaller, better or worse than others. Mongolian forms the comparative by putting the object compared in the ablative case (suffix -aac, etc.) and placing the adjective after it:

Лондон Улаанбаатараас том.

London is bigger than Ulan Bator.

For 'better' we can use дээр, meaning 'on', 'over', 'on top of': аль нь дээр? 'Which is better?' «Солонго» «Москва»-гаас дээр. 'The 'Rainbow' is better than the 'Moscow'.'

Тэмээгээр явснаас мориор нь дээр.
Going on horseback was better than going by camel.

The adjective is unchanged: Батаас сайн 'better than Bat'. 
өнгөрсөн муу 'worse than last year' (өнгөрөх 'to pass').

Улаанбаатараас бага хот 'a town smaller than Ulan Bator', ахаасаа том 'bigger than his elder brother', уулаас өндөр 'higher than the mountain', сүүнээс цагаан 'whiter than milk'.

Another Mongolian proverb for collectors: **Маргаанийн өөхнөөс өнөөдрийн уушиг дээр** 'Today's lungs (**уушиг**) are better than tomorrow's fat (**өөх**).'

## Superlative

The superlative is formed with the word хамгийн, the genitive case form of хамаг 'all', 'everything': хамгийн сайн 'best', хамгийн муу 'worst', etc.: Улаанбаатар жамгийн сайн рестораны нэг, 'one of the best of Ulan Bator's restaurants'.

## Telling the time

To ask 'What is the time?' Mongolians use the imperfective converb of болох: Хэдэн цаг болж байна? Гурван цаг (гурав хагас) болж байна 'It's three o'clock (half past three).'

То say 'at (a time)' the dative/locative suffix -т comes into play: Хэдэн цагт (вэ)? 'At what time?' Гурван цаг жагаст, 'At half past lhree.' If you want you can count off the minutes: Есөн цаг арван минут болж байна 'It's ten past nine', Таван цаг дочин минут болж байна 'It's five forty or twenty to six', Дөрвөн цагт таван минут цутуу байна 'It's five to four', 'five minutes short of four' (дугуу 'short of', 'insufficient'), хоёрт 'at two', дөрөв хорьд 'at four twenty'.

Хархорин хуртэл цаг нисдэг юм. The flight to Kharkhorin takes an hour.

## Other points

The words — уу 'either ... or' between alternatives may be repeated: Чи хүн — уу, чулуу юм уу? 'Are you man or stone?' The postposition төдийгүй теаль 'not only ... but also ...': Чоно төдийгүй краэс шилүүс — гол дайсан 'Not only the wolf but also the snow leopard and lynx are the main enemies of live-stock.'

Note the colloquial question toy cypaa meaning 'Why do you tisk?' or 'What are you asking about?' (imperfective verbal noun).

# Нэмэлт Yr Additional vocabulary

былэн хоол(н)	set dish	хутга(н)	knife
вахнанга хоол	à la carte	сэрээ	fork
пройн хоол	dinner	халбага(н)	spoon
оглеений коол	breakfast	таваг	plate
удийн хоол	lunch	POOTOT	cook

#### Exercise 1

Supply the voluntative suffixes and translate:

- I Нэг ресторанд (орох).
- 2 Хамт (явах).
- 3 Дэлгэрмаатай (ярих).
- 1 Улаанбаатар зочид буудалд (уулзах).
- 5 Би нэг шил шар айраг (авах). (Тэгэх).

#### Exercise 2

## Translate into English:

- Улаанбаатарт хэдэн ресторан байдаг вэ? Аль нь хамгийн сайн бэ?
- 2 «Баян гол» зочид буудлын хоол «Туул» рестораны хоолноос муу.
- 3 Миний хар тэмээ чиний саарал мориноос жижиг.
- 4 Хотын төвөөс галт тэрэгний буудал зочид буудлаас хол.
- 5 Богд Хааны ордон, Улааанбаатарын хамгийн том хийд Гандан хийдээс сайхан.

#### Exercise 3

## Translate into Mongolian:

- 1 What's the time? It's half past eleven.
- 2 When will he come? He will come at four o'clock.
- 3 When (at what time) does the train go? It leaves (sets off from) the station at 10.20.
- 4 When do you have breakfast? I eat breakfast every day at 7 o'clock.
- 5 It's now seven minutes to three. It is seven minutes past three o'clock.

# Dialogue 2

## Та нар юу вы вэ?

## What are you going to have?

David and Julie meet Bat and Delgermaa at the 'Rainbow' restant and try to decide what to order.

Бат:

Та миний хажууд суухгүй юу?

Жюли:

Тэгэлгүй яах вэ?

Бат:

Хоолны цэс хаа байна?

Жюли:

Энэ байна.

Бат:

Та нар юу авах вэ?

Дэлгэрмаа:

Би цагаан будаатай шол авна.

Жюли:

Амттай юу?

Дэлгэрмаа:

Тийм ч муу биш ээ. Надад аятайхан байдаг юм

Девид: Тэгвэл би ч бас тийм шөл авна.

Жюли: Таныг цагаан будаатай шөл авбал би ногоотой

шол авна.

Бат: Та өөр юу захиалах вэ?

Девид: Би үхрийн маханд их дуртай.

Бат: Хэрэв тийм бол бид цөм хоёрдугаар хоолонд

ухрийн гол мах авъя.

Жюли: Миний бодлоор бол гахайн мах ухрийн махнаас

дээр. Би шарсан гахайн мах идмээр байна.

Полгормаа: Тогвол би сайхан монгол хонины мах авъя. Жюли: Ямар ямар ногоо авах во? Томс, шар лууван,

байцаа бий юу?

Бат: Янз бүрийн погоо бий! Уух юм авах уу?

Певид: Хоёр шил шар айраг захиалъя. Жюли: Би нэг аяга жимений ус авъя.

BALL Why don't you come and sit next to me?

form: Why not?

BAT: Where's the menu?

torie: Here it is.

What are you going to have?

Deigerman: I'm going to have rice soup.

Torin: Is that tasty?

DEIGERMAA: Not so bad. I quite like it.

DAVID: Then I'm also going to have the same (soup).

herm: If you're having rice soup I'm having vegetable

soup.

BALL: What else are you going to order?

Dwid: I like beef a lot.

IIAI: In that case let's all have beef fillets for the second

course.

It is: In my opinion pork is better than beef. I'd like to

eat roast pork.

DITGERMAN: Then I'm going to have good Mongolian mutton.
What sort of vegetables shall we have? Are there any

potatoes, carrots or cabbage?

Wit: There are all kinds of vegetables. Shall we have

something to drink?

DAME: Let's order two bottles of beer.

If the: I'll have a glass of fruit juice.

# Шинэ Үг Vocabulary

abax	to take	тэгвэл	in that case, if so
алга	not, none	үхэр	cow, ox
амттай	tasty	хонь (хонин)	sheep
аяга(н)	glass, cup	цэс	menu
аятайхан	nice, good	хэрэв тийм бол	in that case
байщаа	cabbage	цагаан будаа	rice
бодол	opinion	цөм	all
гахай	pig	чадах	to be able
гол мах(н)	fillet	шарах	to roast
EHMC(H)	fruit	шар лууван	carrot
захиалах	to order	mar(e)	bottle
MAX(H)	meat	шөл(н)	soup
THÄM	such	янз бурийн	all kinds
төмс(н)	potato		

# Language points

## The conditional converb -вал

The 'if' (or 'when') form of the Mongolian verb is the conditional converb suffix (-вол, -вол, -вол, -вол); after stems ending in -в. -л and -м the -вал becomes -бал (-бол, -бөл, -бөл):

орвол 'if (they) enter', үзвэл 'if (he) sees', өгвөл 'if (you) give', тэгвэл 'if so', явбал 'if (you) go', etc.

бороо орвол би явахгуй 'I'm not going if it rains.'

одоо асуулт байвал асуу 'any questions?' ('Now if there are questions ask.')

бороо	rain	бороо орох	to rain
асуулт	question	асуух	to ask

The negative particle sc is used with the conditional:

Эс гарвал.

If (he) doesn't go out.

If the subjects of the clauses are different, the subject of the conditional clause is in the accusative case:

Би ирвэл чамд потне.

It (when) I come, I'll give you money.

Чамайг ирвэл би чамд менге егне.

If (when) you come, I'll give you money.

the conditional particle for may be used with verbal nouns:

Чи явах бол надад хэлээрэй.

Tell me if you go (if you go let me know).

Note the regular formation of the negative present-future verbal поин with -хгүй бол:

Би ирэхгүй бол чамд захиа явуулна.

If I don't come. I'll send you a letter.

Чамайг ирэхгүй бол би чамд захиа явуулна.

If you don't come, I'll send you a letter.

t onditional sentences may begin with хэрэв (хэрвээ), meaning 'if':

Хэрвээ тийм бол надад аргагүй.

I can't help it if that's how it is (it is so).

## Why not thus?

This dialogue includes another negative imperfective verbal noun with the verb яах, but this time the question тэгэлгүй яах вэ? why not thus?' is formed from the verb тэгэх 'to do thus'. Likewise тэгсэн ч вэ means 'agreed!', 'how else?'

## Modal particle 4

The particle uplays the role of 'and', 'too', 'also', 'even', 'although', according to context:

уулаас өндөр уулаас ч өндөр цай, сүү ч алга. энд ч тэнд ч тийм ч муу биш би ч бас higher than the mountain even higher than the mountain there is neither tea nor milk. here and there not so bad me too Similarly ямар ч 'whatever' and хэзээ ч 'whenever': хэзээ ч авч болно meaning '(You can) fetch (it) whenever (you like).' Also юу ч биш 'nothing', хэн ч биш 'nobody':

юу п мэдэхгүй юу ч хийдэггүй хэн ч мэдэхгүй doesn't know anything never does anything

doesn't know anybody (or, no one knows.)

# Нэмэлт Yr Additional vocabulary

бургер	burger	поваарь	pepper
давс(н)	salt	сонтино	onion
жигнэх	to roast, bake	тахиа	chicken
уураар	to steam	улаан лооль	tomato
най жигнэх	to brew tea	цуу	vinegar
загас(н)	fish	чанах	to boil
KOMHOT	stewed fruit	элсэн чихэр	sugar
мохоолдос	ice cream	тосонд шарах	to fry
ергест	cucumber	шницель	schnitzel

#### Exercise 4

Insert the correct personal pronouns and conditional forms:

1	Оюун өнөөдөр ир (we) кинонд явна.
2	Хүйтэн бол (уош) энд ирэх үү?
3	(You) будаатай шол ав (I) махтай шол авна.
4	(I) суутэй цай уу (to you) кофе өгнө.
5	(You) ирж чадахгүй (I) (you) утсаар ярина.

## Exercise 5

Translate into Mongolian:

- 1 If you have potatoes, I'll have carrots.
- 2 If Bat orders pork, Delgermaa will eat mutton.
- 3 If that man doesn't come, the doctor's going to town.
- 4 If you come at three o'clock, I'll give you some sweets.
- 5 If it snows, Bat will not be able to return home.

#### Exercise 6

Translate into English:

- 1 Цайны газарт цай ч байхгүй, сүү ч байхгүй байсан.
- . Тэр их сургуулийн шинэ багш чинь юу ч мэддэгтүй.
- 3 Би хоёрдугаар хоолонд шарсан төмстэй гахайн махны шницель авъя,
- 4 Зочид буудлын мөхөөлдөс компотоос амттай юу?
- 5 Би шарсан загасанд дуртай учраас хонь, үхрийн чанасан мах иддэггүй.

# Dialogue 3

Ерөөлөөр болтугай! May it be so!

With help from Genghis Khan, the Browns, Bat and Delgermaa drink to each other's health.

Бат: Эрхэм хүндэт поён Браун, хатагтай Браун, Та бүхэн Монгол оронд тавтай сайхан зочилж,

Монгол орон, монголчуудын тухай сонин сайхан юм бичиж гаргахыг бид хүсэж байна.

[«Чингис Хаан» архи хундагалав]

'Ісвид: Ерөөлөөр болтугай!

Бат: За эрүүл мэндийн төлөө!

За, гэргийн хамт сайхан танилцсан найз Бат минь

ээ! Их баярлалаа! Бид Улаанбаатарт долоо хонолоо. Их ч юм үзлээ. Бас цаана нь үзэх юм зөндөө. Танай Нацагдоржийн төрсөн нутаг Монгол орон үнэхээр сайхан орон билээ! Эрүүл

энхийн төлөө! энэ хундагыг өргөс.

Бат: Эрүүл мэндийн төлөө! [архи тогтоов] Өө дуусчихлаа! За. бас нэг шил «Чингис Хаан»

задлая. Энийг.

Девид: За. Айвал бүү хий, хийвэл бүү ай!

Жюли: Архи одоо болно оо! Девид хоёр аягыг уухад

л «Чингис Хаан» түүнийг унтуулчихдаг юм. Гэргий тань үнэхээр чанга хүн юм аа!

Девид: Яахын ч аргагүй!

Дэлгэрмаа: Т	Га	хоёр	ирэх	долоо	хоногоос	хөдөө	явах	жет
--------------	----	------	------	-------	----------	-------	------	-----

байгаа гэл үү?

Жюли: Тийм ээ, аль аймгаар явахаа одоохондоо

товлоогүй л байна.

BAT: Dear Mr and Mrs Brown, we hope that you will

have a pleasant visit to Mongolia and that you will publish interesting and nice things about Mongolia and the Mongols. (He pours some 'Genghis Khan'

(Chinggis) vodka)

DAVID: May it be so!
BAT: To (your) health!

DAVID: To (your) health! (they drink up (vodka) together)

Well, it has been good to get to know you and your wife, my friend Bat! Thank you! We have spent a week in Ulan Bator. We have even seen a lot of things. Further on there are plenty more things to see. Your Natsagdorj's homeland, Mongolia, is indeed a beautiful country! Let's raise our glasses to

(your) health!

BAT: To (your) health! (they drink up) Oh, it's finished!

Well, let's open another bottle of 'Genghis Khan'

This one.

DAVID: Fine. Nothing ventured, nothing gained!

Julie: Now that's enough vodka! When David drinks two

glasses, 'Genghis Khan' sends him straight to sleep!

BAT: Your wife is certainly (a) strict person!

DAVID: Can't be helped!

Delgerman: The two of you are thinking of going to the country

from next week, is that so?

Julie: Yes, only at the moment we just haven't decided

which provinces we'll be going round.

# Шинэ Үг Vocabulary

айх	to fear	долоо коног	week
архи(н)	vodka	дуусах	to finish
raprax	to publish	ереел	wishes, hopes
YY	Is that so?	задлах	to open
гэргий	wife	XOULOS	to visit

тондоо	plenty	унтах	to sleep
найз	friend	үнэхээр	indeed, truly
орг <b>өх</b>	to raise	хонох	to spend a night
тавтай	pleasant	хундага(н)	glass, goblet
товлох	to decide	хунцагалах	to pour
тогтооцгоох	to drink up	хүндэт	respected
	together	хүсэх	to wish
толее	for the sake of, to	эрүүл мэнд/энх	health
торсен нутаг	homeland	эрхэм	honoured, dear
гухай	about		

# Language points

#### Intensive verbs -чих-

The meaning of a verb may be intensified by the addition of the derivational suffix -чих- to the verb stem: Дуусчихлаа '(We've) completely finished (it)!' derived from дуусах plus -чих- and -лаа, and Унтуулчихдаг 'Usually is sent straight off to sleep.' from vитуулах. Similarly, босов 'got up' and босчихов 'sprang up' (from босох). The action is complete and unexpected: Бат явчихсан 'Bat went off' (from явах).

The stem of intensive verbs is sometimes used as an imperative: протигнательной протигнательн

## Concessive verb forms

this third-person form with suffixes -r (singular) and -тугай (plural) translates the idea 'May he ...' or 'May they ...'. Thus bonor! and Bonryraй! derived from болох 'to become' and meaning 'May it be so!' ('May your wishes come true') are perhaps the most common examples. Political slogans used to say: Мандтугай! 'Long live!' from the verb мандах 'to flourish'.

## From imperative to voluntative

Virom 1990-96, while the Mongolian People's Revolutionary Party was the elected ruling political party, the government newspaper Ардын Эрх 'People's Power' carried the front-page slogan Хайрт Монгол ороноо мандуулья! 'Let us make our (own) beloved

Mongolia flourish!' where мандулья is the voluntative form of мандулах which is the causative (see below) derived from мандах. The introduction of a voluntative slogan after the reforms of 1990 was in marked contrast to the imperative used during the preceding 69 years of communist rule: Орон бүхий пролетари нар нэгдэггүн! 'Proletarians of all lands, unite!' where нэгдэггүн is a second-person plural imperative -ггүн of нэгдэх 'to unite'. 'become one'. Other common uses of this imperative form include Oporтун! 'Come in!' and Cyyrryn! 'Sit down!'; when addressed to only one person the form is more polite 'Please come in!', etc.

## Causative verbs -уул-

Verb forms in which someone causes an action to take place are called causative. The derivational suffixes for the causative include -уул- (-үүл-):

унтуулах

to send to sleep, from yhrax to sleep

Similar examples based on verbs we came across earlier:

байгуулах

явуулах

to organize, from **bank** to be to send, from to go

Other derivational suffixes used to form the causative will be reviewed later.

## Modal particle π

This particle is used for emphasis – 'really', 'certainly', 'just', 'still' etc. As Julie says, товлоогуй л байна. 'We just haven't decided.' It follows the word it qualifies. There are many colloquial uses: нэг л 'only one'; Тэг л дээ 'Do so then', 'Why not (do that)?'

Сүх л мэднэ.

оросоор и ярьдаг

Sükh knows all right. certainly speaks Russian

Дэлгэрмаа номоо үзэж л байна уу? Is Delgermaa still reading her book?

## Contracted form of past perfect tense

In asking questions expressing hesitation or uncertainty or reminding someone about something the contracted form -л of the past perfect tense in -лаа may be used:

Тийм бил үү? Та надтай уулзлуу? Is that so? or Really? Have we met before?

Delgermaa asks Хедее —— гэж байгаа гэл үү? 'You are thinking of going to the country, is that so?' where явах гэж байгаа means 'nre thinking of going', 'planning to go' and гэл үү? 'Is it so?', 'Are you saying?'

### Uses of болох

The verb болох is very versatile and appears in many contexts: (1) 'to be' in time expressions, as we have seen (page 78); (2) 'to become' as in эрүүл болох 'to grow healthy'; (3) 'to acquire' with the comitative case тэрэгтэй болсон 'got a cart'; (4) 'to decide' as in явах болсон 'decided to go'; and (5) 'to be enough', 'sufficient' as in Dialogue 3 Архи болно! 'That's enough vodka!'

## Other points

We saw earlier some participatory verbs (derivational suffix -maa-) where the action is carried out in a group. Here we have Torroomroos (They) drank up together derived from the participatory form to rorroox 'to drink up together of rorroox 'to drink up' (and also to establish and 'to memorize').

The verb sax and v combine in the expression Saxum v apraryž! There's nothing to be done! Can't be helped!

Julie says Аль аймгаар явахаа товлоогүй 'We haven't decided vet which provinces we'll be going round' where явахаа is the present-future verbal noun plus the reflexive (accusative) ending -aa: 'our going round'.

#### Exercise 7

Translate into Mongolian:

- 1 Oyuun certainly speaks Russian.
- 2 Is Sükh still working at the Ministry of External Relations?
- 3 I went to the central post office to send something to my elder brother.
- 4 Mr Brown plans to go to the country with his wife next week.
- 5 Bat jumped up and went off.

#### Exercise

Supply the causative forms of the following verbs and translate them into English:

явах

2 opox

3 бичих

4 узэх

5 гэрлэх

#### Exercise 9

Translate into English:

Ереелеер болог! Ереелеер болтугай!

Яахын ч аргагүй.

Тэгэлгүй яах вэ.

Бололгуй яах вэ.

5 Байлгүй яах вэ.

# Dialogue for comprehension 4

Бат:

Та нар маргааш орой завтай юу?

Певид:

Завтай байлгүй яах вэ. Юу гэж?

Бат:

Нэг сайхан ресторанд оръё. Бидэнтэй хамт явна

yy?

Девид:

За, тэгье. Хотын аль ресторан хамгийн сайн бэ? «Мандухай», «Улаанбаатар» динов буудлын

Бат:

ресторан хоёр хамгийн сайн.

Девид:

«Мандухай» ресторан их сайн хоолтой.

Бат:

Хэрэв тийм бол «Мандухай» явъя.

Невид:

За, маргааш хэдэн цагт вэ?

Бат:

Долоон цаг арван таван минутад.

Девиц:

Болно. Зочид буудлын ресторанд уулзъя?

Бат:

Тэгье.

(дараа өдөр нь:) Жюли:

Та нар юу авах вэ?

Дэлгэрмаа:

Би улаан лоолийн шөлөнд 📖 дуртай.

Жюли:

Улаан лоолийн шөл байна уу?

Үйлчлэгч:

Байхгүй, дуусчихсан. Харин будаа, ногоотой шөл

байна.

Жюли:

Та нарыг будаатай шөл авбал би ногоотой шөл

авна.

Девид:

Би ногоон хоолтон биш, ногоотой шөлөнд дургүй.

хонины маханд дуртай.

Дэлгэрмаа: Хэрэв тийм бол хоёр будаатай шөл бас нэг

ногоотой шел авъя.

Үйлчлэгч:

Тэгье.

Жюли:

Би хоёрдугаар хоолонд шарсан гахайн мах авмаар

байна.

Дэлгэрмаа:

Бат бид хоёр тахианы шарсан мах авъя.

Жюли:

Ямар ямар ногоо байна?

Үйлчлэгч:

Чанасан томс, сонгино, шар лууван бий.

Девид: Үйлчлэгч:

Тэрнээсээ бидэнд авчираарай! Та нар уух юм юу авах вэ?

Жюли: Би «Русское

шампанское»

уумаар байна.

Шилээрээ их хямдхан. Таныг надтай хамт уувал би их жаргалтай байна. Уулзсаны баяр хийе.

ранцаан ус шүүс(н)

ногоон хоолтон

mineral water juice

хар цай пив(н)

дарс(н)

black tea beer wine

нимбэгний ундаа шампанск

lemonade champagne

vegetarian

оргилуун дарс чацаргана

sparkling wine sea buckthorn

Note: «Pycckoe mamnanckoe» or 'Russian champagne', formerly «Conerckoe шампанское» 'Soviet champagne' is a sparkling wine still bottled with this label in Odessa, Riga and elsewhere. The yellow berries of sea buckthorn are used to make two drinks, a thick sweet juice and a white fruit wine.

## Улаанбаатарын хэдэн ресторан

## ЖАЛСРАЙ РЕСТОРАН

Соулийн гудамж (Оросын

элчиний урд залуу техникчдын Канитал зочид буудал ордонд) Утас: 314304

Одор бур 12.00-22.00 Гал тогоо: Хот дог, кекс,

свалад, пицца, тахиа

## ЖАРГАЛАН РЕСТОРАН

Ард Аюушийн гудамж (Монгол эмэгтэйн сүү самарч

байгаа хөшөөний хажууд)

Утас: 368035

Одор бур 12.00-01.00 Гал тогоо: Хятад болон

спроп хоол

## нью капитал ресторан

Энх тайваны өргөн чөлөө Нью

Утас: 358235

Өдөр бур 09.00-01.00

Гал тогоо: Монголын болон

европийн хоол

## ПИЦЦА ФАСТ ФООД

Энх тайваны өргөн чөлөө (Оросын элчин сайдын

яамаас урагш) Утас: 322859

Өдөр бүр 10.00-01.00

Гал тогоо: Терел бурийн

пинцагаар гээрээр үйлчилнэ

#### марко поло ресторан

Дөрвөн уул захын урд 4 давхар зочид буудалд Утас: 310783 Өдөр бүр 12.00-21.00 Европийн 20 төрлийн хоол

#### **МОСКВА РЕСТОРАН**

3-р хороолол шанага барьсан монгол эмэгтэйн хөшөөн урд Утас: 360361 Өдөр бүр 10.00-22.00 Гал тогоо: Орос болон европ хоол

#### СӨҮЛ РЕСТОРАН

хуучин Туяа ресторан

Утас: 326554 Өдөр бүр 12.00-22.00 Солонгос тогоочдийн бэлтгэсэн олон орны төрөл бүрийн хоол

Хүүхдийн найрамдал парк,

#### ПРАГА РЕСТОРАН

Амарсанаагийн гудамж (Гандангийн баруун талд) Утас: 366218 Өдөр бүр 10.00-20.00 Чех болон олон улсын хоол

#### солонго ресторан

Сөүлийн гудамж, Хүүхэд залуучуудын театрын урд Утас: 329675 Мягмараас бусад өдөр 12.00-22.00 Европ болон монгол хоол

#### СЭЛЭНГЭ РЕСТОРАН

Сансарын Жинпан дэлгүүрээс зүүн тийш 2 давхар байшин Утас: 56935 Өдөр бүр 08.00-04.00 Орос болон европ хоол

ran Toroo	cuisine	самрах	to stir, ladle
гэрээр үйлчлэх	home delivery	солонгос	Korea(n)
жаргалан(г)	happiness	перел	kind
залуу	young	шанага(н)	ladle

Note: The эмэгтэйн сүү самарч байгаа 'stirring milk' and шанага барьсан 'holding a ladle' эмэгтэйн are the same. Cancap 'Cosmos' is a district."

# 5 Давс хийвэл уустал, ажил хийвэл дуустал

Never do things by halves

#### In this lesson you will learn:

- · How indirect speech is structured
- Ordinal numbers and days of the week
- Another form of the imperative
- · The terminal converb (until)
- · The continuous converb (keeps on)

# Dialogue 1

Жуулчид очдог гурван газар
Three places much visited by tourists

Hat tells David and Julie about three places tourists visit in the Mongolian countryside.

Би жуулчдад зориулсан нэгэн сонирхолтой лавлах ном уншиж байна.

Чевид: Түүнийг над үзүүлээч!

Жаахан жүлээж бай! Энэ номд «Жуулчид их очдог говь нутгийн нэгэн сайхан газар нь Гурван Сайхан уулын Ёлын ам гэдэг дархан цаазат газар билээ» гэж байна. Энэ газар Өмнөговь аймагт байдаг юм.

!! Вид: Алив надад от доо наад номоо!

Та сонсооч. «Жуулчдын анхаарлыг их татдаг хоёр дахь газар бол Хангайн уулархаг орон юм. Дэлхий дахинд нэрд гарсан Хар Хорумыг хуучин балгасын хамт үзэж сонирхсон хүн маш олон байна».

Жюли: Ойлголоо. Жуулчид их цугладаг гуравдахь газар хаа байна вэ?

Бат: Жуулчид их цугладаг гурав дахь нутаг бол «Хэнтий уулархаг бүсэд хамаарах Тэрэлж билээ» гэж бичсэн байна. Тэрэлж эндээс хол биш. Улаанбаатараас зүүн хойд зүгт оршдог юм.

Девид: Тэрэлж рашаантай юу гэж асуувал болохсон болов уу?

Бат: Энэ лавлахад «Тэрэлжийн нэг онцлог бол энэ хавийн геологийн тогтоц тун өвөрмөц байгаад оршино» гэж бичжээ. Бас зарим хаданд агуй ч байдаг гэж бичсэн байна. Гэвч Тэрэлжийн рашааны тухай юу ч бичээгүй байна.

Жюли: Бид Хар Хорум руу яаж явах вэ?

Бат: Та УАЗ машин юм уу онгоцоор Хархорин хот руу явж болно. Бас өдөр бүр автобус явж байгаа. Энч автобус Тээврийн товчоо гэдэг газраас явдаг юм Миний бодлоор Хар Хорум руу очилгүй бол болохгүй

BAT: I'm reading an interesting guidebook for tourists.

DAVID: Show it to me!

BAT: Wait a bit! This book says, 'One of the places in the Gobe much visited by tourists is the Yolyn Am (Vulture Gorge) reserve in the Gurvan Saikhan (Three Beauties) mountains.' This place is in South Gobi province.

DAVID: Come on, give me this book!

BAT: Listen: 'The second place to which tourists' attention is greatly attracted is the Khangai mountain area. Very many people have been interested in seeing world-famous Karakorum with the old city ruins.'

JULIE: I understand. Where is the third place that tourists gather a lot?

BAT: The third place where tourists gather a lot is 'Terelj, which is part of the Khentii mountain zone'. Terelj is not far from here, it is north-east of Ulan Bator.

DAVID: I wonder if perhaps I could ask you whether there is a spring at Terelj.

BAT: This guidebook says that 'one of the features of Terelj is the peculiar geological structure situated nearby'. It says also that in some cliffs there are even caves. But it doesn't say anything about a Terelj mineral spring.

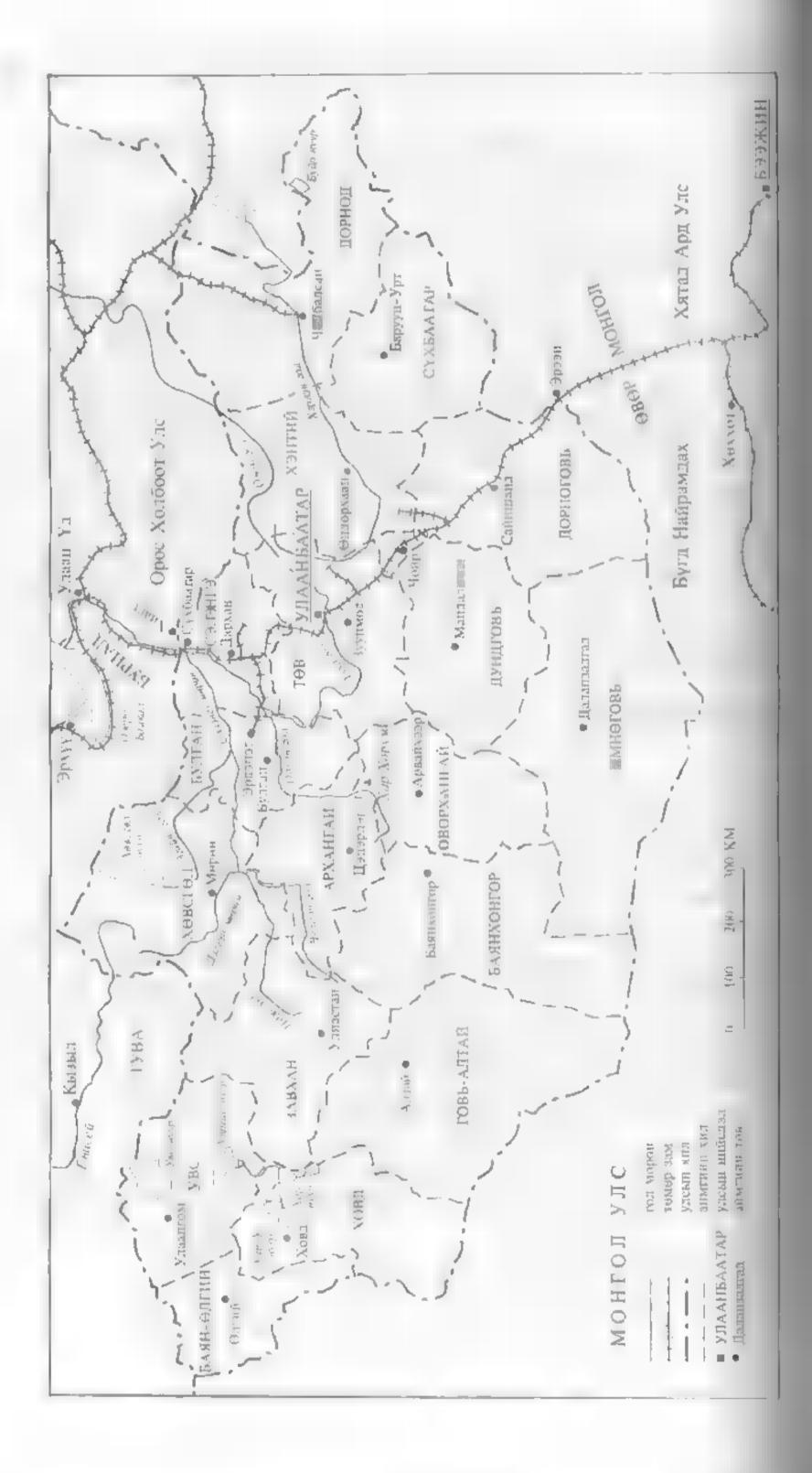
JULIE: How can we get to Karakorum?

You can go to Kharkhorin town by UAZ [Russian-made four-wheel drive cross-country vehicle] or by plane. There is also a daily bus. The bus goes from the Transport Office [Ulan Bator]. In my opinion one really must visit Karakorum.

The Gobi zone, on the border between Mongolia and China, comprises South (Омпетовь), Middle Gobi (Дундговь) and East Gobi (Дорноговь) provinces map). Gobi is mostly not desert but defined as 'steppe plain where vegetation sparse, trees and flowing water are very rare, the topsoil is sandy or gravelly, and marmots (тарвага) live' (quotation from Tsevel, Y. (1966) Concise Explanatory (the Mongolian Language, Ulan Bator: State Publishing Committee). The Mongolian Province, named after the mountain range. The Khangai mountains give their name to the central ylongolian provinces of Arkhangai (Архангай) and Övörkhangai (Оверхангай), maning literally the 'back' (ар) and 'breast' (овер) of the Khangai, i.e. the northern and southern slopes. Karakorum (marked on the map) and nearby Kharkhorin town in Övörkhangai. The Khentii mountains are to be found in Central (Тов) and Ehentii (Хэнгай) provinces, while Terelj is an hour's drive from the capital.

# Шинэ Үг Vocabulary

антобус(н)	bus	нутаг	territory
mryR	cave	нэрд гарсан	famous
AM(H)	mouth; gorge	онцлог	feature
вихаарал	attention	евермец	peculiar
балгас(н)	ruin(ed town)	сонирхох	to take interest
болов уу	perhaps	COHCOX	to listen
бус	zone, belt	Tatax	pull, attract
геологийн	geological	OOPEOT	office, bureau
дархан цаазат	nature	тогтоц	structure
газар	reserve	тун	very
(нихад) йихпед	world(-wide)	тээвэр	transport
зарим	certain	уулархаг	mountainous
<b>бл</b>	vulture	Хавь	vicinity
маш	very	хад(ан)	rock, cliff
наад	this here	хамаарах	to belong to
онгод(н)	vessel, ship	цаан	further
нисэх онгоц(н)	aeroplane	пуглах	to gather



Note: The towns of Darkhan, Erdenet and Choir (Дархан, Эрдэнэт, Чойр) shown on the map in Selenge, Bulgan and East Gobi provinces (Сэлэнгэ, Булган, Цорноговь), are the centres of three other provinces, formed in 1994, which are too mall in size to mark clearly: Darkhan-Uul, Orkhon and Gobi-Sümber provinces Дархан-Уул, Орхон, Говь-Сүмбэр) respectively. For more detail see the Central / one map on page 180.

гол мөрөн	rivers	хил	border	
томор зам	railway	нийслэл	capital	

## Language points

## Direct speech

Direct speech is the words actually spoken by a speaker, or quotations from written texts, which in English are normally placed within quotation marks. In Mongolian dialogues, quotations usually begin with a dash:

-Та дахиад нэг хэлээд өгөөч?

'Would you repeat that?'

However, quotation marks (« and ») are used around quotations and proper names:

«Бид маргааш хөдөө явна» гэж дүү надад хэллээ.

'We are going to the country tomorrow,' (my) younger brother said to me.

«Баян гол» зочид буудал. The Bayan Gol Hotel.

## Indirect speech

Indirect (reported) speech is a third-person account of what a speaker (or quotation) said; it includes a verb indicating speech, and the speaker's words are contained in a subordinate clause. In English the subordinate clause usually begins with 'that'; first- and second-person pronouns change to third-person; and the tenses are back-shifted:

Direct: 'The second place to which tourists are greatly attracted is the Khangai mountain area.'

Indirect: After that Bat said that the second place to which tourists were greatly attracted was the Khangai mountain area.

In Mongolian the subordinate clause is cited as spoken (quoted), without change of persons or tenses, the verb indicating reported speech coming at the end of the sentence. The subject of the main clause may be separated from the subordinate clause by a comman

Direct: «Жуулчдын анхаарлыг татдаг хоёр дахь газар бол Хангайн уулархаг орон юм».

Indirect: Дараа Бат, жуулчдын анхаарлыг Татдаг хоёр дахь газар бол Хангайн уулархаг орон юм гэсэн. Дулмаа надад: «Энэ пальто чамд зохихгүй байна» гэсэн учир авсангүй.

Because Dulmaa said to me, 'This overcoat does not suit you.'
I didn't buy it. (Dulmaa told me that the overcoat did not
suit me so I didn't buy it.)

## Separation of verb from subject

The subject (the speaker) may be separated from the verb indicating speech ('said', 'remarked', etc.) by more than one sentence of the words spoken:

Энэ долоо хоногт цаг агаар ямар байхыг цаг уурч Сарантукагаас өчигдөр асуухад,

— Хоёрдугаар сарын 19-нд төв, зүүн зүгийн нутгаар цас бударна. Бусад хугацаанд цас орохгүй, зөөлөн салхитай. Хугацааны эцсээр ихэнх нутгаар хүйтний эрч 3-5 хэмээр суларна гэв.

When weather forecaster Sarantuyaa was asked yesterday what the weather would be like this week, (she) said: 'On 19th February there will be snow flurries in central and eastern regions. For the rest (other) of the period it will not snow (and there will be) m gentle wind. Around the end of the period over most regions the intensity of cold will decline by 3-5 degrees.'

The subject (speaker) may also be separated from the words spoken:

Тэгээд хэлмэрчээр дамжуулан хүнээс:
—Та нар уу гэж асуув. Тэр хүн:

- —Явахгүй гэж байна. Дараагийн хүнээс:
- —Явах уу? гэж асуув.
- —Явна гэж байна.

So relaying through the interpreter (I) asked the man, 'Are you going?' That man says, '(We) are not going.' (I) asked the next man, 'Are you going?' '(We) are going,' (he) says.

itar araap	weather	цаг уурч	weather forecaster
цас(н)	snow	будрах	to flurry
хугацаа	period	зөөлөн	gentle
салхи(н)	wind	хнехи	most
эрч	intensity	сулрах	decline
и расмисх	interpreter	дамжуулах	to relay

## Imperative in -aa4

A polite imperative in the second-person singular and plural is formed by adding -aay (-ooy, -eey, -994) to the verb stem e.g.

сонсооч (please) listen

дахиад хэлээд өгөөч (please) repeat for me.

Түүнийгээ над үзүүлээч!

Please show it (that thing of yours) to me!

Ta сониноо надад өгөөч! Би унппаад өгьс.

Give me this paper (of yours)! I'll give (it) when I've read (it).

Галт тэрэг паг болдоо, та нар вагондаа суугаач! It's time for the train to leave, please board your carriage!

## Verbal noun plus -can

## Ordinal numbers

One way of turning cardinal numbers (page 43) into ordinal numbers is to add to the stem without fleeting n the suffix -дэх (for front vowels) or -дахь (for back vowels):

нэгдэх 'first', хоёрдахь 'second', гуравдахь 'third', дөрөвдэх 'fourth', etc.; the stem and suffix are sometimes written separately (нэг дэх, хоёр дахь, etc.).

## Days of the week

Ordinal numbers in -дэх/-дахь are used for five days of the week the numbering beginning from Monday: нэгдэх өдөр 'first day':

нэгдэх өдөр	Monday
хоёрдахь өдөр	Tuesday
гуравдахь өдөр	Wednesday
дөрөвдэх өдөр	Thursday
тавдахь едер	Friday

Saturday and Sunday however are not 'sixth' and 'seventh' days but xarac сайн өдөр 'half good day' and (бүтэн) сайн өдөр '(whole) good day', no doubt reflecting the five-and-a-half-day working week which has been in force for many years. These names are used in parallel with the Tibetan-based names (page 74).

## Taking one's bearings

Reflecting the duplication of the principal compass points (see page 56), some main subdivisions have multiple forms including the following:

баруун хойно/баруун умар/умар өрнө	north-west
зүүн хойно	north-east
баруун өмнө/баруун урд	south-west
зүүн өмнө/зүүн урд	south-east

As with the principal points, case suffixes indicate location or direction: зуун хойноо 'to the north-east', зуун хойноо 'from the north-east', зуун урагшаа 'to the south-east', баруун урд зүгт 'to the south-west', баруун өмнөд 'in the south-west', etc.

#### Use of ablative case

Note that we ask a question 'from' someone, using the ablative (-aac, -ooc, etc.):

Би танаас нэг юм асуумаар байна. I would like to ask you something.

Бат надаас, чи энэ номыг уншсан уу гэж асуув. Bat asked me whether I had read this book.

## Noun plurals

For the plural of уул 'mountain' the text cited gives уулс, but some speakers prefer уулнууд with fleeting n: (ууланд 'in the mountains').

The word Gobi (говь) has a plural too (the Mongols say there are 33 different Gobis), but there is no agreement on which plural form is correct: Говьнууд, Говинууд от Говиуд.

## **Topic indicators**

The dialogue contains several examples of the use of the topic indicator or emphatic particle бол: хоёр дахь нутаг бол ... гурав дахь нутаг бол ... амралтын нэг онцлог бол ... Its purpose is to emphasise the topic, usually the subject, and in some circumstances to identify it: бол may be translated 'as for': одоо бол 'nowadays'.

The particles **болбол** and **нь** are used for the same purpose, except that **нь** also suggests belonging to or being part of something: **маргаа**ш 'tomorrow', **маргаа**ш 'the next day'.

## Double negatives

The negative present-future verbal noun болохгүй has double negative combinations: Би явалгүй (бол) болохгүй 'I must go.' Би ирэлгүй (бол) болохгүй 'I must come' where the literal meaning is 'Not going is not allowed', etc. Hence очилгүй бол болохгүй 'not visiting not permitted', means '(You) really must visit!'

Sometimes the present-future verbal noun suffix -xryn may replace -nryn:

Apra хэмжээ авахгүй бол болохгүй.

Measures must be taken. 'Not taking is not allowed.'

#### Exercise 1

Translate the following direct speech into Mongolian:

1 Julie: 'Did you understand?'
BAT: 'Yes, I understood.'

2 David: 'What book are you reading?'

JULIE: 'I'm reading a guidebook for tourists in Mongolia.'

3 David: 'Show me that!'

BAT: 'Wait a bit!'

4 Junii: 'How does one go to Karakorum?'
Delgermaa: 'One can go by car or by plane.'

5 The guidebook says: 'The Gurvan Saikhan mountains are situ-

ated in South Gobi province.'

#### Exercise 2

Translate the following indirect speech into Mongolian:

Julie asked whether he had understood. Bat replied that he had understood.

2 David asked what book she was reading. Julie answered that she was reading a guidebook for tourists in Mongolia.

3 David asked Bat to show him that. Bat told him to wait a bit.

4 Julie asked how one could go to Karakorum. Delgermaa said one could go by car or by plane.

5 The guidebook said that the Gurvan Saikhan mountains were in South Gobi province.

### Exercise 3

Pair off the days of the week:

пүрэв хоёрдахь өдөр бүтэн сайн өдөр бямба тавдахь өдөр гуравдахь өдөр ням дөрөвдэх өдөр мягмар нэгдэх өдөр лхагва даваа хагас сайн өдөр баасан

## Exercise 4

Translate the following sentences using the polite imperative:

Please show it (that) to us!

2 Give Bat this book of yours!

- 1 Please say that again!
- 4 Please board the bus!
- Please go by air! (Take a plane!)

# Dialogue 2

Та хэдий хүртэл Хархоринд байх вэ? How long will you stay in Kharkhorin?

Without Bat's guidebook the Browns cannot make up their minds about their trip to Mongolia's ancient capital.

Бат: Та нар Монголд ирсээр удаж байна уу?

Невид: Бид Улаанбаатарт ирсээр гурван долоо хоног гаран болж байна. Ажил хэргээр Монголд удаа дараа ирж байна. Энэ удаа зургадугаар сарын

хоринд ирсэн.

Бат: Та ирсээр ямар ажилд голлон анхаарч байна? Жюли: Би он гарсаар Монгол улсын тухай нэг ном

хийж байна. Манай оюутнуудад хэрэгтэй юм!

Дэпэрмаа: Лут их ажил болно доо!

жюли: Тийм ээ! Би хэдэн сар номоо бичсээр шоно

орой болтол суув. Би арван нэгэн сарын эцсээр

номоо бичиж дуусах хэрэгтэй байна. Дэлгэрмаа: Та нар Хархорин руу хэзээ явахаар ни

элгэрмаа: Та пар Хархорип руу хэзээ явахаар шийдээд байна?

Жюли: Шийдээгүй байна. Таныг амралтад яваад иртэл

бид хотод хүлээж байя.

Бат: Та тэнд аль хэр удаан суух вэ?

Певид: Сайн мэдэхгүй. Энэ номд юу гэж бичсэн байпа

вэ?

Бат: Тодруулбал аль ном?

Цевид: Таны лавлах номд узье. Бид өнөөдөр шийдэх

хэрэгтэй байна.

Бат: Тэгье, тэгье. Май. Та үнэнээсээ хэлж байна уу? Девид: Үнэнээсээ хэлэлгүй яах вэ. Давс хийвэл уустал.

ажил хийвэл дуустал гэдэг биз дээ?

BAT: How long have you been staying in Mongolia?

David: We came to Ulan Bator more than three weeks are

We came to Ulan Bator more than three weeks ago.

I come to Mongolia on business quite often. This

time I arrived on 20th June.

BAT: What work have you been concentrating on since

you came?

DAVID: Since the beginning of the year I have been writing

a book about Mongolia. My students need it!

Delgermaa: That's a big job!

DAVID: Yes indeed! For several months I have sat writing

my book until late at night. I must finish writing my

book by the end of November.

Delgerman: Have you decided when you are going to

Kharkhorin?

JULIE: We haven't decided yet. We wanted to stay in town

until you return from holiday.

BAT: How long will you stay there?

DAVID: I don't know exactly. What does that book say?

BAT: Which book? Explain.

DAVID: Let me have a look at your guidebook. We must

decide today.

BAT: Yes, yes. Here you are. Are you serious?

David: Of course I'm serious. Don't they say, never do

things by halves? (lit. 'If you add salt let it dissolve:

if you do work finish it!')

# Шинэ Yr Vocabulary

ажил хэргээр	on business	тодруулах	to make clear
амралт	holiday	удаа дараа	repeatedly
анхаарах	to pay attention	удах	to stay, take time
гаран	over, more than	уусах	to dissolve
голнон	mainly	хүрэх	to reach, arrive
лут	huge, immense	x9p9r	business
май	here you are	шийдэх	to decide
оюуган	student	шене орой	late at night

# Language points

## Continuous converb -caap

The converb adding -caap (-coop, -coop, -coop) to the verb stem describes a continuous action going on from the beginning of the main action ('since'):

Та Монголд ирсээр удаж байна уу?

How long have you been staying in Mongolia?

(How long is it that you are staying since you came to Mongolia?)

он гарсаар since the beginning of the year

Би Улаанбаатарт ирсээр гурван жил гаруй боллоо.

It's more than three years since I came to Ulan Bator.

Combined with **6axx** the continuous converb means 'keeps on . . . . .:

ирсээр байна

keeps on coming

Би түүнийг хүлээсээр байна.

I have been waiting for him.

Долларын ханш өссөөр байх уу?

Will the dollar exchange rate keep on growing?

Туул голын усны төвшин нэмэгдсээр байна. Level of Tuul river still rising (newspaper headlines).

## Terminal converb - тал

The converb in -тал (-тол, -төл, -тэл) describes an action which limits another action, 'until':

Би хэдэн сар номоо бичсээр прой болтол суув.

'For several months I have sat writing my book until late at night.' ('... sat going on writing my book until it became late ...')

Давс хийвэл уустал, ажил хийвэл дуустал!

If you add salt let it dissolve; if you do work finish it! (Never do things by halves!)

If the two subjects are different, the first is in the accusative case:

Таныг амралтад яваад иртэл . . .

Until you return from holiday . . .

Намайг иртэл хүлээж байгаарай.

Please wait until I come.

Further examples:

Намар болтол тэд энд

They'll work here till autumn (comes).

Сүх далайтал үхэр амар.

The ox is calm until the axe is brandished.

(the lull before the storm)

The word **xypron** meaning 'up to', 'as far as', although used independently, is evidently **n** terminal converb of the verb **xypox** 'to reach':

Хэдий хуртэл тэнд байх вэ?

How long (up till when) will you stay there?

Нэрээ хүртэл солив.

(I) even changed (went so far as to change) my name:

Similarly удтал 'for a long time' may derive from удах 'to stay'.

## Ordinal numbers

Another way of turning cardinals into ordinals is to add to the cardinal numbers (stem without fleeting n) the sulfix -дүгээр (for front vowels) or -дугаар (for back vowels): нэгдүгээр 'first'. хоёрдугаар 'second', гуравдугаар 'third', дөрөвдүгээр 'fourth', etc.; 'sixth' and 'seventh' (зургадугаар, долдугаар) are slightly irregular, dropping vowels: арван зургадугаар зуун 'the 16th century'.

## Months of the year

Ordinal numbers in -дугаар/-дугээр are used for months of the year, the numbering beginning from нэгдүгээр сар 'first moon/month' or 'January' and ending with арван хоёрдугаар сар 'December'.

Alternatively, the months can be counted with cardinal numbers (with fleeting n); **H**9r cap, **x**0ëp cap, **r**ypbah cap, apbah **H**9r9h cap.

## Days of the month

Cardinal numbers (with fleeting n) plus the dative/locative suffixes -г/-д are used to indicate on which days of the month an event look place: энэ сарын нэгэнд 'on the first of this month', хоёрт (ог хоёронд) 'on the second', гурванд 'on the third', хоринд 'on the 20th', гучинд 'on the 30th'.

## Other points

Confused about which book Julie is speaking of, Bat says: Тодруулбал? 'Explain?' He is using the conditional converb (page 82) of the causative verb (page 88) тодруулах 'to clarify' (from тод 'clear'), 'if made clear?'

#### Exercise 5

Translate the following sentences into Mongolian using the continuous converb:

- I How long has he been staying in Mongolia?
- 2 The ambassador has been in Ulan Bator more than four years.
- 3 It's been snowing since the beginning of the year.
- 4 They have been waiting for me.
- 5 Delgermaa has been reading her guidebook.

#### Exercise 6

Translate the following sentences into Mongolian using the terminal converb:

- 1 Please wait until she comes.
- 2 How long shall we stay here?
- 3 Bat will stay in London until the spring.
- 4 We worked together until Bat went home.
- 5 When I left home it was snowing.

#### Exercise 7

Translate the following dates into Mongolian:

- 1 My birthday is 24th June.
- 2 Monday is the first day of the week.

- 3 They are coming on Wednesday 3rd October.
- 4 People's Revolution Day is 11th July.
- 5 The 13th December was a Sunday.

# Dialogue 3

Одоо яах билээ? What's to be done now?

Bat uses the guidebook to persuade David that there might be some thing to see at Karakorum after all.

Девид: За, лавлах номд «Хархорины дэргэд 1220 (мянга

хоёр зуун хорин) онд Алс Дорнод, Дундад Ази Дорнод Европын худалдааны замын уулзвар дээр худалдаа, гар үйлдвэрийн томоохон хот

Хархорум байгуулагджээ» гэж бичжээ.

Бат: Тэр бүлэгт, Өгөөдэй хааны үед Хархорумыг

удсын нийслэл болгож 1235 (мянга хоёр зуун гучин таван) он хуртэл өргөжүүдэн барилгажуулсаар байв гэж үргэлжлүүлэн бичсэн

байна.

Девид: Гэвч лавлах ном, Хархорум хот XVI (арван

зургадугаар) зуунд аян дайнд сүйдэж одоо түүний орд харшаас ганцхан суурь чулуу нь л үлджээ гэж тэмдэглэсэн байна. Тэнд юу ч

байхгүй!

Дэлгэрмаа: Харин дараагийн бүлэгт, 1585 (мянга таван зуул

наян таван) онд Хархорум хот байсан газрын дэргэд монголын шарын шашны анхны сүм хийдийн нэг Эрдэнэ-Зууг байгуулав гэж бичсэн

байна.

Бат: Зөв. Өндөр цагаан хэрмэн хашаанд гуряан сүм

бий гэж бичжээ. «Тэдгээр сүмд алт мөнгөөр урлаж хийсэн суварга, цамын баг хувцас, эрдэнийн чулуу шигтгэж алт мөнгөөр хийсэн гоёл чимэглэлийн зүйл олон бий». Ёстой сайхан!

Жюли: Одоо яах билээ? Хархорин руу явах билетээ

одоо буртгуулэх үү?

DAVID: Ah, the guidebook says, 'Near Kharkhorin a big

town of trade and handicrafts named Karakorum

was founded in 1220 at the junction of trade routes from the Far East, Central Asia and Eastern Europe.'

BAI: That chapter continues, saying that Karakorum

became the country's capital in the times of Ögedei Khan and went on growing and developing until

1235.

DAVID: But the guidebook emphasizes that in the 16th

century Karakorum town was destroyed in a (military) campaign and now all that remains of its palaces is the foundation stones! There's nothing

there!

Delgermaa: On the other hand the next chapter confirms that in

1585 one of the Mongolian 'yellow faith's' first monasteries called Erdene-Zuu was built near the

place where Karakorum had been.

BAIT Correct. It says that there are three temples inside a

white high-walled compound. 'In these temples are many artistically made gold and silver stupas, tsam dance masks and costumes, and gold and silver ornaments set with precious stones.' Wonderful!

HILLE: What's to be done now? Shall we get our tickets to

Kharkhorin booked now?

Note: The 'yellow faith' is the Gelugpa or 'yellow hat' form of Tibetan Buddhism which was encouraged in Mongolia after Altan Khan was converted in 1578 by the libetan leader Sonam Gyatso, to whom Altan Khan accorded the title Dalai Lama.

# Шинэ Yr Vocabulary

4JIC	far	дайн	war
AFF(AH)	gold	дайн	campaign
апх(ны)	first	ёстой	truly, really
бийгуулах	to build		correct
барилгажуулах	to develop	зүйл	object
билет	ticket	зуун	century
булэг	chapter	орд харш	palaces
буртгүүлэх	to get booked	ергежүүлэх	to broaden
ранцхан	only	ендер	high
пеплемин прог	ornament	суварга	stupa, shrine

суурь (суурин)	foundations	хедлу	to stay, remain
суйдэх	to be destroyed	xamaa	enclosure
томоохон	big, important	хувцас(н)	clothing
деещет	those	хэрэм(н)	wall, fortress
тэмдэглэх	to emphasize	пания	religion
урлах	to make artistically	пинттэх	to inlay
ye	time, period	енедде	jewel

# Language points

## Modal converb -ан

The modal converb is formed by adding -н to the verb stem. Stems ending in a consonant or soft sign need a linking vowel: -ан, -он -он, -эн. It is widely used in various combinations to express an action occurring simultaneously or merging with that of the main verb. Previous examples we have seen include худалдан авах 'to buy', 'selling take', where худалдан is the modal converb of the verb худалдах 'to sell'; and хүлээн авах 'to receive', 'receiving take', хүлээн coming from хүлээх 'to receive', 'wait for'. The combinations create new words in English: another example is хамтран ажиллах 'to cooperate', 'acting jointly work' where хамтрах means 'to act jointly'. In the case of зохион байгуулах 'to organize', 'composing build' the modal converb зохион is derived from — meaning 'to compose'.

A particularly polite verb морилох 'to deign to' is combined in its modal converb form морилон with other verbs to make requestive.g. Морилон орно уу? 'Would you be so kind as to enter?' Don't confuse this converb in vowel plus -н with the present-future tense in -н plus vowel: Тавтай морилно уу? is translated as 'Welcome! (тавтай means 'pleasant', 'undisturbed').

## Causative verbs

We saw (page 88) that the derivational suffix -уул- attached to the verb stem created a class of causative verbs, indicating that an action was caused (or permitted). In this dialogue there is a more complex example: өргөжүүлэн барилгажуулсаар байв meaning went on growing and developing'. Here өргөжүүлэн is the modal converb of the causative өргөжүүлэх 'to grow', 'broaden' from өргөжих 'to expand'; and барилгажуулсаар is the continuous

nonverb of the causative барилгажуулах 'to build up, develop', hom барилгажих 'to become developed'.

## Passive verbs -гд-

The derivational suffix -гд- is the usual one for forming the passive, e.g. in Dialogue 3 байгуулагджээ 'was founded', from байгуулагдах 'to be founded', from байгуулах 'to build', also 'to tound, organize'. Other examples: нээх 'to open,' нээгдэх 'to be pened', таалах 'to like', таалагдах 'to please'.

The agent of a passive verb is in the dative/locative case: нохойд изэгдсэн хаалга 'the door opened by the dog'.

A few passives are formed with the derivational suffixes -д- e.g. опдох from олох 'to find' and -т- e.g. from abax 'to take'.

## More about cardinal numbers

The cardinal numbers (page 43) for 40 to 90 are as follows:

40	(ни) РЭД	50	тавь(тавин)
60	жар(ан)	70	дал(ан)
80	ная(н)	90	ер(эн)

the distribution of the fleeting is present when counting years):

in 1997: мянга есен зуун срэн долоон онд

Cardinal numbers (without fleeting n) plus the dative/locative suffix -т/-д indicate in which year, or at which number room or house е.д. арвад 'at No. 10', хорин нэгд in '(19)21', гучид 'in '30', etc.

#### Exercise I

Translate the following sentences using modal converbs:

- 1 The khan received him on Sunday.
- 2 The Great Khural organized a new government.
- 3 The teacher will buy a new book me Monday.
- 1 Mongolia and Great Britain are cooperating.
- 5 Julie was looking in fright at Begtse.

#### Exercise 9

Create the passive forms of the following active verbs:

1 мэдэх 'to know' 2 a

2 алах 'to kill'.

3 идэх 'to eat'

4 concox 'to hear'

5 нээх 'to open'

#### Exercise 10

Translate the following sentences with numbers into Mongolian:

1 Temüjin became Genghis Khan in 1206.

2 My birthday is 22nd April 1989.

3 You should travel by train No. 103.

4 Our university has ten thousand students.

5 Bat has four thousand six hundred and fifty sheep.

# Dialogue for comprehension 5

Девид: Чи ямар ном уншиж байна вэ?

Жюли: Би Монголд байгаа жуулчны нэг лавлах ном

уншиж байна.

Девид: Түүнийг над үзүүлээч!

Жюли: Жаахан хүлээж бай! Лавлах номд, «Говь нутгиин

жуулчид их очдог газрын нэг нь Гурван сайхан уулсын Ёлын ам дархан цаазат газар байна» гэж

бичсэн байна.

Девид: Жуулчдыг их татдаг өөр газар хаа байна вэ?

Бат: Жуулчдыг их татдаг өөр путаг бол Хангайн

уулархаг орон юм. Дэлхий дахинд нэрд гарсан Хархорумын балгас, Эрдэнэ-Зуу хийд тэнл

орицог.

Жюли: Жуулчид их цугладаг гурав дахь нутаг бол

Хэнтийн уулархаг оронд хамаарах Тэрэлж билэч гэж бас бичсэн байна. Тэрэлж эндээс холгуй юу"

Бат: Холгүй. Улаанбаатарын зүүн хойд зүгт машинаар

нэг цаг явах газар оршдог юм.

Девид: Хархорум руу яаж явах вэ?

Бат: Автобус, нисэх онгоцоор Хархорин хот руу явж

болно. Та нар Хархорин руу хэзээ явахаар

шийдэв?

Дэлгэрмаа: Та хэдий хүртэл тэнд байх вэ?

Жюли: Та бидэнд олон асуулт тавилаа шүү дээ!

Одоохондоо шийдээгүй л байна. Таны лавлах

номыг үзье.

Девид: Харин лавлах номд, «Хархорум хот XVI зуунд

дайнд сүйдэж одоо түүний орд харшаас ганцхан суурь чулуу нь үлджээ» гэж бичсэн байна. Тэнд

узэх юм юу ч байхгүй юу?

Дэлгэрмаа: Харин энэ номын дараагийн бүлэгт, 1585 онд

Хархорум хот байсан газрын дэргэд монголын шарып шашны анхны сүм хийд Эрдэнэ-Зууг

байгуулав гэж бичжээ.

Цевид: За, Хархорин руу нисэх билетээ бүртгүүлэх үү?

машин	car. vehicle	одоохондоо	for the moment

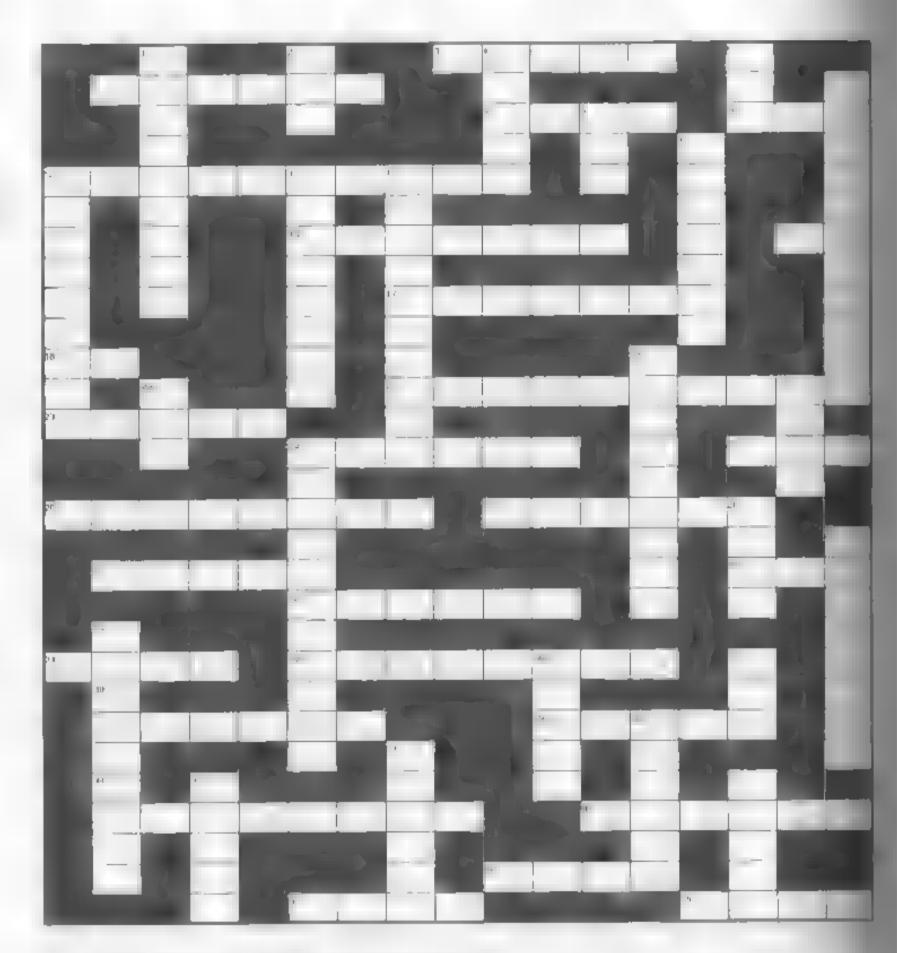
## Crossword

босоо	down	заг	saxaul shrub
хөндлөн	across	нуруу	mountain range
паваа	mountain pass	нуур	lake

clues:

#### кондленгоор:

- 3 Mongolian for 'mountain pass'
- 6 Дархан-Уул аймгийн төв
- 8 River on which Ulan Bator stands
- 10 Mongolian for 'river'
- 1. Арвайхээр төвтэй аймаг
- Мерен тевтэй аймаг
- 16 Abbreviation for Mongolia's capital city
- 17 Монголын хамгийн том морон; Сухбаатар товтэй аймаг
- 18 Mongolian for 'gorge' or 'mouth'
- Ваянхонгор төвтэй аймаг
- ' Mongolian for 'mountain range'
- И Чойбалсан товтэй аймаг
- Mongolian for 'town'
- 'о Архангай аймгийн тов



- 27 Big river in eastern Mongolia
- 30 Хөвсгөл аймгийн төв
- 31 Mongolian for 'mountain'
- 32 Улиастай төвтэй аймаг
- 34 Ховд төвтэй аймаг
- 35 Мандалговь товтэй аймаг
- 38 Булган төвтэй аймаг
- 39 Salt lake in western Mongolia
- 44 Дорноговь аймгийн төв
- 45 Mongolian for 'west'
- 46 Mongolian for 'east'
- 47 Хятадтай хиллэдэг том нуур
- 48 Mongolian for 'cave'

#### босоогоор:

- 1 Өлгий төвтэй аймаг
- 2 Mongolian for 'snow'
- 4 Говь-Алтай аймгийн тов
- 5 A desert shrub
- 7 Монгол улсын нийслэл
- 9 Монголын баруун хойд аймаг, том нуур хоёр
- 11 Том хот, Орхон аймгийн төв
- 12 Хэнтий аймгийн төв
- 13 Цэцэрлэг төвтэй аймаг
- 14 Чойр төвтэй аймаг
- 19 Алтай төвтэй аймаг
- 20 Mongolian for 'south'
- 22 Зуун хойно Монголын нэг гол
- 24 Өмнөговь аймгийн төв
- 28 Mongolian for 'lake'
- 29 Увс аймгийн төв
- 33 Дорнод аймгийн төв
- 36 Монголын хамгийн урт гол, Эрдэнэт төвтэй аймаг
- 37 Mongolian for 'state' or 'nation'
- 40 Mongolian for 'mineral spring'
- 41 Монголын зүүн хойд аймаг
- 42 Mongolian for 'province'
- 43 Mongolian for 'homeland'

# Өргөстэй боловч өөрийн нутаг

## There's no place like home

#### In this lesson you will learn:

- About buying air tickets
- About booking into m hotel
- Use of the concessive converb (although)
- Use of the optative converb (if only)

# Dialogue 1

МИАТ-ийн билетийн касс дээр At the MIAT ticket office

David and Julie go to the Mongolian airlines office in Ulan Bator to buy their tickets for Kharkhorin.

Девид:

«МИАТ» гэж энэ юу гэсэн утгатай үг вэ?

Жюли:

минетан инстаниом» под ТАИМ агаарын

тээврийн» компанийн нэр.

Девид:

Одоо чиний оочир боллоо!

Үйлчлэгч:

Танд яаж тус болохсон бол?

Жюли:

Хархорин хүртэл хоёр хүний суудал

захиалмаар байна.

Үйлчлэгч:

Та хэдийний онгоцоор явах сапаатай байна?

Жюли:

Негеедерийн онгоцоор явах уу?

Үйлчлэгч:

Явна аа! Опгоц Буянт-Ухаагаас өглөөний наймап

цаг арван таван минутад ниснэ.

Жюли:

Нэг билет ямар үнэтэй вэ?

Үйлчлэгч:

Нэг талын билет арван мянган төгрөг гэш

гадаадынхан «ногооноор» төлөх хэрэгтэй.

Жюли:

За, хэдэн доллар вэ?

Уничлэгч:

Хоёр талын билет хоёр зуун доллар.

NUMBER

Өө за. Хоёр билет авъя. Май дөрвөн зуун доллар

энэ байна.

Генил:

Онгоцонд хэдэн кило ачаа авч явж болдог юм

бэ?

) ।।।। पद्माशायाः

Нэг хүн 20 кило ачаа авч явж болдог.

ACIONH: PERCEPTER

Хэдийд онгоцны буудалд очсон байх учиртай вэ? Онгоц нисэхээс нэг цагийн өмпө буудалд очсон

байх хэрэгтэй.

Note: Buyant-Ukhaa is the location of Ulan Bator airport, 20 minutes' drive southwest of the town centre.

DAME:

What does this word 'MIAT' mean?

TO USE

MIAT is the name of the Mongolian civil air trans-

port company.

DAVIDE

Now it's your turn.

ASSISTANT:

How may I help you? We would like to book two seats to Kharkhorin.

VSSISTANT:

ASSISTANT:

Which day are you thinking of flying?

for B:

Terre:

Can we take (go by) the plane the day after tomorrow? Certainly. The plane leaves Buyant-Ukhaa at 8.30 am.

terms:

How much does a ticket cost?

ASSISTANT:

A single ticket is 10,000 tögrög, but foreigners have to

pay in greenbacks.

from the

Well, how many dollars?

ASSISTANT:

A return ticket is 200 dollars.

10-1415 DAVID:

OK, let me have two tickets. Here are 400 dollars, How many kilos of baggage can you take on the

plane?

lime.

VSSISTANTI

Twenty kilos per person.

1-11-1

What time should we be at the airport?

ASSISTANT: You must be at the airport an hour before departure

# Шинэ Үг Vocabulary

плаар (HEET) BAFA air baggage

Kacc(aH) KHJO

cash desk kilo(gram) company

поллар приэний

dollar civil(ian)

компани нисэх

to fly

негеедер	the day after	хелет	to pay
	tomorrow	тус	assistance
оочир	queue; turn	yrra	meaning
өглөө	morning	учиртай	should (do)
санав	intention	YF(H)	word
сууцал	seat	хэдийний	of which date?
тегрег	tugrik (Mongol currency, see note below)	жерэгтэй	necessary

Note: Although tögrög is the correct transliteration from the Mongolian Cyrillic the spelling tugrik, derived earlier via Russian, is still found in English publications which avoid the use of diacritics. Both forms are used interchangeably in this book

# Language points

## Multiple imperfective converbs

The MIAT assistant asks Julie Танд яаж тус болохсон бол? 'How may I help you?' In the first part of this question is the imperfective converb of яах 'to do what?' and тус means 'help' or 'assistance'. Alternatively, Танд яаж тусалж болохсон бол? uses two imperfective converbs (туслах means 'to assist'). Towards the end of the dialogue there is another example of multiple use of imperfective converbs: (ачаа) авч явж болдог. In this case from aвах 'to take' and from 'to go' are combined with болдог from болох 'to become', 'be permitted' to mean 'taking/going is regularly permitted'.

## Verbal noun plus -сан

In the MIAT assistant's question the addition of the suffix -соп (page 99) to the verbal noun болох (болохсон) modifies the meaning: 'would like to have done'.

## Final particle бол

The **бол** at the end of the assistant's question plays a different role from the conditional **бол** (page 83). Ending a sentence, **бол** is a final particle expressing uncertainty – 'perhaps?'

Therefore Танд яаж тус болохсон бол? breaks down as 'lo you doing what assistance (I) would like to render perhaps'' expressing a polite but tentative interest.

#### Colours

The MIAT assistant asks for ногоон 'greens', a slang term meaning dollars. For the Mongols colours (онго) have important traditional associations. We have already noted шарын шашин 'the yellow faith' (Lamaism), and a Mongolian lama is still sometimes called шар малгайтан 'person with a yellow hat' (малгай is 'hat'), to distinguish him perhaps from an улаан малгайтан 'person with a red hat' or unreformed Buddhist. During the communist years there were ногоон малгайтнууд too – the security police. Black кар шеапз 'lay' or 'secular' (as opposed to шар) or 'hard', 'heavy': кар ажил 'hard work'. On the other hand харын шашин the 'black faith' is shamanism.

The red of the communist revolution is reflected in Улаанбаатар хот 'town of the red hero' (or possibly 'heroes'), the Mongolian capital Нийслэл хүрээ 'capital monastery' renamed in 1924 after the улаантан or улааныхан 'the Reds' had beaten 'the Whites' or цагаантан. The Altai mountains are the 'golden' mountains from алг(н), and the first settlement on Mongolian soil to be captured by the revolutionaries in 1921 is now called Altanbulag (Алганбулаг 'golden spring'). The word for 'silver', gave its name to 'money' and to what used to be Mongolia's smallest coins: 100 мөнгө = 1 төгрөг. The word төгрөг means 'round'.

Returning to traditional themes, ynaah ynaa' red food' is meat, in contrast to qaraah ynaa, which is what the Mongols call butter, theese, cream and other milk products including appar, koumiss or fermented mare's milk; these are mostly consumed in the summer months. There are secondary meanings for qaraah too: 'pure' e.g. qaraah corrent or qaraah cahaa 'good nature', also 'flat', o.g. qaraah am 'a smooth road' or 'bare', 'open', e.g. qaraah rasap open country'.

To describe the colour of something, you may say that it is 'with ... colour' using the comitative case: Миний малгай кар өнгөтэй 'My hat is black.'

## More about numerals

To express the idea of 'so many times' the cardinal numbers may be used (without fleeting n) or the suffix -raa added to the n-stem form e.g.

турвантаа three times
дервентее four times
арвантаа ten times, etc.
гурвантаа буудсан fired three times

Addition of the suffix -r means 'with the number x':

аравтwith the number 10аравтын дэвсгэр10-tögrög banknote

Note however ног номерын троллейбус 'a No. 1 trolleybus'.

## Other points

The multiple compound гадаальнанд breaks down as follows гадаа 'outside', гадаал 'external', 'foreign', гадаальн 'of the foreign', гадаальнан 'people of the foreign (parts) гадаальнанд 'to people of foreign parts' (dative/locative case).

The word оочир is from the Russian очередь meaning both 'turn and 'queue'; there is also a Mongol word for queue: дараалал (verbs: дараалах, дараалах зогсох).

# Нэмэлт Үг Additional vocabulary

зохицуулалт	check, regulation	улирал	season
зун	summer	хоёр талын үнэ	return fare
мөрдөх	to follow	хөдлөх	to move
нислэг	flight	хуваарь/хувнар	timetable
олон улсын	international	хэлтэс	department
тасалбар	ticket	TELTER	direction

# Орон нутагт ямар хуваариар нисэх вэ?

Чиглэл (Аялал, Онгоц)	Өдрүүд	Нисэх
УБ-Өндөрхаан-Дадал-Биндэр (337, Ю-12) Биндэр-Дадал-Өндөрхаан-УБ (338, Ю-12)	.26.	09 40
УБ-Баруун-Урт (331, АН-24) Баруун-Урт-УБ (332, АН-24)	1.3.5., 1.3.5.,	08 40 11 25
УБ-Чойбалсан (333, АН-24) Чойбалсан-УБ (334, АН-24)	1,3.5 1.3.5	08 20 10 50
УБ-Мандалговь (451, Ю-12) Мандалговь-УБ (452, Ю-12)	.25	09 50 11 35
УБ-Даланзадгад (447, АН-24) Даланзадгад-УБ (448, АН-24)	.25,.	09 20 11 35
УБ-Баянхонгор (553, АН-24) Баянхонгор-УБ (554, АН-24)	14.6. 14.6.	10 00 12 20
УБ-Өвөрхангай-Хархорин (555, АН-24) Хархорин-Өвөрхангай-УБ (556, АН-24)	14	08 30
УБ-Цэцэрлэг (453, Ю-12) Цэцэрлэг-УБ (454, Ю-12)	36.	09 20 11 35
УБ-Булган-Тэшиг (443, Ю-12) Тэшиг-Булган-УБ (444, Ю-12)	14	09 20
УБ-Мөрөн (557, АН-24) Мөрөн-УБ (558, АН-24)	1.3.5 1.3.5	09 05 11 20
УБ-Алтай (551, АН-24) Алтай-УБ (552, АН-24)	.2.4.6.	09 05 11 50
УБ-Улиастай (567, АН-24) Улиастай-УБ (568, АН-24)	.2.4.6.	08 40 11 25
УБ-Тосонцэнгэл (563, АН-24) Госонцэнгэл-УБ (564, АН-24)	1.3.5 1.3.5	09 40 12 20
УБ-Ховд (571, АН-24) Ховд-УБ (572, АН-24)	.2.4.6.	08 20 12 45
УБ-Ховд-Булган (571, АН-24) Булган-Ховд-УБ (572, АН-24)	5	07 50
УБ-Өлгий (561, АН-24) Элгий-УБ (562, АН-24)	.2.4.6.	08 00 12 45
УБ-Улаангом (573, АН-24) Улаангом-УБ (574, АН-24)	1.3.5 1.3.5	08 00 12 35
УБ-Эрдэнэт (457, Ю-12) Эрдэнэт-УБ (458, Ю-12)	6.	08 50 16 00
/Б-Өмнөговь Тур. бааз* (447, АН-24) Эмноговь Тур. бааз-УБ (448, АН-24)	1234567 1234567	07 40

<sup>\*</sup> Typ. бааз 'tourist base' (Russian)

### ОЛОН УЛСЫН НИСЛЭГИЙН ӨВЛИЙН ХУВААРЬ

Чистэл	Хедлех	Буух	No.
УБ/Бээж*	<b>Дав/Бям</b> 10.30	12.30	OM223
УБ/Бээж	Лхаг 15.00	17.00	OM223
УБ/Бээж	Мя/Ба 14.35	15.25	CA902
УБ/Бээж	Мяг 13.35	14.35	CA902
Бээж/УБ	Дав/Бям 14.30	16.30	OM224
Бээж/УБ	Лхаг 18.00	20.00	OM224
Бээж/УБ	Мя/Ба 10.35	12.45	OM224
Бээж/УБ	Мя/Ба 10.35	13.35	CA901
Бээж/УБ	Пур 10.35	12.45	CA901
УБ/Сөүл	Ба 09.00	13.20	OM8027
УБ/Соул	Мя 14.30	17.40	KE6605
Сөүл/УБ	Ба 15.00	17.30	OM8028
Сөүл/УБ	Мя 10.00	13.30	KE6605
УБ/Москва	Пу/Ня 08.05	11.35	OM135
УБ/Москва	Мя 12.00	15.00	SU563
Москва/УБ	Мя/Ня 08.10	08.40	OM136
УБ/Иркутск	Лх/Бя 09.00	10.30	-
Иркутск/УБ	Лх/Бя 12.30	14.00	_
УБ/Хөх хот	Да/Пү 08.00	10.40	-
Хөх хот/УБ	Да/Ням 12.20	15.00	<u></u>
УБ/Берлин	Ням 08.05	14.15	OM135
Берлин/УБ	Ням 15.50	08.40	OM136

\*Бээж is short for Бээжин - Beijing

ОМ-МИАТ СА=Айр Чайна SU=Аэрофлот КЕ=Кореан Айр Тасалбарын үнэ: УБ - Бээжин 100.000Төг, хоёр талын үнэ 190.000Төг

УБ - Москва 189.000Төг, хоёр талын үнэ 379.000Төг

УБ - Сөүл зөвхөн хоёр талын үнэ 385.000Төг

УБ - Иркутск 34.650Төг, хоёр талын үнэ 69.300Төг

УБ - Хөх хөт 47.950Төг, хоёр талын үнэ 95.900Төг

УБ - Берлин 292.500Төг, хоёр талын үнэ 540.000Төг

Энэ үнэ нь зөвхөн Монголын иргэдэд л хамаарна.

#### Exercise 1

## Iranslate into Mongolian:

- I I don't know how to ask him.
- ? If we had a car we would like to go to Kharkhorin.
- You cannot take your dog on the bus.
- 4 Is Bat coming the day after tomorrow perhaps?
- Foreigners also have to queue.

#### Exercise 2

Which colours are you reminded of? Give their Mongolian names:

- I The name of Mongolia's capital?
- ' Mongolian Buddhism?
- 1 Hard work?
- Dairy produce?
- Mongolian and US money?

#### Exercise 3

Translate the following conversation into English (check new words in the main vocabulary):

- -Хайрт минь, чи өчигдөр шонө хэдэн цагт гэртээ ирсэн бэ?
- -Яг арван цагт.
- —Битгий худлаа ярь! Яг чамайг ирэхэд манай цаг нэг удаа дуугарсан.
- —Тэгэлгүй яахав дээ. Тэг дуугардаг цагийг хүмүүс одоогоор хийгээгүй байгаа шүү дээ, хонгор минь.

#### Exercise 4

## Answer the questions:

- Only one internal air service operates daily; where to?
- ? On which days are there flights to Khovd?
- Which flights from Ulan Bator go to the Lake Khövsgöl area?
- When do flights leave Altai for Ulan Bator?
- 5 When could you fly from Ulan Bator to the Karakorum area?
- o On which days does MIAT fly from Beijing to Ulan Bator?
- On which days are there flights from Ulan Bator to Moscow?

# Dialogue 2

# Canaa зоволттуй! Don't worry!

David and Julie arrive at the hotel in Kharkhorin.

Девид: Жижүүр: Танайд сул өрөө байна уу? Та урьдчилан захиалсан уу?

Девид:

Чулууны Бат нэг хоёр хүний өрөө утсаар

захиалсан. Миний нэр Браун.

Жижүүр:

Та өрөө захиалсан боловч би захиалгын

бичгийг тань олохгүй байна.

Девид:

Лав уу?

Жижүүр: Санаа зоволтгүй! Манайд сул өрөө олон байна

Жюли:

Танайд сул өрөө олон боловч халуун ус байна

уу?

Жижүүр:

Халуун ус элбэг дэлбэг! Өрөө тань тавдугалр

давхарт байгаа 501-дүгээр өрөө. Түлхүүр нь эп-

байна.

Жюли:

Би өрөөгөө үзэж болох уу?

Жижүүр:

Бололгүй яах вэ. Манайд арай хямдхан ороо

байгаа гэвч арай сайхан өрөө байхгүй.

Жюли: Жижүүр:

Энэ өрөө хоногт ямар үнэтэй вэ? Хоногт тавин доллар. Урьдаар төлөх!

Девид: Жижүүр: Бид авъя. Гурав хономоор байна. Бүртгэлийн хуудсыг бөглөөд өгнө үү?

Девид: Жижүүр: За. Та Өвөрхангай аймагт суух дуртай юу? Танай Бат бид хоёр нэг нутгийнх. Өргөстэй

боловч оөрийн нутаг!

DAVID:

Do you have any rooms available?

RECEPTIONIST:

Have you booked?

DAVID:

Chuluuny Bat booked a double room by phone.

My name is Brown.

RECEPTIONIST:

You may have booked a room but I can't find the

booking form.

DAVID:

Are you sure?

RECEPTIONIST:

Don't worry! We've lots of rooms available.

JULIE:

You may have lots of rooms available but is there

any hot water?

RECEPTIONIST:

Plenty! Your room is room 501 on the fifth floor

This is the (its) key.

house:

May I see our room?

RECEPTIONIST:

Of course you may! We have some rooms a bit

cheaper but we don't have any better rooms.

LUTE: RECEPTIONIST:

How much is this room per night? Fifty dollars a night. Pay in advance.

David:

Let's take it. We would like to stay for three nights.

RECEPTIONIST:

Please fill in the registration form.

DAVID:

OK. Do you like living in Övörkhangai?

RECEPTIONIST:

Your But and I are from the same locality. It's our

own locality, thorns and all!

# Шинэ Yr Vocabulary

<b>B</b> sqn	a bit (more etc.)	сул	available, free
бөглөх	to fill in	түлхүүр	key
буртгэл	registration	урьдаар	in advance
бүү	don't	урьдчинах	to do beforehand
мижуур	receptionist	хоног	night, 24 hours
SOBOX	to worry	хуудас(н)	form, sheet
11B	sure	хямд	cheap
оорийн	one's own	элбэг дэлбэг	plenty
оргес(н)	thorn		

# Language points

## Concessive converb in -B4

The concessive converb, formed with the suffix -вч (-авч, -овч, овч, -эвч) added to the verb stem, means 'although': the forms боловч from болох and гэвч 'but' or 'although' (said) from гэх не the most common – we have already seen гэвч in earlier lessons:

Миний гэргий эмч, гэвч англи им мэдэхгүй. My wife is a doctor, but she doesn't speak English.

Сул өрөө байгаа боловч халуун ус байна уу?

There are rooms available but is there any hot water?

Combined with the perfective verbal noun in -сан we can create compounds like захиалсан боловч 'although you have booked':

Гэрт оровч суусангүй от гэрт орсон боловч суусангүй. Although he entered the yurt he didn't sit down. (or, He went into the yurt but didn't sit down.)

Зун боловч хүйтэн байна.

Although it's summer it's cold. (or, It's summer but it's cold.)

Өргөстэй боловч өөрийн нутаг.

Although with thorns it's our own locality.

(There's no place like home or East, west, home's best.)

## Verbal suffixes in -лтгүй, -лтай, -лгүй

You might use the imperative та бүү зов (зовох 'to worry'), but a common way of saying 'Don't worry!' is Санаа зоволтгүй when зоволтгүй is formed with the suffix -лтгүй 'shouldn't', 'needn't The suffix may also appear attributively e.g.

маттинаар явалтгуй зам an undrivable road

The suffix - **rran** means 'must be', 'must have ...' e.g.

байлгай

must be

явсан байлтай

must have gone

бил байлтай

can't be

Note that бололгой, means 'it looks as if' (Цас орох бололгой.). However it can be negated with the word янзгүй 'unlikely':

Цас орож янзгуй бололгой. It doesn't look like snowing.

In attributive use:

маптинаар явалтай a drivable road

The suffix -**лгүй** means 'likely to . . .' e.g.

байлгүй

likely to be

биш байлгүй

unlikely to be

## More about colours

The Mongols are attached to or dark blue. Since the beginning of their history they have called themselves the 'Blue Mongols'

and their sky god was \_\_\_\_\_ Tehrep 'Eternal Blue Heaven'. The Inner Mongolian capital, founded by Altan Khan, is Xexxor 'Blue Town'.

There is a separate word for 'light blue', цэнхэр. 'Grey', саарал. came up earlier with reference to the 'grey building' саарал байшин от state palace (page 53), but grey-haired is буурал.

## Adjectival ending -втар

The suffix -BTAP (-BTOP) modifies the names of colours to indicate un approximate shade e.g. 'reddish', 'yellowish', etc.:

хар - харавтарblackishулаан - улаавтарreddishшар - шаравтарyellowishногоон - ногоовторgreenish

Other suffixes play a similar role: цагаан - цагаахан 'whitish' хөх - хөхдүү '(dark) bluish' цэнхэр - цэнхэрдүү '(light) bluish'. The torm улбар for 'reddish' also exists, and with шар 'yellow' produces улбар 'orange'. The fruit is амтат жүрж (or зүрж).

The suffix -втар can be used with other adjectives, e.g. дулаан - дулаавтар 'warmish', нарийн - нарийвтар 'thinnish', 'semi-fine' (fleece).

## Зочид буудал

#### **УЛААНБААТАР**

Сухбаатарын талбайн зүүн

талд 280 ор

Пог хопогийн үнэ: US\$60-100

Утас: 320620

## ЗАЛУУЧУУД

Сүхбаатар дүүрэг 6 хороо

120 ортой

Үнэ: 2200-3000Төг

Утас: 324594

#### ПОПНКАВ

Чингисийн өргөн чөлөө

418 op

Yнэ: US\$72-144

Утас: 328869

## ЧИНГИС ХААН

Хөх тэнгэр-5 45 ортой

Yнэ: US\$90-140

Утас: 313380

#### МАНДУХАЙ

Энх тайваны өргөн чөлөө-5

72 ортой

Үнэ: 1200-1800Төг

Утас: 321578

#### НЬЮ КАПИТАЛ

Энх тайваны өргөн чөлөө

(Английн элчин сайдын

яамны баруун талд) 38 ортой Үнэ: US\$55-110

Утас: 358235

#### ГАН ЗАМ

Баянгол дүүрэг 3-р хороо

48 ортой

Үнэ: US\$40-55 Утас: 311479

#### БАЙГАЛ

Баянгол дүүрэг 2-р хороо

60 ортой

Үнэ: US\$10-30

Утас: 365267

100	200	ns.	20	1
XO	μo	υų	RI.	,

district

дүүрэг

district, suburb

## Adjectival intensifiers

Intensifiers are placed before adjectives (repeating the first syllable plus -B) e.g. 'deep blue', 'bright green', etc.

ув улаан

ув улаан шар ногоон хөх

цэнхэр цагаан

pitch black deep red bright yellow bright green deep blue

intense pale blue pure white

Intensifiers may be used with other adjectives besides coloures. In the coloures of the colour

## The two words eep

There are two words eep, meaning 'self' and 'other':

eep 'self', also 'oneself', is found in such constructions as eeproo 'to oneself', eepuйн 'one's own', in expressions like eepcцийн хүчээр 'unaided' (i.e. 'by means of one's own power'), and the verb eepuймсех 'to feel at home'.

eep 'other' has the form eep eep 'various' (doubling to indicate plural), also as a postposition 'apart from' as in түүнээс өөр 'other than that', and there is a verb өөрчлөх 'to change', 'to make other

## Word-pairs and echo words

We looked briefly at word-pairs (page 29) in which two nouns with different meanings when combined create a third (usually collective) meaning:

аяга халбага

glass spoon = tableware fire stove = kitchen

some further examples:

аав ээж газар ус

гал зуух

father mother = parents land water = place

The components of other word-pairs however have more or less the same meaning: xor \_\_\_\_\_ 'rubbish' ид шид 'magic', etc.

Some apparent word-pairs result from unexpected combinations p with yxsp as an attributive:

үхэр хулгана үхэр буу(н) тарваган морь

ox mouse = rat ox gun = artillery marmot horse = pony

Echo words, as the name suggests, are the second halves of the word-pairs which reflect the sound of the noun they follow (the apposite of intensifiers). The initial consonant changes to (or if is m to 3). The meaning is 'and suchlike', 'that sort of thing':

сандал мандал одон модон мах зах

cups and suchlike chairs and the like medals, decorations meat and similar

Кино тарахгүй л байна.

(1) am just too busy to go to me films and things.

## Other points

The form хономоор байна is the feasibility, 'would like' form 1-маар, -мээр, etc.) of хонох 'to spend the night': Гурав хономоор бийна 'I would like to stay three nights.'; а хоног is 24 hours and долоо хоног a week.

Derived from the word **нутаг** 'locality' or 'home territory', **путгийн** is 'of the locality' and **нутгийнх** 'locals'.

#### Exercise 5

You are booking into a Mongolian hotel. How would you ask:

- 1 Do you have a single room?
- 2 What is the number of my room?
- 3 What floor is it on?
- 4 Please give me some toilet paper.
- 5 What time does the dining room open?

#### Exercise

- 1 How much is the cheapest room at the Ulaanbaatar Hotel?
- 2 Which hotel is near the British Embassy?
- 3 Which hotel has the most beds?
- 4 Which hotels have the cheapest rooms?
- 5 Which hotels are in Genghis Avenue?

#### Exercise 7

Translate into English:

- 1 Сух МИАТ-ийн кассаас нэг талын билет авсан боловч нисто онгоцоор ниссэнгүй.
- 2 Дэлгэрмаа галт тэрэгний буудалд удаан хүлээсэн боловч bar ирсэнгүй.
- 3 Даваа гарит боловч хогийн машин өнөөдөр ирэхгүй.
- 4 Арван цаг хагас болсон боловч автобусны жолооч ажлик эхлээгүй.
- 5 Девид хэлмэрч биш бизнесмен боловч монгол хэл сайн мэднэ.

## Exercise I

Which intensifiers and shade suffixes do you associate with the following colours?

1 white? 2 red? 3 dark blue? 4 black? 5 yellow?

# Dialogue 3

Жолооч ирээсэй! If only the driver would come!

David and Julie set out from the Kharkhorin hotel for sightseeing at Erdene-Zuu monastery.

Цевид: Би Эрдэнэ-зуу хийд Хархорумын балгасын

дэргэд байгаа гэж бодож байна.

Жюли: Батын жуулчдад зориулсан лавлах ном хаа

байна вэ?

Цевид: Бат лавлах номоо «Улаанбаатар» зочид буудалд

авчирсан боловч би мартжээ.

жюли: Би түүнийг Батын байранд уншиж байсан

боловч санахгуй байна.

**Девид:** Хамаагүй, Хужирт, Хархориноор явбал хуучин

дурсгал нь зүгээр юм. Хаагуур явбал дээр вэ?

Жюли: Эхлээд машинаар Хархорум очно, тэгээд

тэндээсээ Эрдэнэ-Зуу руу явганаар явна.

Цевид: Өглөөний есөн цаг өнгөрсөн боловч жолооч

ирэхгүй байна. Одоо ирээсэй!

Жюли: Дулаан болоосой! Өнөөдөр хүйтэн байна.

Цевид: Бид жолоочоо ирэхлээр Эрдэнэ-Зуу хийд рүү

явъя.

Муунохой: Сайн байна уу? Та нар Брауныхан биз дээ. Би

таны жолооч. Би Муунохой гэдэг хүн.

Жюли: Сайн байна аа! Бид таныг хүлээсээр байна. Муунохой: Уучлаарай! Би машиндаа шатахуун аваха

Уучлаарай! Би машиндаа шатахуун авахаар явсан боловч бензин байхгүй байсан.

Цевид: Одоо бензин байна уу?Муунохой: Байна аа! Явах уу?

David: I think that Erdene-Zuu monastery is near the ruins

of Karakorum.

HOLDE: Where is Bat's guidebook?

DAVID: Although But brought his guidebook to the Ulan

Bator hotel I forgot it.

I read it at Bat's flat but I don't remember.

DAVID: It doesn't matter. Wherever you go around Khujirt

and Kharkhorin there are plenty of old monuments.

Which is the best way to go?

JULIE: First we shall go to Karakorum by car, and then

from there to Erdene-Zuu on foot.

DAVID: It's gone nine o'clock and the driver hasn't come yet

If only he would come now!

JULIE: If only it would get warmer! It's cold today.

DAVID: As soon as our driver comes let's go to Erdene-Zun

monastery.

MUUNOKHOI: Hello! You must be the Browns. I'm your driver, My

name is Muunokhoi.

JULIE: Hello! We have been waiting for you.

MUUNOKHOI: Sorry! I went to fuel the car but there was no petrol

DAVID: Is there petrol now? MUUNOKHOI: Yes. Shall we go?

Note: Muunokhoi 'vicious dog' may seem a strange name, but Mongolians have traditionally been given such taboo names to avoid misfortune and confuse evil spirits. Other examples include **Нэхийт** 'sheepskin'. **Нэргүй** 'no name' and **Мэдэхгүй** 'don't know'. There is a range of names ending in the negative били **Хүнбилг** 'not a human being', **Хэнчбилг** 'nobody', **Огтбилг** 'not at ali', **Энэбилг** 'not this one' and **Тэрбилг** 'not that one'.

# Шинэ Yr Vocabulary

 бензин
 petrol
 жаагуур
 which way?

 бодож
 to think
 жамаагүй
 it doesn't matter

жолооч driver шатахуун fuel мартах to forget эхлэх to begin

санах to remember

# Language points

## More concessive converbs

Dialogue 3 contains further examples of concessive converb constructions (-BT), some with the perfective verbal noun:

Бат лавлах номоо зочид буудалд авчирсан боловч

Although Bat brought his guidebook to the hotel I forgot it. or, Bat brought his guidebook to the hotel but I forgot it.

Есен цаг өнгөрсөн боловч жолооч ирэхгүй байна.
Although it has gone nine o'clock the driver still hasn't come.

Би түүнийг уншиж байсан боловч санахгүй байна. I was reading it but can't remember.

## The optative converb -аасай

The optative converb meaning 'if only', expressing a wish for the third person, is formed by adding to the verb stem the suffix -аасай (-оосой, -өөсэй, -ээсэй) according to the stem vowel:

Ирээсэй! (I) wish he/she/it/they would come! Болоосой! If only he/she/it/they would become . . . !

Би аавтайгаа уулзмаар байна — өнөөдөр ирээсэй! I should like to meet my father. I wish (he) would come today!

Цанаар гулгамаар байна цас их ороосой! I should like to go skiing. If only it would snow a lot!

For the negative add **битгий** before the optative:

Тэр битгий ирээсэй! I hope he doesn't come!

## The temporal converb -хлаар

The temporal converb translated 'when' in the sense of 'as soon as' means that one action is followed closely by another. It is formed by adding the suffix -xnaap (-xnoop, -xnoop, -xnoop) to the verb stem; if the two clauses have different subjects the subject of the subordinate clause will attract the accusative-case ending:

Bat нээгдэхлээр тэнд орж сэтгүүл уншив. As soon as the library was opened Bat went in and read magazines.

Туунийг Лондонд ирэхлээр би түүнтэй уулзана. I'll meet him as soon as he comes to London.

Хичээл завсарлахлаар уулзая.

Let's meet at break (as soon as there is a break).



When are you going to wake up?
As soon as 'perestroika' has passed.

сэрэх to wake up өнгөрөх to pass өөрчлөн байгүүлалт perestroika (economic renewal)

# Alternatives to the temporal converb

Because the meaning of the temporal converb in -xnaap is much the same as the verbal noun in -x plus the instrumental case ending in -aap, the latter construction is sometimes used instead:

Нар гарахлаар дулаан болдог.

It grows warm when/as soon as the sun rises.

Нар гарахаар дулаан болдог.

It grows warm by means of/through the sun rising.

Alternatively, in colloquial speech the construction -xraž seper is found (seper meaning 'as soon as', 'the moment that'):

Хичээл завсарлахлаар уулзая. Let's meet at break. Хичээл завсарлахтай зэрэг уулзая.

Another temporal converb, adding the suffix -магц (-могц, -мегц, -мегц) to the verb stem, also has much the same meaning:

Цаг сайхан болмогц хөдөө явна.

(We) shall go to the country as soon as the weather is fine.

Туунийг ирмэгц бид кинонд явсан.

As soon as (he) came we went to a film.

АНУ-аас ирмэгцээ Завханыг зорилоо.

As soon as he arrived from the USA (he) set off for Zavkhan.

нар(н)	sun	хичээл	lesson
завсарлах	to have a break	кино(н)	film
зорих	to set off		

#### Other points

Note that xaaryyp meaning 'which way?' i.e. 'by what route?' comprises xaa 'where?' and the suffix -yyp linked by the consonant -r- to separate the two long vowels. Similar constructions include ranyyp 'outside' (external) and noryyp 'inside' (internal).

#### Exercise |

Translate into Mongolian:

- I If only he would go and put some petrol in the car!
- 2 I hope it won't snow a lot!
- 3 If only David wouldn't drink vodka!
- 4 If only the weather would improve!
- 5 If only the new shop would open!

# Exercise 10

Use the alternative forms described to translate four different ways of saying: 'I'll meet Bat as soon as the train comes.'

#### Exercise 11

Translate into English:

- 1 Өнөөдөр нартай боловч хүйтэн байна.
- 2 Биднийг ормогц концерт эхэллээ.
- 3 Намайг явахлаар номоо уншаарай!

- 4 Энэ номыг уншаагүй бол одоо уншаарай!
- 5 Би түүнийг яаж мэдэх бол?

# Dialogue for comprehension

Үйлчлэгч: Танд яаж тусалж болохсон бол?

Жюли: Би Ховд хот хүртэл гурван хүний суудал

захиалмаар байна.

Үйлчлэгч: Та хэдийд явах санаатай байна?

Жюли: Маргааш онгоц нисэх үү?

Үйлчлэгч: Үгүй. Ховд хүртэл дараагийн онгоц нөгөөдрийн

арван таван цаг дөчин минутад ниснэ.

Жюли: Гурван билет ямар үнэтэй вэ?

Үйлчлэгч: Таваас дээш, арван зургаагаас доош насны хүүхэл

хагас төлбөртэй. Гурван билет зургаан зуун хорин

таван доллар.

Жюли: За, зургаан зуун хорин таван доллар энэ байна.

Үйлчлэгч: Та нар наспортоо үзүүлцэ үү?

Жюли: Тэгнэ. Тамхи татдаггүй.

Үйлчлэгч: Май билет тань энэ байна. Онгоц нисэхээс нэг наг

хагасын өмнө буудалд очсон байх хэрэгтэй. Хош хотод очоод буцах рейсээ баталгаажуулахаа бүү

март!

(Ховд хотын зочид буудалд)

Жижүүр: Сайн байна уу, ноён Браун! Таны захиалсан өрөө дөрөвдүгээр давхарт байгаа 411-дүгээр өрөө.

Девид: Энэ өрөө хоногт ямар үнэтэй вэ?

Жижүүр: Хоногт дөчин таван доллар.

Девид: Хэтэрхий үнэтэй байна. Өрөө цэвэрлээгүй байна.

Гэрэл ажиллахгүй байна. Гурван хүний өөр өрөө

байна уу?

Жижүүр: Байлгүй яах вэ! 401-дүгээр арай сайхан өрөө хоногт

тавин доллар.

Девид: Хоёр хономоор байна. Бид авъя. Жижүүр: Тэгье. Ховдод сайхан аялаарай!

Жюли: Ховдоор явбал дурсгалт газар нь зүтээр юм

Хаагуур явбал дээр вэ?

Жижүүр: Эхлээд хуучин манж хотоор явганаар явж, Шар

сум үзээд, тэгээд машинаар Хар Ус нуур очоорой!

above	доон	below
plenty	телбер	payment
to smoke tobacco	буцах рейс	return trip
confirm	аялах	to travel
too much	цэвэрлэх	to clean
light	манж	Manchu
	plenty to smoke tobacco confirm too much	plenty телбер to smoke tobacco буцах рейс confirm аялах too much цэвэрлэх

# 7 Ус уухгүй үхрийн толгойг бүү дар

You can lead ■ horse to water

#### In this lesson you will learn:

- · About country life and the weather
- · Simple arithmetic
- About noun formation
- The traditional animal calendar
- · The imperative 'let it be so'
- The converb 'as soon as . . . '

# Dialogue 1

Онеедер тэнгэр ямар байна? What's the weather like today?

As David and Julie drive out into the countryside with their local guide Boroo they discuss the weather.

Жюли: Өнөөдөр тэнгэр ямар байна?

Бороо: Тэнгэр сайхан байна. Монголд жилийн ихэнх одөр

тэнгэр цэлмэг байдаг юм.

Жюли: Тэгээд Монголыг хөх тэнгэрийн орон гэдэг юм уу?

Девид: Өчигдөр хүйтэн салхитай, шороон шуурга тавьж

байсан. Өнөөдөр салхи тогтлоо.

Бороо: Хэдий хавар боловч зун шиг дулаахан байна.

Өнөөдөр арван таван хэм дулаан.

Жюли: Та цаг уурын мэдээ сонссон уу? Маргааш ямар

байна гэсэн бэ?

Бороо: Тэнгэр муухайрна гэсэн. Дуу, цахилгаантай бороо

орох гэсэн.

Девид: Хойноосоо хар үүл гарч байна.

жючи: Тэнгэр цэлмэх бол уу?

Іторого: Магадгүй. Долоо, наймдугаар сар л их хур бороотой

байдаг юм.

попил: Хүйтэн өвөл болох шинжтэй.

Аноли: Хэдэн сард их хүйтрэх вэ?

Інгроо: Ес эхлэхээр их хүйтэрнэ дээ. Гурван есийн хүйтэн

тун амаргүй! Хасах дөчин хэм хүрч, гол хөлддөг.

Певид: Өвөл цас их ордог уу?

пороо: Монгол орны ихэнх нутагт унаган туруу цастай

байдаг. Зарим өвөл хар зуд болдог.

Колооч: Миний дуртай улирал бол алтан намар.

жилийн дөрвөн улирал

the four seasons of the year

хавар spring зун summer

намар autumn овол winter

It fif: What's the weather like today?

Borros: The weather is fine. The sky is clear (cloudless) most

days of the year in Mongolia.

hame Isn't that why Mongolia is called the land of blue skies?

DAVID: Yesterday there was a cold wind and dust storms. Today

the wind has dropped.

BOROO: Although it's spring it's quite warm like summer. Today

it's plus 15 degrees.

Title: Did you listen to the weather forecast? What did they

say it would be like tomorrow?

BOROO: They say the weather will turn bad. There's going to be

a thunderstorm (rain with thunder and lightning).

DAVID: Black clouds are gathering from the north.

JULIE: Is the weather going to clear up?

BOROO: Perhaps. It's only in July and August that it rains heavily.

DAVID: The signs are that a cold winter's coming.

Julie: Which month does it get very cold?

BOROO: It gets very cold at the beginning of the 'nines'. The cold

in the [middle] three 'nines' is very difficult. It reaches

minus 40 and the rivers freeze.

DAVID: Does it snow a lot in winter?

BOROO: Over most of the territory of Mongolia there's little snow

(only 'a foal's hoof'). Some winters there is black zud.

Driver: My favourite season is 'golden autumn'.

Note: The 'nines' are the 81 days after the winter solstice евлийн нар буцах өдөр. Mongol herdsmen use the word zud to describe conditions which prevent their

livestock from grazing normally. The animals may starve if not moved elsewhere or fed from fodder reserves. There is 'black zud' when there is little snow in winter and the pastures are too dry. Other kinds of zud are caused by ice formation, too example, or overgrazing.

Questions: (a) If there is 'black zud' when there is little snow, what does it mean when there is 'white zud'? (b) Why did the driver describe Mongolian autumn as 'golden'?

# Шинэ Yr Vocabulary

амаргуй	difficult	хур бороо	rain
дуу	voice; thunder	хүйтрэх	to grow cold
зуд	zud (see note)	<b>г</b> елово бидех	although
муухайрах	to worsen	цас орох	to snow
тавих	to blow (storm)	темпед	clear, cloudless
TOPTOX	to stop (rain)	цэлмэх	to clear up
туруу	hoof	HESE	like
yHara(H)	foal	принж	sign
үүл(н)	cloud	шороо	earth, dust
xacax	to deduct; minus	шуурга(н)	wind storm
хөлдөх	to freeze		

# Language points

# Verbs to with weather terms

For rain and snow 'to fall' the verb opox 'to enter' is used:

Өнөөдөр тэнгэр ямар байна?

What's the weather like today?

Бороо (цас) орж байна. It's raining (snowing).

Бороо орно гэсэн.

They say (said) rain is going to fall.

Өвөл цас их ордог.

There is heavy snowfall or it snows a lot in winter.

unilarly the verb \_\_\_\_ 'to put, place' is used for wind 'to blow':

Шороон шуурга байсан.

There were dust storms (blowing).

I'm wind and rain 'to stop' the verb is **rorrox** 'to stay, fix':

Салхи тогтлоо.

The wind dropped.

one can say they are 'coming out' (rapax):

Үүл гарч байна.

Clouds are gathering.

Тэнгэр цэлмэх (арилах) болов уу? Perhaps it will clear up.

#### ЦАГ АГААР

Өнөөдөр баруун зүгийн нутгийн зарим газраар бороо орно. Салхи буруунаас 4-9 м/сек, Баян-Өлгий, Говь-Алтайн зарим нутгаар 12-14 м/сек хүрч ширүүснэ. Уулархаг нутгаар 16-21, говийн нутгаар 27-32, бусад нутгаар 20-25 хэм дулаан.

Улаанбаатар хотод бороо орохгүй, салхи баруунаас 4-9 м/сек, 20-22 хэм дулаан байна.

There is a saying in Mongolian about the foreshadowing of events: порооны туруу салхи, боохойн туруу хэрээ 'the wind before the тап, the crow before the wolf' (боохой is ∎ taboo name for wolf).

мурэх to reach ширүүсэх to grow stronger metres per second: 1m/sec = approx. 2.25 mph

# Plus and minus

In giving a temperature above freezing it is usual to say 'so and many degrees warm':

арван жэм дулаан plus 15 degrees

If the temperature is below freezing the verb \_\_\_\_\_ 'to subtract' plays the part of 'minus':

хасах дечин хэм

minus 40 degrees

Note that the weather forecaster was reported to say (page (IN)) that 'the intensity of cold will decline by 3-5 degrees':

Хүйтний эрч 3-5 хэмээр суларна.

i.e. it would be 3-5 degrees warmer (but still below freezing)

# Simple arithmetic

The basic verbs of arithmetic are as follows:

та to add xacax to subtract уржуулэх to multiply хуваах to divide

When you add to these the word apra 'method' you obtain the noun forms: HOMON apra 'addition' apra 'subtraction', etc.

When you add the word TOMINOT 'sign' you create the mathematical signs: YPXYYIOX TOMINOT 'multiplication sign', etc.

The verb тэнцэх means 'to equal', but 'equal' is тэнцүү and the equals sign is тэнцүүгийн тэмдэг; үлдэх is 'to remain'.

Various constructions are used for simple arithmetic:

3 + 4 = 7:

Гурав дээр дөрвийг нэмэхэд (ог нэмбэл) долоо болно (ог болдог).

or Гурав дээр нэмэх нь дерев тэнцүү (от тэнцэх нь) долоо.

10 - 6 = 4:

Арваас зургааг хасахад (ог хасвал) дөрөв үлдэнэ (ог болно).

от Арваас хасах нь зургаа тэнцүү (от тэнцэх нь) дөрөв.

 $3 \times 4 = 12$ :

Гурвыг дөрвөөр үржүүлэхэд (ог үржүүлвэл) арван хоёр болво.

or Гурвыг үржих **—** дөрөв тэнцүү (ог тэнцэх нь) арван хоёр.

Simplest of all, you can say Гурван дөрвийн арван хоёр.

14 + 7 = 2:

Арван дервийг долоод хуваахад (ог хуваабал) хоёр болно.

or Арван дервийг хуваах — долоо тэнцүү (от тэнцэх нь) хоёр.

To divide into four is дөрөв болгон хуваах. However болгон сап also mean 'each', 'every': сар болгон 'every month', хүн болгон

отуопе' as well as 'in the role of', 'as', in expressions like жишээ болгон 'as an example'.

# Distributive numerals

Mongolian equivalent of 'one each', 'two each', etc. is нэг нэгэн, хоёр хоёр and so on. When distributive numerals are used utributively (before a noun) the object noun may be in the instrumental case:

цэг нэг(эн) зусмээр (номоор, etc.) one piece (book, etc.), each

хоёр хоёр дэвтэр

two notebooks each

Хүүхдэдээ зуу зуун төгрөг(өөр) өгчээ. (He) gave (his) children 100 tögrög each.

If the distributive numeral itself is the object it takes the accusative suffix:

Хоёр хоёрыг аваарай.

Take two each.

#### Use of щиг

The postposition mur has the sense of 'as', 'like': Зун шиг дулаахан олана 'It's as warm as summer.' Similar constructions include бүгд шуг хүн шиг 'all as one man', and өдөр шиг саруулхан шөнө шур ав bright as day'. In other constructions it implies some шисеттаілту e.g. сайн хүн шиг байна 'seems like a decent chap' ший Тэр маргааш шүрэх шиг байна 'It seems he'll come тоттооw.'

Ахын морь шиг хурдан.

Your horse is as fast as (like) elder brother's.

When mar is used with personal pronouns it attracts their oblique stem' forms: над mar 'like me', чам mar 'like you'. \nother postposition which does the same is 'towards', түүн 'towards him'.

The variant юм шиг л means 'as if . . . didn't . . . 'e.g. мэддэггүй юм шиг л хариулсан 'answered as if (he) didn't know'.

The postposition should not be confused with the diminutive suffix in -mur e.g. ypr 'long', yprmur 'longish'.

# Verbs ending in -pax and -Trax

Some of the verbs we have used in this lesson are derived from adjectives and share the same ending in -pax:

муухайрах 'to worsen' from муу 'bad' and муухай 'ugly' сайжрах 'to improve' from сайн 'good' хүйтэх 'to grow cold' from хүйтэн 'cold' дулаарах 'to grow warm' from дулаан 'warm'

Another group of verbs derived from adjectives end in -Trax. cry
yptatrax 'to lengthen' (from ypt 'long') and богинотгох to
shorten' (from богино 'short').

#### Exercise 1

# Translate into English:

- I Тэнгэр сайжирч байна.
- 2 Бага цастай өвөл бол хар зуд болох уу?
- 3 Салхи гараад шороон шуурга тавив.
- 4 Ес өвлийн нар буцах өдрөөр эхэлдэг.
- 5 Хавар шиг нартай боловч хасах хорин хэм хүрсэн.

# Exercise 2

# Translate into Mongolian:

- 1 + 10 = 15 (When you add 10 to 5 it becomes 15.)
- $2.9 \times 9 = 81$  (9 multiplied by 9 is equal to 81.)
- 3 21 10 = 11 (If you subtract 10 from 21 11 remains.)
- 4  $16 \div 4 = 4$  (When you divide 16 by 4 it becomes 4.)
- 5 When (if) I divide the cake (торт) into eight everyone will be able to have one piece each.

# Exercise 3

# Match up the pairs appropriately in Mongolian:

- 1 дулаан, шороо
- 2 дулаарах, бороо

3 зун, сар

- 4 цас, хуваах
- 5 нар, хасах арван хэм
- 6 арван хэм дулаан, өвөл
- 7 хавар, над шиг
- 8 тэнгэр, хүйтрэх
- 9 уржих, намар
- 10 тан шиг, хүйтэн

# Dialogue 2

# Ги монгол гэрт орж үзсэн үү? Инve you had a look inside ■ Mongol yurt?

Pavid and Julie visit a herdsman's family home.

Цевида

Зогс, зогс! Бид малчны гэрт орж

үзмээр байна.

финооч:

Тэгье, тэгье. [малчинд] Нохой хорио!

Сайн байна уу?

Ма чин Балжиниям:

Сайн. Та сайн байна уу?

denough

TOBILET.

Сайн байна аа! Таны гэрт орж үзэж

болох уу?

Тасижинням:

Болно оо! Морилон орно уу?

-priouti:

Гэрт даардаггүй юу?

бачжинням:

Гэрт зун сэрүүхэн байдаг. Гэрийг зун

нэг дан эсгий бүрээстэй барьдаг.

ACIONIBI:

Гэрт өвөл дулаахан байдаг уу?

Балжинням:

Өвөл дөрвөн давхар бүрдэг юм. Гэр бол нүүхэд тохиромжтой. Гэр бол

малчин хүнд чухам тохирсон сууц. Гэрт ямар халаалга байдаг вэ?

Чевид: Моница эхиэр Монусса

Малчиы эхнэр Монхөө: Зуухыг аргал түлшээр халаадаг. Гэр дотроо галын байр, орны байр, авдар

сав зэрэг тогтсон байртай байдаг.

этижинням:

Гэрийн хаалга хэзээ ч урагшаа

хардаг.

Певид:

Та хэдэн малтай вэ?

Балжинням:

Би зуугаад хонь, жар шахам ямаа,

цөөн үнээ, ганц нэг тэмээ, тавхан

хайнаг, тав илүү морьтой. Малаас юу гарах вэ?

Жюли: Балжинням:

Малаас ноос, ноолуур, арьс шир гэх

мэт гардаг.

DAVID:

Stop, stop! We would like to have a look

inside a herdsman's ger.

DRIVER:

OK. (to the herdsman) Secure your

dogs!

DAVID:

How are you?

HERDSMAN BALJINNYAM:

Fine. How are you?

DAVID:	I'm fine too. May we have a look insule
	2000

BALJINNYAM:	You may! You are welcome!
JULIE:	Doesn't it get cold in a ger?

BALHNNYAM:	In the summer it's cool in the ger. In the
	summer the ger has only one layer of

felt covering.

JULIE: Is it warm inside the get in winter?

Balinnyam: In the winter there are four layers. The get is suited to nomadic movement. The get is actually a suitable dwelling for the

herdsman.

DAVID: What heating does the ger have?

HERDSMAN'S WIFE, We heat the stove with dried dung fuel MONKHOO: Inside the get there's a place for the fire.

places for the beds, and the chests, trunks and so on have their fixed places.

BALJINNYAM: The ger door always faces south.

DAVID: How many livestock do you have?

BAIJINNYAM: I have around a hundred sheep, almost sixty goats, several cows, just one camel

only five khainag, and more than five horses.

JULIE: What do you get from the livestock?

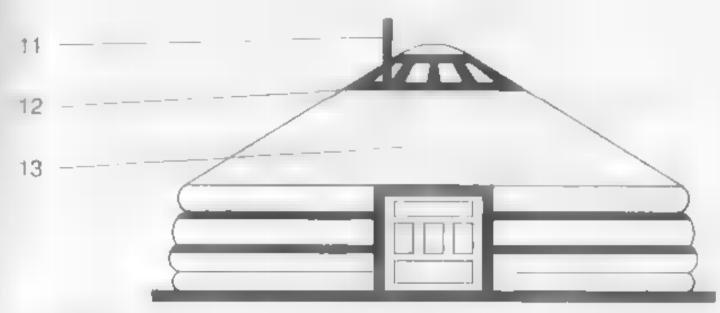
Baljinnyam: I get wool, cashmere, skins and hides,

etc., from the livestock.

# Шинэ Үг Vocabulary

авдар	chest, box	сэрүүхэн	cool
аргал	dried dung	TOPTOX	to fix
арьс(н) шир	skins and hides	тохирох	to be suited
барих	to pitch a ger	тохиромж	suitability
бүрэх	to cover	түлш(н)	fuel
бүрээс(н)	covering	ТЭМЭЭ	camel
даарах	to feel cold	<b>УНЭЭ</b>	cow
давкар	layer	хайнаг	yak-cow cross
дан	single; simple	жалаалга	heating
штүү	more, over	жанаах	to heat

herdsman to look, face BRITTERS xapax cashmere hair шныдуур to secure хорих wool several пнос(н) цөөн dog actually HOXOH чухам felt to nomadise HYYX эсгий dwelling almost LYYIL шахам ГЭР



The ger walls are made of wooden lattice sections (хана) – five of them for the standard-sized ger (таван ханатай гэр); the хана support the roof poles or rafters (унь). For key see p. 148.

#### Key to drawings:

1	шүүгээ	cupboard
2	авдар	chests

3 пирээ сандал low table and stools

4 op(н) beds

5 darana roof posts 6 syyx stove

6 зуух stove
7 аргалын дөрвөлж dung box koumiss bag

8 хөхүүр Koumiss ba 9 тавиур shelves 10 хаалга door 11 хидан(r) stove pipe 12 тооно roof ring

13 дээвэр roof cover

# Language points

# Approximate numbers

Asked by David how many livestock he has **Ta** хэдэн малтай вэ? the herdsman Baljinnyam replies **Би зуугаад хонь(той)** ... 'I have about 100 sheep ...' Note the -r- between the long vowels. To give an approximate number like this, add the suffix -аад, etc., to the numeral's stem:

дочоод коног болоод some 40 days later

The same suffix is used for the years '80s and '90s, etc.:

наяад он the '80s ерээд онд in the '90s

# How to say 'only' with numbers

This is done by adding the suffix -xan, (-xon, -xon, -xon) to the cardinal number stem:

деревхен only four apasxaн only ten

The same suffix may also be added to the approximate numbers for the tens:

арваадхан only about ten only about twenty

Similarly the suffix modifies the collective numerals (page 44):

долуулханаа only seven together

# Verbal nouns of agent

Mongolian has regular ways of forming nouns from verbs or other nouns to describe the work or activity of individuals. Nouns may be formed by adding -rq to the verb stem:

орчуулах	to translate	орчуулагч	translator
vpax	to study	сурагч	student, pupil
уйлчла	to serve	<b>РІСПРІЙ</b>	waiter
кудалдах	to sell	худалдагч	shop assistant
xenxqu	to be in charge	<b>РІСКХ</b> ФЕ	manager

Nouns may also be derived from noun stems by adding -प( ):

жолоо	reins, steering wheel	жолооч	driver
инймаа	trade	наймаач	trader
00700	cauldron	POOTOT	cook
хувьсгал	revolution	хувьсталч	revolutionary
*ME	medicine	PMC	doctor
MAJI	livestock	малчин	herdsman
педуун	migration	нүүдэлчин 🤚	nomad

A little caution is necessary, because the nouns in -гч are not always people: тоглуулагч is a record player and хөргөгч is a refrigerator!

# Other methods of noun derivation

Some other groups of nouns are formed similarly:

nouns in -лга:

халаалга heating, from халаах to heat
light switch, from унтраах to turn off

nouns in -вч:
бугуйвч bracelet, from бугуй wrist
солdом, from бэлэг genitals

nouns in -уур:
зашуур electric plug from зашах to connect

залгуур electric plug, from залгах to connect сотритет, from тооцоолох to calculate хувилуур duplicator, from хувилах to multiply

The stove and hearth

Most of the rap these days have a stove (syyx), a round metal box with a place for a large basin on top for boiling water, a small door below for adding fuel, and a chimney pipe which runs out through the in the roof (see p. 147). The fuel for the stove in the north may be local firewood, in the south saxaul or other Gobi shrubs, and in urban settlements coal or split logs, but over much of Mongolia the stove fuel is aprair or dry animal dung. It is gathered from the open steppe where it has dried naturally. It burns with a great heat like coke and is odourless. To gather argal is aprair ryyx, and this is done with a wooden pitchfork and special basket on the gatherer's back.

In the old days the ger had an open hearth (гал голомт) crafted from iron by ■ local blacksmith (дархан), and the hearth is the symbol of Mongol tradition; the youngest son was the guardian of the hearth, that is, the home territory.

There are various constructions to do with fire: ran abax 'to catch fire', ran түлэх 'to fuel (feed) a fire', ran raprax 'to make a fire'; one can also say ran галлах 'to make a fire', but this also means 'to shoot', and ran нээх is 'to open fire'.

# Нэмэлт Үг Additional vocabulary

With their orientation towards traditional practices and the natural cycle of animal life, country folk have different household equipment and foodstuffs from their town cousins. The herdsman's basic equipment is for horse management:

сазаар	bridle	уяа	hitching line
чөдөр	hobble	уурга	lasso pole
REEME	saddle	дерее	stirrup
гашуур	whip		·

The nomad's main summer food, or пагаан идээ as it is called, consists of a variety of home dairy produce:

огруул	dried curd	аарц	sour milk curd
oi=18F	cheese	өрөм	clotted cream
огран	sour milk	тос(н)	butter
9011131B	cream		

Several other kinds of homemade food are also a regular feature of ger life:

(dann	boiled meat dumplings for	soups	
боов	fried pastry	борц	air-dried meat strips
бууз	steamed meat dumplings	хуушуур	fried meat dumplings

#### Other points

The names of the seasons, like 'yesterday' or 'today', are used without case suffixes: **3yH** means 'summer' or 'in summer'.

The Mongols use the term **Tabah xomyy Man** 'five kinds of live-stock' to describe their main flocks and herds (**xomyy** actually means 'muzzle').

Mongol guard dogs can be fierce, and it is a wise precaution to get the owner to tie them up before you get out of the car – hence the call Нохойгоо хорь от Нохой хорио!

#### Exercise 4

'franslate into Mongolian:

- I have only two children.
- 2 Delgermaa has almost ten dogs.
- 3 Bat has only about 70 cows.
- 4 Tömör has fewer than 30 sheep.
- 5 Mongolia has more than 29 million livestock.

#### Exercise 5

Translate into English:

- I Морь, тэмээ, хонь, ямаа, үхрийг таван хошуу мал гэдэг.
- 2 Морь, хонийг халуун хошуутай мал гэдэг.
- 3 Үхэр, тэмээ, ямааг хүйтэн хошуутай мал гэдэг.

- 4 Гахай, тахиа хоёр таван хошуу малд ордоггүй.
- 5 Таван хошуу малын алинаас нь ноолуур гардаг вэ?

#### Exercise 6

Identify these ten articles and list them in Mongolian as (a) in equipment or (b) herding equipment:

хазаар, яндан, багана, уурга, хөхүүр, тооно, эмээл, ташуур чөдөр, хана

#### Dialogue 3 ••

Малаар баян, мөнгөөр ядуу Rich in livestock, poor in cash

David and Julie continue their chat with herdsman Baljinnyam and discuss some of the hardships of country life.

Девид:

Та ямар жилтэй вэ?

Балжинням:

Би морьтой. Хаврын тэргүүн сард төрсөн. Минип эхнэр нохойтой. Гурван ихэр хүүхэд үхэртэй

Жюли:

Олуулаа болохоор их монго орно биз?

Девид:

Та сард ямар цалинтай вэ?

Балжинням:

Би цалингүй. Би малчин хүн, ардын аж ахуйтап Малаар баян гэвч мөнгөөр ядуухан хүн байш

Жюли:

Өвөрхангай аймагт нэг морь ямар үнэтэй вэ! Нэг морь зургаан хоньтой тэнцэнэ. Нэгдлини

Балжинням: гишүүн байхдаа бага цалин авч байсан болооч одоо гурван жил надад ямар ч монго байхгүн

байна. Харин шагналын мөнгө нэг удаа авсан!

Девид:

Тийм үү? Ямар шагнал?

Балжинням:

Би тэргүүний малчин цолтой, бас 93 онд Монгол Улсын Ерөнхийлөгч намайг «Алтан гадас» одонгоор шагнасан. Танд Ерөнхийлегчийн зарлиг

узуулье?

Жюли:

Алив тэгээч. Зарлигт тань юу гэж бичсэн байна?

Балжиниям:

Зарлигт, мал аж ахуйн үйлдвэрлэдийг хөгжүүлэхэд чухал хувь нэмэр оруулсан Даваажавын Балжиниямыг Алтан гадас одонгоор

шагнасугай гэж бичээд.

Жюли:

Гэргий тань юу гэсэн гэлээ?

:MRITHUMCO of

Эхнэр зарлигийг радиогоор сонсонгуут надад нэг хачин үг хэллээ: «Ус уухгүй үхрийн толгойг бүү дар, үг мэдэхгүй хүний толгойг бүү илбэ» гэж.

1135 1157

What year were you born in?

UNI HNNYAM:

I was born in the horse year, in the first month of spring. My wife was born in the dog year. The triplets are 'oxen'.

Since there are many of you it must cost a lot surely?

1145 (1):

JE 1 164

What's your monthly salary?

HALJINNYAM:

I don't have a salary. I am a herdsman, an independent herder. I am rich in livestock but I am quite a

poor man in money terms.

Teen:

How much is a horse worth in Övörkhangai

province?

HALTINNYAM:

A horse is worth six sheep. Although I used to get a small wage when I was a negdel member I have now had no money for three years. But I did get some prize money once!

DAVID:

Really? What prize?

IMAYAMILIA II

I have the title 'front-ranking' herdsman, and in 1993 the Mongolian President awarded me the Order of the Pole Star. Let me show you the president's decree.

b LIE:

Please do! What does your decree say?

HALJINNYAM:

The decree says that for making an important contribution to the development of livestock production Davaajavyn Baljinnyam is to be awarded the Order of the Pole Star.

JULIE:

What did your wife say?

BALTINNYAM:

As soon as she heard the decree on the radio the wife said to me something strange: 'You can lead a horse to water . . .

Notes: The proverb in full says: 'Don't press the head of an ox that doesn't drink, don't stroke the head of a man that doesn't know."

The negdel or herding cooperatives were the basic structure for collective animal husbandry from the 1950s until they were disbanded in the 1990s. The independent herders are appuse axyaraa or 'people's enterprise persons'. The Order of the Pole Star (Arran range, the 'golden stake') is one of Mongolia's top awards for tervices to the state.

# Шинэ Үг Vocabulary

аж ахуй	enterprise	opox	to cost
мал 📰 ахуй	livestock herding	тэргүүн(ий)	leading; first
баян	rich	пепфевилич	production
гадас(н)	stake, pole	хачин	strange, funny
дарах	to press	хөгжүүлэх	to develop
зарлиг	decree	хувь нэмэр	contribution
нибэх	to stroke	цалин(г)	wage, salary
нхэр	twins	цол	title
гурван ихэр	triplets	чухал	important
нэгдэл	cooperative	шагнал	award
одон(г)	order	ядуу	poor

# Language points

#### Animal calendar

The dialogue begins with a short exchange about the years of birth of Baljinnyam and his wife, using the traditional animal names Colloquially you say the year's animal name in the comitative case **Би морьтой**. 'I horse-with', 'I was born in the horse year.' The twelve years in the usual order, with the current equivalents, are as follows

хулгана	mouse	1996/7
ухэр жил	ox (cow)	1997/8
бар	tiger	1998/9
туулай жил	hare	1999/0
луу	dragon	2000/1
могой	snake	2001/2
морин жил	horse	2002/3
хонин	sheep (ewe)	2003/4
мичин жил	monkey	2004/5
тахиа жил	chicken (hen)	2005/6
нохой	dog	2006/7
гахай жил	pig (sow)	2007/8

The calendar is the lunar calendar, and the year changes with the new moon in late January or early February and is celebrated in a festival called **цагаан** cap. ты twelve animal years are combined with five elements (михбод), each having its own colour. Each element and colour provails for two years, the colour names having in the first year the usual forms and in the second year forms used to describe to make animals (in brackets):

мид	wood	blue	хөх (хөхөгчин)
1900	fire	red	улаан (улаагчин)
нороод	earth	yellow	шар (шарагчин)
нимер	iron	white	цагаан (цагаагчин)
yi all	water	black	хар (харагчин)

this suggests that the years are alternately male and female or pathaps the animals, although this is disputed. There are special mouns in current use for many female animals, including үнээ 'cow' mare', but not e.g. for 'ewe', эм хонь.

The animals are usually referred to by the element in 'male' tears and by the colour in 'female' years: 1996/7 is 'fire mouse' tear, 1997/8 'red cow' year, 1998/9 'earth tiger' year, and so on (for to the details see Grammar summary).

The animals and elements combined create a cycle of 60 years (12 × 5) before the combinations begin to repeat themselves. This dycle is called a **жаран** '60'. The first **жаран** began in 1027, and the current one (XV) in 1987 (year of the hare).

Note that when used attributively nouns with fleeting n display it: морин жил, хонин жил, мичин жил, модон махбод, усан махбод.

# Traditional names for months

The traditional names for the months are also in use with the lunar calendar. They are in sequence the 'leading', тэргүүн, 'middle', дунд and 'end', адаг months of 'spring' (хавар), 'summer' (зун), 'яштитп' (намар) and 'winter' (евел) respectively:

хаврын тэргүүн сар	зуны тэргүүн сар
хаврын дунд сар	зуны дунд сар
хаврын адаг сар	зуны адаг сар
намрын тэргүүн сар	евлийн тэргүүн сар
намрын дунд сар	өвлийн дунд сар
намрын адаг сар	өвлийн адаг сар

The names of the days of these months also relate to the animal cycle, as do the traditional hours of the day (see page 242).

# Successive converb (as soon as) -нгуут

Baljinnyam says that 'as soon in his wife heard the decree on the radio' (sapmuraar panuoroop concontryyr) she cited a proverb Here are some more examples of what is called the successive converb (stem plus -hryyr/-hryyr):

Аавыг явангуут ши ирлээ.

As soon as (my) father had gone (my) mother arrived.

The successive converb can also attract the reflexive suffix when the subjects are the same:

Ирэнгүүт нь над хэлээрэй.

Tell me as soon as he arrives.

Ирэнгүүтээ над хэлээрэй.

Tell me as soon as you arrive.

# 'Let it be so'

Resolutions, decrees and other official decisions add to the verb stem the voluntative suffix -cyraŭ, -cyraŭ 'Let ...'. The form reactive, but translates better as passive 'X is to be ...');

Д. Балжиннямыт Алтан гадас одонгоор шагнасугай. Let us award D. Baljinnyam the Order of the Pole Star.

D. Baljinnyam is to be awarded the Order of the Pole Star.

Further examples (see below the presidential decrees on ambassadors) include үүрэгт половительной чөлөөлсүгэй 'is to be released from (his) duties' from the verb чөлөөлөх and томилсугай 'is to be appointed' from томилох.

# МОНГОЛ УЛСЫН ЕРӨНХИЙЛӨГЧИЙН ЗАРЛИГ

Дугаар 46

1997 оны 3 дүгээр

Улааанбаатар

сарын 24-ний өдөр Цэдэнжавын Сүхбаатарыг элчин

сайдаар томилох тухай Мошгол Улсаас Их Британи, Умард Ирландын Нэгдсэн Вант Улсад суух Онц бөгөөд Бүрэн эрхт элчин сайдаар Цэдэнжавын Сүхбаатарыг тохооп томилсугай.

МОНГОЛ УЛСЫН ЕРӨНХИЙЛӨГЧ

П. ОЧИРБАТ

Индерн Вант Улсчиц бөгөөд Бүрэн эрхтэлчин сайд

United Kingdom

Ambassador Extraordinary and
Plenipotentiary

# МОНГОЛ УЛСЫН ЕРӨНХИЙЛӨГЧИЙН ЗАРЛИГ

1993 оны 1 дүгээр

Дугаар 5

Улааанбаатар хот

# ЗАРИМ ХҮНИЙГ ОДОН, МЕДАЛИАР ШАГНАХ ТУХАЙ

Мал аж ахуйн үйлдвэрлэлийг хөгжүүлэхэд чухал хувь фмэр оруулж, өндөр ашиг шимтэй шинэ үүлдрийн мал бин болгоход хөдөлмөрийн амжилт гаргасныг үнэлж дор зурдсан хүмүүсийг Монгол Улсын одон медалиар фиагнасугай.

Сухбаатарын одонгоор:

Самбуугийн Дугаржав — Мал аж ахуйн эрдэм шинжилгээний хүрээлэнгийн секторын эрхлэгч

Алтан гадас одонгоор:

Даваажавын Балжинням

Өвөрхангай аймгийн Шанх сумын малчин

монгол улсын ерөнхийлөгч

П. ОЧИРБАТ

# Нэмэлт Үг Additional vocabulary

rural district success СУМ TILYXKME productivity to appreciate **УНЭЛЭХ** WHILE LIBITE to make use of үүлдэр breed **мигиглах** to create institute бий болгох нелеечух undermentioned дор дурдсан new зарим certain, some эрдэм шинжилгээ research medal медаль

#### Exercise 7

Translate into English:

- 1 Ерөнхий сайдын үүрэгт ажлаас Пунцагийн Жасрии чөлөөлсүгэй.
- 2 Утсыг дуугарангуут Сүх очиж авсан.
- 3 Энэ зарлигийг хүчингүй болгосугай.
- 4 Батыг зогсоол хүрэнгүүт ямаан тэрэг ирсэн.
- 5 «Сонгино» дуурэг гэснийг «Сонгино хайрхан» дүүрэг тээ өөрчилсүгэй.

#### Exercise

Translate into English the text of the decree No 5, on page 157.

#### Exercise 9

Match the animal years and elements, e.g. 1997/8 = red (fire) ox

1 2003/4 2 2007/8 3 2000/1 4 2005/6

5 2002/3

# Dialogue for comprehension 7

Девид: Өнөөдөр тэнгэр ямар байна?

Жюли: Тэнгэр сайхан байна. Монголд жилийн ихэнх

одор тэнгэр цэлмэг байдаг. Тэгээд Монголыг хох

тэнгэрийн орон гэдэг юм!

Девид: Маргааш ямар байх бол?

Жюли: Тэнгэр муухайрна гэсэн. Дуутай бороо орох гэнэ

Девид: Нөгөөдөр тэнгэр арилах болов уу?

Жюли: Магадгүй. Хүйтэн өвөл болох шинжтэй. Гэрэ

овол дулаахан байдаг уу?

Балжинням: Өвөл гурван давхар бүрдэг юм.

Девид: Гэрт ямар халаалгатай байдаг вэ?

Малчны эхнэр Мөнхөө: Зуухыг аргал түлшээр халаадаг юм

Девид: Та хэдэн малтай вэ?

Балжинням: Би хоёр зуугаад хонь, ная шахам ямаа, аравхан

үнээ, таван морьтой. Надад тэмээ байхгүй.

Девид: Та ямар жилтэй вэ?

Ішпжинням: Би хулганатай. Миний эхнэр бартай.

жоли: Та хэдэн хүүхэдтэй вэ?

Менхоо: Долоохон.

Кюли: Есүүлээ болохоор их мөнгө оролгүй яах вэ?

Інстжинням: Малаар баян боловч мөнгөөр ядуу байна. Харин

би тэргүүний малчин. Монгол Улсын

Ерөнхийлөгч намайг медалиар шагнасан.

Жюли: Гэргий тэнь юу гэсэн гэлээ?

Ішлокинням: Эхнэр надад, ус уухгүй үхрийн толгойг бүү дар,

үг мэдэхгүй хүний толгойг бүү илбэ гэж хэлсэн.

Note: Not all Mongols accept a front-vowel version and of the word Table.

# жижмех оопоД нэг огтол

Look before you leap

#### In this lesson you will learn:

- About shopping in shops and markets
- Verb forms for 'when' and 'while'
- Admonitory verb form (don't forget!)
- How to say 'shouldn't'
- Russian words in everyday use

# Dialogue 1

# Манайхаар дахнад үйлчлүүлээрэй! Please call again!

Bat and Delgermaa are out shopping and decide to try a new grocery store.

Дэлгэрмаа:

Шинэ шөнийн дэлгүүр явах уу?

Бат:

Шөнийн дэлгүүрээ? Юу вэ?

Дэлгэрмаа:

Шөнийн дэлгүүр гэдэг бол хорин дорвөн цагини

ажиллагаатай хүнсний дэлгүүр.

Бат:

За хоёулаа юу юу авах билээ?

Дэлгэрмаа:

Бидэнд авах юмны жагсаалт байгаа.

Бат:

Өө зүйтэй. Би хараадахъя. Байхуу цай, будаа жаахан үхрийн мах, төмс, лууван, байцаа, тараг гэж байна. Аа бас жаран лааны чийдэнгийн шил нэг хэрэгтэй юм байна. Манай жорлоштииг

гэрэл шатчихсан.

Дэлгэрмаа: Бат:

Чи ундаа, уух юмаа бичихээ мартсан байна, За нэг шил «Бага банди» архи, нэг шил цагаан

дарс, дөрвөн сав рашаан ус авъя. Манайд талх

бий юү?

1 п трмаа:

Бий, бий. Өчигдөрийн талх дуусаагүй байсан.

Харин нэг кило сайхан гадил нэмж авъя.

Тэгье, тэгье. Гадил их үнэтэй байна шүү. Нэг кило нь нэг мянга дөрвөн зуун төгрөг гэж байна.

Тэягэрмаа:

За одоо хоёулаа касс руу очиж бичүүлье. Хэдэн

төгрөг болж байгаа бол?

for cutter:

Зургаан мянга найман зуун дөчин төгрөг.

За баярлалаа! Баяртай!

In sections:

Баяртай! Манайхаар дахиад үйлчлүүлээрэй!

ITHERMAA: Shall we go to the new night shop?

1151

Night shop? What's that?

DEFERMAN: The night shop is a grocery store (food shop) which

works 24 hours.

HALL

So what are the two of us going to buy?

DELGERMAA!

We do have a shopping list.

HALL

Oh right! Let me take a look. It says black tea, rice, some beef, potatoes, carrots, cabbage, and sour cream. Ah, and (we) need a 60-watt light bulb. The

light in our lavatory has burned out.

DELGI-RMAA:

You forgot to write down the drinks.

BALL

Well, a bottle of 'Baga bandi' vodka, a bottle of white wine and four bottles of mineral water. Do we

have any bread?

DiffGERMAA!

Yes, yes. Yesterday's hasn't been finished. But let's

add a kilo of nice bananas.

RAIL

OK, OK. Bananas are certainly expensive. One kilo

(of them) is 1,400 tugriks.

DELGERMAN!

So now let's the two of us go to the cashier (checkout) and get our bill. How much (many tugriks) might that be?

U ASHHER!

6,840.

BAIL

Thank you. Goodbye.

CASHIER:

Goodbye. Please call again (lit. be served by us

again).

# Шинэ Үг Vocabulary

activity

бичүүлэх

to get one's bill

байхуу

black (pekoe) tea

галил

banana

жагсаалт	list	<b>УНЭТЭЙ</b>	expensive
зүйтэй	right, correct	хүнс(н)	foodstuffs
лаа	candle; watt	чийцэн(г)	lamp
сав(н)	container	प्रसंग्राज्ञास्त्रास्त्र ग्रास्त्र	light bulb
талж(н)	bread	шатах	to burn out

# Language points

# Voluntative for short actions

Bat says, Ви хараадахья 'Let me take a look.' This first-person voluntative form used for short actions is constructed with the derivational suffixes -аадах- (-оодох-/-өөдөх-/-ээдэх-) plus the voluntative suffixes giving -аадах-ъя (-оодох-ъё/-өөдөх-ье/-ээдэх be) added to the verb stem (in this case xap from xapax):

Би бичээдэхье. Let me jot it down. (from бичих) Би ороодожьё. Let me pop in. (from opox)

# Imperative for short actions

For short actions, as with the voluntative forms above, there are three second-person imperatives:

-аадах (-оодох, -өөдөх, -ээдэх) the stem imperative -аадахаач (-оодохооч, -өөдөхөөч, -ээдэхээч) the polite -аач -аадахаарай (-оодохоорой, -өөдөхөөрэй, -ээдхээрэй) the future imperative -aapan:

Хар! Хараадах!

Хараач! Хараадахаач! Хараарай! Хараадахаарай! Take a look! (from харах)

Бич! Бичээдэх!

Бичээч! Бичээдэхээч!

Бичээрэй! Бичээдэхээрэй! Jot it down! (from бичих)

# Causative verbs

The verbs бичуулэх and уйлчлуулэх are causative verbs based respectively on бичих 'to write' and уйлчлэх 'to serve': to have someone write something (i.e. the bill), and to have someone serve someone (i.e. the shopper).

Delgermaa says,

За одоо хоёулаа касс руу очиж бичүүлье. So now let the two of us visiting the cashier have (the bill)

written out.

In turn the cashier thanks her and says,

Манайхаар дахиад үйлчлүүлээрэй.

Please have yourselves served by our people again.

# Intensive verbs

The perfective verbal noun marrancan is derived from marax 'to burn out', 'burn up' by insertion of the derivational suffix -чихidescribing a sudden or unexpected action, see page 87):

Шатчихсан байна.

It's burned out.

Here is a similar form based on the perfective converb:

Батыг ирэхэд шатчихаад байсан.

When Bat arrived it was (had) burned out.

Other points

The word бичихээ used by Delgermaa is the present-future verbal noun **бичих** plus the reflexive (accusative) ending -99: 'You have forgotten your writing of the drinks' ундаа уух юмаа being also with reflexive -aa.

As indicated by the final for Deigermaa's question to the cashier is rather tentative (see page 118): ... болж байгаа бол? '(How much) might that be?'

#### Exercise 1

Translate into Mongolian:

- Potatoes are not expensive. They are T500 for half a kilo.
- Do we have any bread? No. Yesterday's bread is finished.
- Where is the checkout? Let's go and pay.
- 4 How much would that be, T8,743?
- 5 How many dollars is that? T8,743 is about 11 dollars.

#### Exercise 2

Give the 'short-action' voluntative and imperative forms for the following:

- I Let's find out! Find out!
- 2 Let's go! Go!
- 3 Let's pop in! Pop in!
- 4 Let's take! Take!
- 5 Let's give! Give!

#### Exercise 3

Reorganize your shopping list to separate foodstuffs from other purchases:

чийдэнгийн шил, талх, залгуур, жүрж, лавлах бичи жорлонгийн цаас, байцаа, хайч, хонины мах, томс, тавиур ааруул, харандаа, архи, цай

# Dialogue 2

Дэшүүрээс арай хямдхан уу? Is it ■ bit cheaper than the shop?

Bat and Delgermaa talk to Julie and David about going to the market.

Дэлгэрмаа: Улаанбаатарт нэг үеэ бодвол хүнсний хангамж

их сайн болжээ. Одоо юу л бол юу авч болохоор

байна.

Жюли: Хамгийн сайн хүнсний зах аль нь вэ?

Бат: Улаанбаатарт «Дөрвөн уул», «Далай ээж», «Хар

хорин», гээд олон хүнсний зах бий. Харин «Далай ээж» захыг хамгийн сайн нь гэдэг юм.

Девид: «Далай ээж» зах хаана байдаг вэ?

Дэлгэрмаа: «Далай ээж» зах улсын их дэлгүүрээс урагшаа.

улсын циркийн баруун талд байдаг.

Жюли: Яагаад энэ зах сайн гэж?

Бат: Улаанбаатарт амьдардаг гадаадынхан энэ зах руу

очих, тэндээс хүнсний бараагаа авах их дуртай. Учир нь хүнсний барааны сонголт сайтай. Жишээлбэл янз бүрийн махан, сүүн бүтээгдэхүүн, жимс, ногоо, олон төрлийн чихэр, жигнэмэгээс аль хүссэнээ сонгож болно. Дэлхийд алдартай олон төрлийн хүнсний бүтээгдэхүүн энд бий.

ница: Унэ нь ямар вэ? Дэлгүүрээс арай хямдхан уу? Бил Ер нь гайгүй. Бөөнөөр нь авбал бүр сайн

хямдарна.

Кюли: Бид маргааш оглоо «Далай ээж» зах руу явмаар

байна.

Читормаа: Та нар «Далай ээж» зах руу очингоо «Монгол

ном»-ын дэлгүүрт ороод яваарай. Надад Алгангэрэлийн «Монгол-англи толь» нэгийг

аваарай.

Певид: За болноо болно.

Del German: Compared with before, food supplies in Ulan Bator

have improved. Now one can buy anything at all.

Which is the best food market?

HAT: In Ulan Bator there are many food markets, the Four

Mountains', the 'Sea Mother', the 'Karakorum'. But they say that the 'Sea Mother' market is the best.

DAVID: Where is the 'Sea Mother' market?

Deligerman: The 'Sea Mother' market is south of the state department store, on the west side of the state circus.

Julie: Why do they say this market is good?

BAT: The foreigners who live in Ulan Bator very much

like to visit this market and buy their foodstuffs there. This is because the choice is good as to foodstuffs. For example, from all sorts of meat and milk products, fruit, vegetables, all kinds of sweets and jams, you can choose which you want. There are all kinds of world famous food products there.

DAVID: What are the prices like? Is it a bit cheaper than the

shops?

BAT: Actually not bad. If you buy in bulk there are good

reductions.

JULIE: We would like to go to the 'Sea Mother' market

tomorrow morning.

Delgermaa: While you're on your way to the 'Sea Mother' market

please drop in at the 'Mongol Book' shop. Please buy me a copy of Altangerel's Mongol-English dictionary.

DAVID: Certainly.

# Шинэ Үг Vocabulary

бөөнөөр	bulk, wholesale	сайтай	good as to
<b>бүтээгдэхүүн</b>	product	сонголт	selection
гайгүй	not bad	COHTOX	to choose
дуудах	to call	толь(н)	dictionary
дэлхийд алдартай	world-famous		supply
ер нь	actually	хямдрах	to reduce price
TEMEHINE	jam	цирк	circus
жинээлбэл	for example	чехэр	sweets
38X	market		

# Language points

#### **New constructions**

Delgermaa says: Улаанбаатарт нэг үеэ бодвол хүнсний хангамж сайн болжээ. As бодвол ('if you reckon', conditional convert of бодох) can mean 'compared with' and нэг үеэ бодвол means 'compared with one (i.e. earlier) time', the sentence reads 'Compared with before, food supplies in Ulan Bator have greatly improved (become very good).' Delgermaa continues: Одоо юу л бол юу болохоор байна. Here юу л бол юу is the object of the verbal construction and means 'anything at all', while авч болохоор байна (the verbal noun болох 'to become' plus the instrumental case ending) indicates how things have turned out: 'Now one can buy anything at all.'

# Attributive nouns and fleeting n

When nouns describing substances or materials are used attributively fleeting n will appear (see page 56). Further examples:

махан хоол	meat dish (max)		
сүүн бүтээгдэхүүн	milk products (cyy)		
модон эдлэл	wooden goods, furniture (мод)		
морин хуур	horse(head) fiddle (морь)		

However, an attributive fleeting n is sometimes coined for words which don't have it: yypse yrac 'cell phone' (yyp), and even for

Russian words: бетонон гарааш 'concrete garage' (бетон), пластмассан цонх 'plastic window' (пластмасс), etc.

# Taking the opportunity to do something -нгаа

This is a form of the verb which suggests that a person should take advantage of one action to do another. The subjects of the two thuses have to be the same. This so-called 'opportune' converb is formed with the suffix -Hraa (-Hroo, -Hree, -Hree):

Та зах руу очингоо дэлгүүрт ороод яваарай!
While you're on your way to the market call in at the shop.

Канк руу явангаа Сухийнд очмоор байна.
As I'm going to the bank I'd like to call on the Sükhs.

# Telephone numbers

Six-figure numbers are spoken as three groups of double figures XX-XX-XX, and five-figure numbers as XX-XXX:

Мон-Кор компаний утас 314299 (гучин нэг дөчин хоёр ерэн ес), Монгол компаний утас 55355 (тавин тав гурав тавин тав).

# Нэмэлт Үг Additional vocabulary

# Russian words in common use

Mongolian has acquired from Russian many everyday words as well as technical and political vocabulary. Several have already appeared in earlier lessons (**kacc**, **ooqup**, **abtofyc**, **topt**). Often they describe clothing, furniture, food, etc. introduced into Mongolia during the period of Russian influence:

костюм	suit, dress	пиджак	coat
сорочик (сорочка)	shirt	туфли	shoes
ботинк (ботинки)	boots	платье	dress, frock
брюк (брюки)	trousers	чемодан	suitcase
карман	pocket	размер	size куртка jacke

Most words beginning with the letters  $\mathbf{x}$ ,  $\mathbf{n}$ ,  $\mathbf{p}$  and  $\mathbf{\phi}$  have come from Russian, but they have acquired Mongol pronunciation and in some cases their spelling has changed. Note that парк can по то 'park' e.g. зоопарк, but that автопарк means 'vehicle fleet'.

#### HOUSEHOLD: плитк (плитка) hotplate, cooker хийн баллон gas cylinder кострюль (кастрюля) saucepan bathtub ванп (ванна) мебель furniture armchair кресло приставк (приставка) video recorder гарааш (гараж) garage подъезд(н) entrance hall, розетк (розетка) socket lobby (flats)

The Mongolians have made a joke of the word — on the bast that it consists of two Russian words конь 'horse' and ж 'уль and can therefore be translated into Mongolian as морь сарлаг

			•
варень (варенье)	jam	салат	salad
печень (печенье)	biscuits	консерв	canned food
шампунь	shampoo	прокат	hire

# Other points

Like the present-future verbal noun бичихээ (Dialogue 1), the reflexive (accusative case) is used with the perfective verbal nountressed in xyccэнээ сонгож болно. This means that from among the foregoing list of items (the last having the ablative suffix) one could chose whichever (аль) one wished (хуссэнээ). Note аль нь 'which of them?' in Хамгийн сайн аль вэ? 'Which of them is the best?' and ... хамгийн сайн нь '... is the best of them.'

# Exercise

Answer the questions in Mongolian:

- 1 Улаанбаатарын хамгийн сайн хүнсний зах аль нь вэ?
- 2 «Далай ээж» хаана байдаг вэ?
- 3 Яагаад энэ зах сайн гэж?
- 4 Үнэ нь дэлгүүрээс арай хямдхан уу?
- 5 «Далай ээж» зах руу яаж явах вэ?

#### 1 unreise 5

Leuslate into Mongolian:

- While you're in the shop buy some bananas.

  The foreigners living in Ulan Bator like to go to that shop and buy their drinks there.
- You can choose what (which) you want from all sorts of furniture there.
- Un the way to Mongolia I would like to spend two nights in Moscow.

What is your phone number? My phone number is 474339.

#### t varcise

translate the following text into English:

По дэлгүүрийн 1-р давхарт хүнсний бараа байдаг. Би өнөөдөр оспоо талх, сүү, мах, элсэн чихэр авсан учир тэндээс юм ополигүй. Харин 2-р давхарт гарч эрэгтэй хүний хувцасны ослгт очиж нэг улаан цамц үзлээ. Би кассанд мөнгөө өгөөд оцилдгчаас цамцаа авлаа. Их дэлгүүрийн 3-р давхарт эрэгтэй, от тэй хүний янз бүрийн хувцас бий. Би гуравдугаар давхарт бреангүй. 1-р давхарт буулаа. Намайг тэндээс гарч явахад ошин цаг болж байв. Гадаа тэнгэр сайхан байлаа. Би гэртээ ариад, шинэ цамцаа өмсөж, эхнэртэйгээ хамт кино үзэхээр опно театр луу явлаа.

Comprehension exercise: See how far you can follow this cartoon story, which illustrates the colloquial use of several verbs in -чих-, the imperative and the past perfect.

Key to cartoon on page 170

Би хун **www yy?**Am I really man?

- Чи күн шиг кичээж яваад картныхаа талкыг аваад ирж чадах уу? Чадна!
  - Could you try like a man and go and buy our bread ration? Yes, I could!
- 2 «Хуухэд насанд хүргэж өгдөг галт тэрэг хэрвээ ...»

  'If there were a train taking one back to childhood ...' (words of a popular song)



- Укор толгойлчихоод хүн дайрлаа гэм чи!

  Пaving grown an ox's head you bumped into someone, you trouble!
- My) ass, you trod on my foot!

  Innaan гахай минь хурдан ог!

(My) dirty pig, give was your money quickly!

Хулгайч муур царайлчихаад, хурдан аваад зайл!
 (You) have taken on the looks of a thief cat, take (it) quickly and clear off!

Ээж ээ! Би хүн шиг явж чадсангүй! Mummy! I wasn't able to go like a man!

5(+1)]	really am/is/are	карт(н)	ration card
2 8%	trouble	илжиг	ass, donkey
почан	dirty	хулгайч	thief
чыцах	to be able to	хичээх	to try
лалах	to clear off	хөгө желдүх	to (help) take, delive
муур	cat	дайрах	to bump into
толгойлох	to form a head	(толгойлчих to	o form a head quickly)
гишгэх	to tread	(гишгэчих to	tread suddenly)
цпрайлах	to look like	(царайлчих to	suddenly look like)

There was food rationing for m brief period in the early 1990s.

# Dialogue Dialogue

Apan чанар муутай учраас Because the quality is less good

David and Julie go shopping in the market.

Жюли: Энэ усан үзэм ямар үнэтэй вэ?

I-р Худалдагч: Усан үзэм наймтай (найман зуун төгрөг) байх

шив дээ.

Жюли: Арай хямдхан байна уу? 1-р Худалдагч: Байна, харин хятадыях.

Девид: Хятадынх гэдэг чинь юу гэсэн үг вэ?

I-р Худалдагч: Хятадынх болохоор арай чанар муутай байдаг

гэдэг юм. Тийм учраас арай хямд байгаа юм.

Девид: За тийм бол үнэтэй нь дээр биз ээ. Наши

нэг килийг өгөөч.

Жюли: Та сайн үзэж аваарай. Долоо хэмжиж, по

огтол гэж монголын сайхан үг байдаг юм

Девид: Өө за, баярлалаа. Харин тийм шүү.

Жюли: Та мартуузай!

1-р Худалдагч: За найман зуун төгрөг өгөөрэй.

Жюли: Баярлалаа. Баяртай.

Девид: Би ТҮЦ (түргэн үйлчилгээний цэг)-ээс миж түг

авмаар байна. Нэг «Камел» янжуур, н п

шудэнз өгөөч. Ямар үнэтэй вэ?

2-р Худалдагч: Есен зуун төгрөг. Шүдэнз хорин төгрөг. Бүн

есөн зуун хорь.

Жюли: Нэг лааз «Фанта» өгчих. 2-р Худалдагч: «Фанта» долоон зуун төгрөг.

Жюли: За май энэ таван мянган төгрөгний дэвсгэрт

2-р Худалдагч: Хариулт мөнгөө аваарай. Гурван мянга гурши

зуун наян төгрөг.

Жюли: За баярлалаа.

JULIE: How much are these grapes?

Seller 1: Grapes are eight (hundred tugriks).

Julie: Are there any cheaper (ones)?

Seller 1: Yes, but they're Chinese.

David: What do you mean, Chinese?

Seller 1: It means that because they're Chinese the quality is

less good ('more bad'). That's why they're cheaper

DAVID: In that case ('if that's how it is') the expensive

ones are certainly better. Let me have ('give me')

a kilo.

Julie: Take a good look before you buy. There is a nice

Mongolian saying: 'Measure seven times hefore

you cut.'

DAVID: Oh well, thanks. You can say that again!

JULIE: Mind you don't forget!

SELLER 1: So that's ('please give me') 800 tugriks.

Julie: Thank you. Goodbye.

DAVID: I want to buy some cigarettes at the 'fast service

point' (kiosk). A (packet of) Camel cigarettes and

a (box of) matches. How much is that?

Seller 2: 900 tugriks. The matches are 20 tugriks. Altogether

920.

Let me have a can of Fanta.

Fanta is 700 tugriks.

Here, take this 5,000 tugrik note.

Here's your change, 3,380.

tern: Ah, thank you.

# Шинэ Yr Vocabulary

фистэр	banknote	хэмжих	to measure
una (H)	can, tin	II,9F	(sales)point
of DIOX	to cut	чанар	quality
Heriggs	quick, fast	шив	final, emphatic
<b>нан үзэм</b>	grape(s)	шүдэнз	match(es)
вариулт монго	change	янжуур	cigarette(s)

# Language points

# Admonitory form of the verb -уузай

Inlie says to David, Та мартуузай 'Mind you don't forget!' The offix -уузай (-уүзэй) is added to the stem (in this case, of мартах 'to forget'). Other possible translations include 'Make sure you're not . . .', 'Make sure you don't . . .' or 'Be sure not to the) . . .'

Юмаа мартуузай! Don't forget your things!

# Verbal noun plus dative/locative: 'when'

When' may be translated by adding the dative/locative case ending (appropriate vowel plus -д) to verbal nouns: байх-ад 'when being'. The tense is governed by that of the final verb. Where the two clauses have different subjects, as we have seen one of them is given the accusative case ending:

Намайт бага байхад манайх хөдөө байсан.

When I was little, my family lived (were) in the country.

Батыг гэртээ очиход Дэлгэрмаа байхгүй байсан. When Bat went home, Delgermaa wasn't there.

If the subject of both clauses is the same, a reflexive ending added to the verbal noun after the dative/locative suffix, c.p.

Бат гэртээ харихдаа хурдан явсан. When Bat went home he walked quickly.

оюутан байхдаа

when/while student.

Similarly: оюутан байхаасаа since becoming a student

# Vowels in Russian words

In Russian words stress is unmarked and irregular. The Russian for 'garage' (rapam), stressed on the second syllable, is with a rapaam in Mongolian. The spelling of words of Russian origin in Mongolian often does not conform to the Mongolian rule that Iron and back vowels do not mix in the same word. For example, the word kypc meaning 'course' seems to be a back-vowel word to takes the plural suffix -ууд used with front-vowel words: курсуун курсуудийн 'of the courses', etc. Compare this with the word курп 'Kurd(ish)' which has the regular plural курдууд(ын). Similart, музей 'museum' forms the plural музейнүүд.

Another example of mixed vowels is found in Kphmufu татаарууд 'Crimean Tartars'. In Mongol words the letter ы аррелг only in the accusative and genitive back-vowel suffixes, The Khanate of Crimea, founded in 1443 as one of the successor state of the Mongols' Golden Horde, became a vassal of the Ottoman Turks in 1475 and the Crimean Tartars were gradually Turkicised The Crimea was annexed to Russia by Catherine the Great in 1781

Some Mongolians consider that the words крым and кремль (Kremlin) were both originally Mongol, derived from 'kerem meaning wall or citadel (in modern Mongol xэрэм - the Great Wall of China is called **qaraan x9p9m**). The white limestone walls of the original Moscow Kremlin were built in 1367 and attacked by the Mongols in 1382. The Crimean Tartars tried twice to capture Moscow, in 1571 when they destroyed everything except the Kremlin, and in 1591 when their attack failed.

#### Сар шинийн баярын үйлчилгээ

мий болон барааны захууд

Стин ээж», «Дөрвөн уул» зэрэг ----- битүү зах хоёрдугаар ..... 7-нд 10-19 цагуудад вессыя, 8, 9-ид амария, 10-наас чини цагийн хуваарьт орно. , и инт «Хучит шонхор», барааны (хуучнаар 3 дугаар эмийн сан) — шх, «Хар хорин», техникийн

- гдугаар сарын 7-нд 10-17 🚃 удад ажиллаад, 8, 9, 10, 11-ний Нийтийн уйлчилгээтэй хоолны туу дэд амарч, 12-ноос өдрийн газрууд хоёрдугаар сарын 8, 9-нд

1 күрээ» зэрэг задгай зах

I чр хорооллын усны хангамж

I q корооллын ус түгээх байрууд · приугаар сарын 7, 10-нд 10-14, 16 20 цагуудад ажиллаж, 8, 9-нд очерна. Бусад одруудэд одрийн панийн хуваариар үйлчилнэ. Гэр опролод болон орон сууц, упичилгээний газрын усны - ан амжтай холбогдсон санал, · дэлтийг Ус сувгийн ашиглалтын пррын 452730, 450208 дугаарын утсаар 24 цагаар хүлээн авна.

#### **Хулалдаа**

удер ээлжтэй хүнсний дэлгүүрүүд Автобус, троллейбус хоёрдугаар «вердугаар сарын 8-нд амарч, 9, 10, сарын 7-нд 7-22.30, 8, 9-ний 11, 12-нд 10-17 цагуудад ажиллана. өдрүүдэд 8-22.30 цагуудад Пог ээлжтэй хүнсний дэлгүүрүүд 8, үйлчилнэ. Хоёрдугаар сарын и пд амарч, 10, 11-нд 9-17 цаг куртэл ажиллана. 24 цагийн үйлчилгээтэй хүнсний дэлгүүрүүд амрахгүй. Аж үйлдвэрийн барааны ажиллаж, 24 цагаар дуудлага лэлгүүрүүд 8, 9-нд амариа, 10-нд 10-17 цагт ажиллаж, 11-нээс одрийн хураариар ажиллана.

#### Эмийн

«Алтай» (хуучнаар 34 дүгээр эмийн сан), «Эрдэнэ бүрэн» (Томор замын коллежийн баруун урд талд байрладаг), «Нахиа» (хуучнаар 15 дугаар эмийн сан), «Наран туул» эмийн сангууд 24 цагаар ажиллана.

#### Нийтийн хоол

прини хуваариар ажиллаж эхэлнэ, амарч, бусад өдрүүдэд өдрийн цагийн хуваариар ажиллана. Үйлдвэр, байгууллагын дэргэдэх гуанз, цайны газрууд түшиглэсэн газрынхаа ажиллах цагийн хуваарийг мөрдөнө.

#### Дупааны 🔳

Дулааны шугам сүлжээний газрын диспетчер, хариуцлагатай жижүүр 24 цагаар ажишлаж, дулаан хангамжтай холбогдсон санал, хусэлтийг 343047, 342978 дугаарын утсаар хүлээн авна.

# Нийтийн тээвэр

10-наас өдрийн хуваариар ажиллана. Такси хоёрдугаар сарын 7-нд 7-23, 8, 9-нд 9-23 цаг хүртэл хүлээн авч үйлчилнэ.

# Нэмэлт Yr Additional vocabulary

битүү	closed; covered	KEGAYT	to distribute
гуанз(н)	restaurant	түшиглэх	to depend on
задгай	open, open-air	хариуцлага	responsibility
нахиа	bud	холбогдох	to be connected
санал	opinion, view	хусэлт	request
суваг	channel	шугам	line, route
сүлжээ	network, system	99JEK	shift, turn

Cap шинийн баяр: operating hours of markets, pharmacies, shop and services over the new-year holiday or цагаан сар. The Russian диспетаер (from the English 'despatcher') means 'controller'. Note Exercise 9 for comprehension practice.

# Other points

The expression **харин тийм** шүү 'but certainly' means 'You сам say that again!' or 'You've said it!' Note also the terms **хариу**м мөнгө 'change', 'answer money' and задгай мөнгө 'small change

#### Exercise 7

Translate into Mongolian:

- 1 Mind you don't drink any vodka! Mind you don't fall asleep!
- 2 When I was small I used to live in London.
- 3 When I went into the hotel my wife wasn't there.
- 4 Mongolia is a country worth visiting.
- 5 In winter the mountains are a place one shouldn't go to.

#### Exercise 8

Translate the text into English:

Хандаа хоёр ногоон харандаатай байжээ. Түүний найз Буян охинд ногоон харандаа нэг ч байсангүй. Буян охин:

- —Ногоон харандаагаа падад пэг огооч гэхэд Хандаа,
- —Ээжээс асуучихаад өгье гэв. Маргааш нь хичээлийн завсарлагаар тэр хоёр дахин уулзаад Буян:
  - Ээж чинь юу гэж байна? гэж асуув. Хандаа,

Ээж ч өг л гэж байна. Ахаасаа асуусангүй дээ гэв. Буян: За яах вэ, ахаасаа асуугаарай гэв. (Үргэлжлэл бий)

#### Innrcise 9

the chart on page 175 shows services available in Ulan Bator over the new-year holiday:

- On which days will the food markets be closed?
  On which days will the food shops be closed?
- When will the trolleybuses run on 8th February?
- Will ger districts have a water supply over the holiday?
   Will flat dwellers be able to register a complaint about the heating and hot water supply?

#### I xercise 10

Translate the text into English:

**Били:** Бид хониноос юу авч ашигладаг билээ?

Сурагч: Ноос.

Інпп: Зүйтэй. Ноосоор юу хийдэг билээ?

страгч: Мэдэхгүй.

Бати: За тэгвэл, чиний пальтог юугаар хийсэн юм бэ?

страгч: Аавын хуучин пальтогоор хийсэн.

#### Exercise 11

The chart on page 179 shows train services from Ulan Bator:

- I On which days can you catch the No. 6 train for Moscow?
- ' When does the Moscow-Beijing train leave Ulan Bator?
- What other train services are there from Ulan Bator to Moscow and Beijing?
- 4 When does the train from Baganuur leave for Ulan Bator?
- 5 In which direction is No. 212 train an overnight service?

# Dialogue for comprehension

Бат: За хоёулаа юу юу авах билээ? Цэлгэрмаа: Чамд авах юмны жагсаалт байгаа.

Бат: Би хараадахъя. Цай, чихэр, гурил, жаахан гахайн

мах, төмс, улаан лууван, улаан лооль, ааруул гор байна. Аа бас хуруун зай хэрэгтэй юм байна. Манай гар чийдэнгийн зай саяхан дуусчихсэн Манай гар бай ган?

Манайд талх бий юү?

Дэлгэрмаа: Байхгүй. Өчигдөрийн талх дууссан. Бас хагас ки п

сайхан усан үзэм нэмж авъя.

Бат: Тэгье, тэгье. Усан үзэм их үнэтэй байна шүү Н

кило нь нэг мянга долоон зуун төгрөг гэж баппо

Дэлгэрмаа: Хэдэн төгрөг болж байгаа бол?

Кассчин: Таван мянга гурван зуун наян төгрөг.

Бат: За баярланаа. Баяртай.

Кассчин: Баяртай. Манайхаар дахиад үйлчлүүлээрэй.

Бат: «Нарантуул» барааны зах хол биш. Зах руу хими

явъя.

Дэлгэрмаа: Тэгье. Би шинэ малгай авмаар байна. Энэ санын

малгай ямар үнэтэй вэ?

Худалдагч: Хорин мянган төгрөгнөөс ярина. Дэлгэрмаа: Та үнээ жаахан татахгүй юу?

Худалдагч: Жаахан татаж болно шүү. Та хэдээр авману

байна?

Дэлгэрмаа: Арван зургаан мянгаар авъя.

Худалдагч: Арай бага байна. Арван найман мянгаар ав.

Дэлгэрмаа: Арай үнэтэй байна. Арван долоон мянгаар аптя

Худалдагч: За, за, ав, ав.

Дэлгэрмаа: Би гэртээ харилаа. Ядарч байна. Та «Далай Ээж-

зах руу очингоо «Монгол Тээнэр» компанили ороод ирээрэй. Бидэнд Өвөрхангай аймаг руу явах автобусны цагийн хуваарь хэрэгтэй байла

Та мартуузай!

гурил flour (улаан) лууван radish татах to reduce зай battery гар чийдэн(г) torch

For the attention of railway passengers (see p. 179):

Apart from the below-mentioned trains, no changes have been made to the timetable (for other trains).

ачаа-суудлын goods-passenger өөрчлөлт change дээр дурдсан above-mentioned масштаб map scale

#### Галт тэргээр зорчигчдын анхааралд

 Бээжин - Улаанбаатар -Масквагийн чиглэлд явах 3 отпар галт тэрэг 6 дугаар 12-ноос ([[25]]] ЭХЛЭН • станбаатарт Пүрэв пригийн 13, 16 цагт ирж, 1-.50 цагт явна. Москва панбаатар - Бээжингийн 4 ц ээр галт тэрэг 6 дугаар 8-наас - aphili эхлэн Упанбаатарт Ням гаригийн ,38 цагт ирж, 8.08 цагт явна. Улаанбаатар - Бээжингийн уфоронд явах 24/23 дугаар п п тэрэг 6 дугаар сарын 12поос эхлэн Улаанбаатараас Пуров гаригт 8.08 цагт явж, **Баасан** гаригийн 15.33 цагт очоод Бээжингээс дугаар сарын 20-ноос эхлэн Мягмар гаригийн 7,40 цагт лож, Улаанбаатарт Лхагва паригийн 13.16 цагт ирнэ.

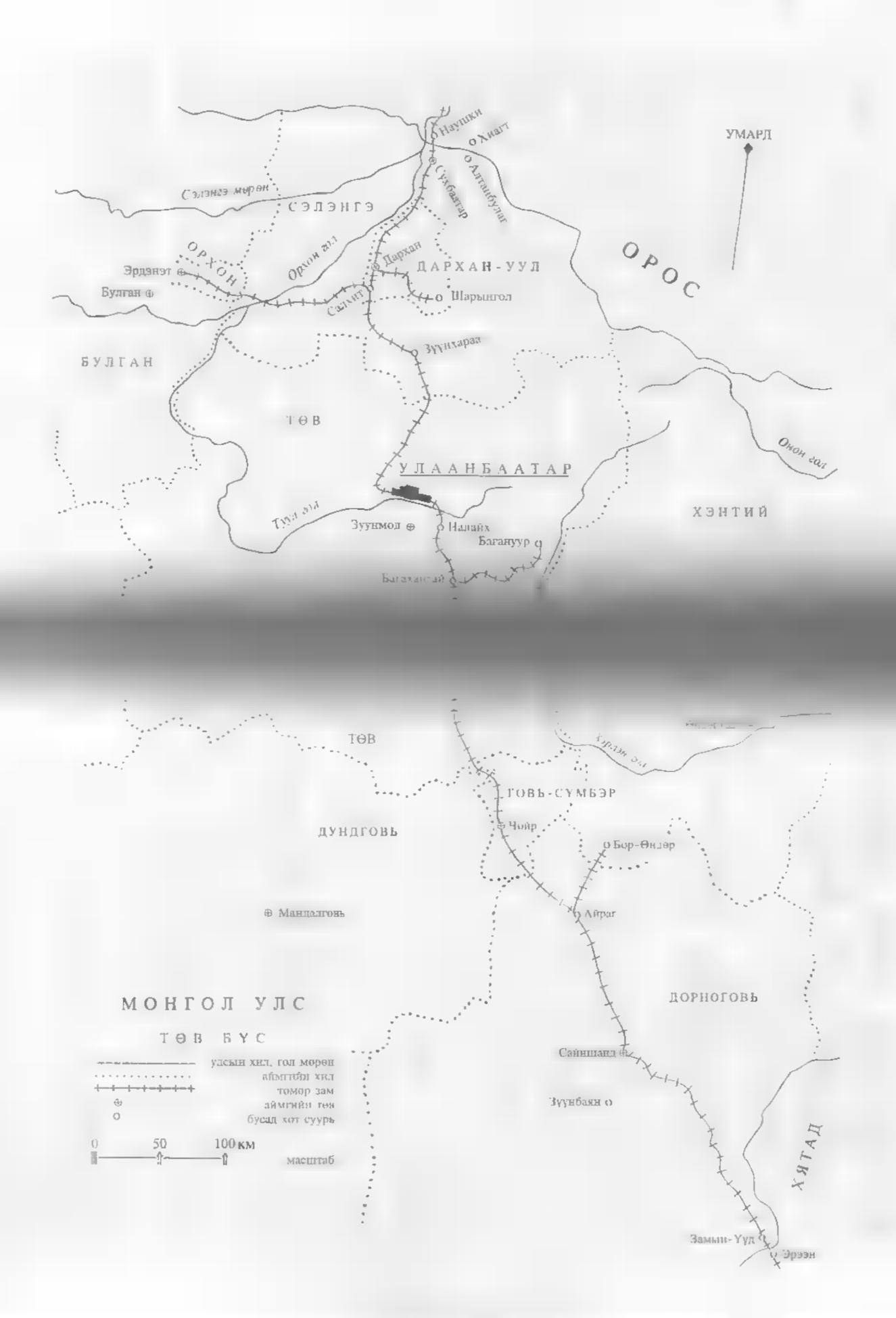
Москва - Улаанбаатарын
 дугаар галт тэрэг 6 дугаар
 спрын 9-нөөс эхлэн

Улаанбаатарт Даваа, Мягмар гаригийн 7.38 цагт ирж, Улаанбаатараас Даваа, Бямба гаригийн 11.20 цагт явна.

4. Улаанбаатар – Дарханы кооронд явах 212 дугаар галт тэрэг 6 дугаар сарын 6-наас эхлэн өдөр бүр Дарханаас 22.20 цагт явж, Улаанбаатарт 5.30 цагт ириэ. 211 дүгээр галт тэрэг Улаанбаатараас 15.50 цагт явж, Дарханд 20.25 цагт очно.

- 5. Улаанбаатар Замын-Үүдийн хооронд явах 276 дугаар галт тэрэг Улаанбаатараас 12.33 цагт явж, Замын-Үүдэд 6.03 цагт очоод, Замын-Үүдээс 18.45 цагт явж, Улаанбаатарт 10.07 цагт ириэ.
- 6. Улаанбаатар Багануурын чиглэлд явах 278/277 дугаар галт тэрэг Улаанбаатараас хоногийн Мягмар, долоо Лхагва, Пурэв, Бямба, Ням гаригийн 16.30 цагт явж, Багануурт 20.54 цагт очоод, Багануураас 3.02 цагт явж, Улаанбаатарт 7.30 цагт ирнэ. Улаанбаатар - Чойрын чиглэлд шиши 282 дугаар галт тэрэг Улаанбаатараас долоо хоногийн Даваа, Баасан гаригийн 16.30 цагт явж, Чойрт 21.25 цагт очоод, Чойроос 2.25 цагт явж, Улаанбаатарт 7.30 цагт ирнэ. 7. Дархан - Шарын голын хооронд явах ачаа-суудлын галт тэрэг Дарханаас 18.10, 5.40 цагт явж, Шарын голд 20.40, 8.10 цагт очоод, Шарын голоос 22.00, 9.30 цагт явж, Дарханд 00.13, 11.43 цагг ирнэ.
- 8. Эрдэнэт Дарханы хооронд явах 313 дугаар галт тэрэг Эрдэнэтээс Даваа гаригийн 14.02 цагт явж, Дарханд 17.58 цагт ирнэ.

Дээр дурдсан зорчигчдын галт тэрэгнээс бусад галт тэрэгний цагийн хуваарьт өөрчлөлт ороогүй.



# 9 Өргүй бол баян, өвчингүй бол жаргал

Having no debt is wealth and no illness happiness

#### In this lesson you will learn:

- About the 'three manly sports'
- · Decimals and fractions
- Parts of the body and seeing doctor
- About a business exhibition

# Dialogue 1

Эрийн гурван наадам The three manly sports

Bat and Delgermaa tell David and Julie about 'naadam' and the 'three manly sports' of wrestling, archery and horse racing.

Девид: Монгол оронд хамгийн их дэлгэрсэн спорт из

вэ?

Дэлгэрмаа: Бөх барилдах, сур харвах, морь уралдах. Эн-

гурвыг эрийн гурван наадам гэдэг юм. Наадам жил бүр долдугаар сард болдог. Та үзээгүй оо г

дээ?

Девид: Үгүй, яаж үзэх вэ? Би Улаанбаатар хотоп

долдугаар сард байдаггүй.

Дэлгэрмаа: Төв цэнгэлдэх хүрээлэнд Монголын тулгар гор

байгуулагдсаны 790, Ардын хувьсгалын 7 жилийн ойн их наадам болсон. Уламжлал ёсоор улс аймгийн алдар цолтой 512 бох зодоглосон

80.00

«Ардын Эрх» сонинд «Хүчит бохийн барилдааны нэгийн даваа эхлэхэд зүүн талын магнайд Монгол Улсын хөдөлмөрийн баатар, даяар дуурсагдах далай даян дархан аварга Баянмөнх гарав. Гурвын даваанд таван аврага, нэг арслан барилдав» гэж бичсэн байна.

фитэрмаа:

Наадмын эхний өдөр Монгол Улсын Ерөнхийлөгч сурын харвааг сонирхож, харваачидтай уулзав. Нийслэлийн Хан-Уул дүүргийн залуу харваач Даваажаргал 36 сумандаа 32 онож түрүүлэв.

«Ардын Эрх» сонинд «11-ний өглөө эрт Айдасын давааны овоог нар зөв тойроод 630 шахам хурдан азарга гарааны зурхай тийш хөдөллөө. Хурдан азарганы түрүү магнай сартай хамар цагаан хонгор 24,6 (хорин дөрөв аравны зургаа) км замыг 33,28 (гучин гурав зууны хорин найм)

минутад туулжээ» гэж бичжээ.

Тениц: Би бас монгол хурдан морь унамаар байна!

DEFERMANT

Which are the most popular sports in Mongolia? Wrestling, archery and horse racing. These three are called the three manly sports. The naadam is held every year in July. Haven't you seen it?

Davior

No, how could I (see it)? I am never in Ulan Bator in July.

DELGERMAA:

There was a big mandam in the central stadium on the 790th anniversary of the founding of the newly established Mongolian state and the 75th anniversary of the people's revolution. In accordance with tradition 512 wrestlers with national and provincial ranks and titles put on their wrestler's jackets.

BALL

The newspaper Ardyn Erkh said, 'When the first round of the powerful wrestlers' competition began, "everywhere celebrated whole ocean sacred giant" Mongolian Hero of Labour Bayanmönkh stepped out as the left wing's leading wrestler. In the third round five "giants" and a "lion" wrestled,'

DELGERMAA:

On the first day of naadam the Mongolian President took an interest in the archery and met the archers. Young archer Davaajargal from the capital's Khan-Uul district came first [in the women's archery] with 32 hits in her 36 arrows.

BAT:

Ardyn Erkh said, 'Early in the morning of the 11st nearly 630 fast stallions went clockwise round. Aidasyn Davaany Ovoo ("fear pass cairn") moved off [back] towards the starting line. The form of the fast stallions to come in, a light hay with white nose and a blaze on its forehead, covered the 24.6 kilometre road [route] in 33.28 minutes."

DAVID:

I would like to ride a fast Mongolian horse too!

Note: Soviet-style titles like Хеделмерийн Баатар 'Hero of Labour' and Спорим Мастер 'Master of Sport', adopted during the communist period, are still польст The anniversary of the 'people's revolution' of 1921 is marked on 11th July. Мил. Erkh 'People's Power' is the government daily.

# Шинэ Үг Vocabulary

барилдах	to wrestle	тойрох	to go round
бөх	wrestler	тулгар	newly established
дахар	everywhere	туулах	to cover (distance)
даян	whole	түрүүлэх	to come first
дуурсагдах	to be famous	уламжлал ёсоор	by tradition
дэлгэрэх	to spread	унах	to ride; to fall
морь уралдах	horse racing	хамар	nose
наадам	traditional games	хүчит	powerful
нар зев	clockwise	цол	title
сур харвах	archery	цэнгэлдэх	stadium
		непессух	

For additional vocabulary see boxes below.

# Language points

# Wrestling giants

Wrestling is the Mongols' favourite sport, and there are special terms for the kit and the various levels of skill. During a competition several bouts take place simultaneously, and there are no weight categories. Wrestlers who have won in the fifth round are called \_\_\_\_\_\_ 'falcons', those who have won in the sixth or seventh rounds become заан 'elephants', and the арслан 'lions' are those

have survived into the eighth and ninth rounds. The appara inthis' are the country's top wrestlers who have been the victors everal nandam. Supreme champions are accorded the title цомр дуурсагдах далай даян дархан аварга 'Everywhere cele-

брилдаан	wrestling	даваа	round
onnañ	leading wrestler	засуул	second
орага	giant	арслан(г)	lion
01(3	elephant	начин	falcon
101101	wrestler's jacket	шуудаг	wrestler's trunks

Hesides seeing fair play for his wrestler (and holding his hat), it is the job of the second to proclaim his skills and issue challenges on the behalf. By tradition the wrestlers enter the arena from the 'left' of the 'right', the 'left' being the north-east (sunrise) corner. Before and after each bout the wrestler performs a short dance with arms outstretched like a bird's wings in representation of Garuda, King Birds (хангарьд).

# **Archery**

Mongolian archery is a sport for men, women and children, and it has not lost its popularity despite some interest nowadays in modern Olympic target shooting. The archers shoot bone-headed grows from traditional Mongol compound bows at a target consisting of leather rings (cyp) stacked in a wall 40–50 centimetres high and up to four metres wide (xaha xaphaa). Usually men shoot 10 arrows from 75 metres and women 20 arrows from 60 metres. The umpires standing to either side of the target sing out the score in a long drawling chant called yyxañ.

сур	archery; le	ather rin	g target	мэргэн	crack shot
сум	arrow	ПУМ	bow	харваач 🌯	archer
харваа	shooting	онох	to hit th	e target	

# Horse racing

The horse races for naadam are run cross-country from the horseherds' summer camp not far from Ulan Bator's Buyant-Ukhaa airport. The races are run over distances up to 30 kilometres or a according to the horses' age. For example, the race for stallions twice as long as the race for colts. The riders are mostly boys appearance between six and twelve. The horses in each category are taken from the starting line to some designated landmark a suitable distance away, and then race back. The first five horses in each category (the 'koumiss five' or apparant rab) are led to a special ceremono in which koumiss is poured over the head and crupper, and the winning horse is honoured with songs in praise of its owner and trainer.

азарга(н)	stallion	даага(н)	colt
хонгор	light bay	сартай	with a blaze
гарааны зурхай	starting line	жороо	ambler

# **Decimals**

The text contains two examples of the use of decimals: 24,6 км '24.6 km road' and 33,28 минутад 'in 33.28 minutes'. The Mongols put a comma where we write a decimal point, but they don't say 'comma' as we say 'point', although sometimes the world бүхэл 'whole' is used. The numbers less than one are broken down into tenths, hundredths, thousandths, etc.:

24,6 хорин дөрөв (хорин дөрвөн бүхэл) аравны зургаа 24 (whole) six tenths ('of ten six'): 24.6

33,28 гучин гурав (гучин гурван бүхэл) зууны хорин найм 33 (whole) 28 hundredths ('of 100 28'): 33.28

# **Fractions**

A similar practice is followed in forming fractions. Although the word xarac is sometimes used for half (e.g. паг 'half an hour', хагас сайн өдөр 'Saturday'), 'one half is хоёрны нэг ('of two one'), 'one third' гуравны нэг ('of three one'), 'five eighths' наймны тав, 'five and four ninths' таван бухэл есний дөрөв, etc.

# Large numbers

In practice only those for million and billion are in wide use, but there are special words for large numbers: түм(в) 10,000 бум 100,000 по 1,000,000 10,000,000 дүнчүүр 100,000,000 тэрбум 1,000,000,000

#### I xercise 1

Write out in full in Mongolian:

1 790	2 75	3 512	4 36
7 12	6 11	7 630	

#### Lxercise 2

tuve the Mongolian for the following fractions and decimals:

1	two thirds	2	six and three eighths		
ì	5.265	4	17.89	5	99.97

#### Exercise 3

Iranslate into English:

омнех едер хана харваа эхлэв. Энэ жилийн наадамд 200 шахам харваач оролцсон. Улсын баяр наадмын жилүүдэд улсын мэргэн 12. спортын мастер 98 төрсөн. Дөчин сумнаас гучин ес онож тоёр жилийн омно улсын дээд амжилт тогтоосон, улсын мэргэн Дагвасүрэнгийн хүү Батжаргал 20 сумнаас 18 онож хоёр дахь дилдээ түрүүлж оносон сумны нь уухай намдаагүй байхад охин Азжаргал нь 20 сумнаас 19 онож охидын харваанд тэргүүллээ.

# Dialogue 2

Таны юу өвдөж байна? What's the matter with you?

David is feeling sorry for himself and decides to see the hotel doctor.

Эмч:	Сайн байна уу? Таны юу өвдөж байна?
Цевид:	Миний хол өвдөөд байна.
Эмч:	Их өвдөж байна уу? Хаана өвдөж байна вэ?
77	D

Девид: Энд өвдөж байна. Би өчигдөр мориноосоо унаж өвдөгөө гэмтээчихлээ.

Эмч: Гэрэлд харуулах нь зүйтэй. Жаахан хавдсан байна

Энд өвдөж байна уу?

**Девид:** Гайгүй. Харин миний толгой эргээд байна. Би ов

унтаж чадахгүй байна.

Эмч: Таны даралтыг үзье. Алив, гары чинь ороогоодохы Толгойгоо бас гэмтээчихээ юу?

Девид: Тийм, гэмтээчихлээ.

Эмч: За. Одоо хэлэн доороо халууны шил хавчуул.

Девид: Зугээр.

Эмч: За. Халуун хэвийн байдалд байна. Одоо би тани нүдийг харъя. Дээшээ, доошоо, зүүн тийшээ, баруун

тийшээ хар даа.

Девид: Би бас нуднийхээ шилийг хагалчихлаа.

Эмч: За. Одоо зүүн чихэнд чинь цаг барья. Цагны

цохилтыг сонсож байна уу? Баруун чихэнд?

Девид: Сонсож байна.

Эмч: За. Таны тархи жаахан хөдөлсөн байна.

Девид: Би босч болохгуй юу?

Эмч: Болохгүй. Танд эмийн жор бичиж өгнө.

Девид: Баярлалаа.

DOCTOR: Hello! What's the matter with you (what of you's hurting)?

DAVID: My leg hurts.

DOCTOR: Does it hurt a lot? Where does it hurt?

David: It hurts here. Yesterday I fell off my horse and injured my knee.

Doctor: The proper thing would be to have an x-ray, It's a bit swollen. Does it hurt here?

David: Not much. But I feel dizzy (my head is going round)
And I can't sleep.

DOCTOR: I want to take your (blood) pressure. Let me just wrap (this) round your arm. Did you bang your head as well?

DAVID: Yes, I did.

Doctor: Right. Now put the thermometer under your tongue.

DAVID: OK.

Doctor: Right. Temperature is normal. Now I want to examine your eyes. Look up, down, left, right.

DAVID: 1 broke my glasses, too.

Doctor: Right. I am holding a watch next to your left ear. Can you hear the watch's tick? Right ear?

DAVID: Yes, I can hear it.

the tor: Right. You have slight concussion (your brain moved).

HAND: Must I stay in bed (not get up)?

the for: You don't need to. I'll write you a prescription.

HAME: Thank you.

# Шинэ Үг Vocabulary

восох	to get up	хавчуулах	to insert, tuck in
семтээх	to injure	хагалах	to break
счрэлд харуулах	to have an x-ray	халууны	thermometer
шор	prescription	хөл	leg, foot
иуд(н)	eye	хэвийн байдал	normal (state)
пинн сехиницуп	spectacles	цаг	watch
проох	to wrap round	цохилт	ticking
нијех	to hurt	чих(н)	ear
гархи(н)	brain	эргэх	to go round
чандах	to swell		

# Language points

# Auxiliary verbs өгөх

The verbal noun is used as an auxiliary (helper) verb when the action of the main verb is carried out for the benefit of someone other than the subject (i.e. doing something for someone). When the doctor says to David, Tahn жор бичиж өгнө 'I'll write you a prescription', he combines erex with бичих. More examples:

Monron спортын тухай ярыж өгөхгүй юү? Won't you tell me about Mongolian sport?

Ta миний пальтог вгежгүй юу?

Could you (couldn't you) hang up my coat (for me)?

Hamaйr эмнэлэгт хүргээд өгнө үү? Take me to hospital!

Та дахиад нэг хэлээд өгөөч! Please say that (once) again!

Similarly, Надад зааж өгөөч! Show me the way!

# More short actions

Using the 'short action' or 'intensive' form of the verb (derivational suffix -чих-) David says Гэмтээчихлээ ... 'l injured гэмтээх 'to injure' is derived from гэмтэх 'to be injured'.

Since there is no interrogative form of verbs with the past perfect suffix -naa the imperfective verbal noun is used:

Гэмтээчихээ юү?

Did you injure?

David also says (from хагалах) 'I broke'. In the same way one might say, Би могойд (нэг шавьжинд) хатгуулчихлин 'I've been bitten by a snake (stung/bitten by an insect).' In the case хатгуулах is the passive of хатгах 'to sting' or 'pierce'.

In these examples the past perfect tense in -naa is used when the statement is made at the time of injury, etc. Later statements use the perfective verbal noun -can (хагалчихсан, etc.).

Note that in some verbs there is an internal change of consonant those with -p- in the stem are intransitive and those with -л- ат transitive: булгарсан '... has been sprained' and Булгалчихсан '(1) sprained ...'

The doctor says **Ороогоодохъё** 'Let me (just) wrap (it)', using the short action voluntative of **ороох** 'to wrap round'; note the insertion of -r- to separate the long vowels.

# Short-form accusative and genitive

Before минь/чинь/маань/тань/нь the final -r of the accusative suffix and the final -н of the genitive suffix are dropped:

гэрий нь

(of) his yurt

(of) my book

гар хөлий нь хүлэх

to tie up someone hand and foot

Ороогоодожьё гары чинь.

Let me just wrap (this) round your arm.

«Чи хараандаагий минь хугалчихуузай.» (see Exercise 6) In this instance the r separates the two long vowels and ий.

# More about perfective converbs

David says, Миний хөл өвдөөд байна 'My leg hurts' using the perfective converb of өвдөх plus байна for a continuing action:

Миний хамаг бие шархираад байна. My whole body aches (шархирах).

Би халуураад байна.

I have a temperature (халуурах).

Би айгаад байна.

I am frightened (atx). Stop telling (your) lies!

Чи битгий худлаа яриад бай!

#### Perfective verbal nouns

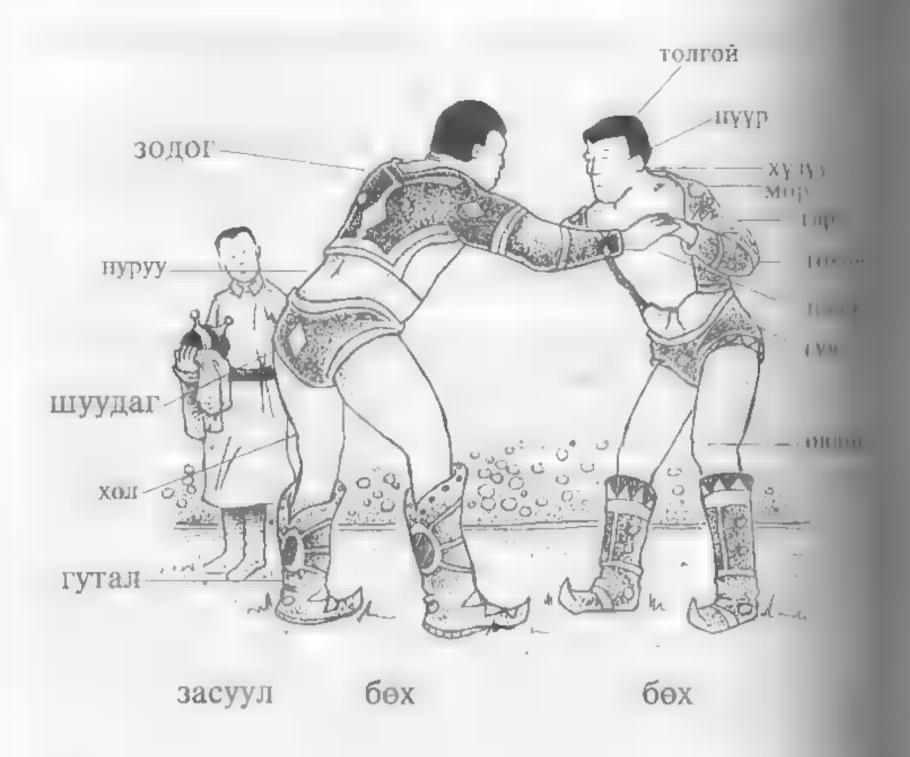
It you were to break a limb, you might say Хугарсан байна 'It's broken', similarly наранд түлэгдсэн 'sunburned', мултарсан 'dislocated', хөлдсөн 'frostbitten', булгарсан 'sprained', хавдсан 'swollen'. Since эсгэх is a transitive verb эсгэсэн (cut) requires an accusative (reflexive) object: Би хуруугаа эсгэчихлээ 'I have (just) cut my finger.' Би хуруугаа эсгэсэн 'I cut my finger (a while ago).'

# Other points

Another causative verb: rэрэлд харуулах 'to have oneself looked at in the light' is colloquial for 'have an x-ray'.

# Нэмэлт Үг Additional vocabulary

skin	ханирга	rib
kidney	хамар	nose
muscle	хоолой	throat
hip	XOX(H)	breast
stomach	ХАЗАА	neck
heart	пус(н)	blood
shoulder	цээж(н)	chest
knee	шагай	ankle
head	шуд(н)	tooth
elbow	элэг(элгэн)	liver
lung	SC(H)	bone
	kidney muscle hip stomach heart shoulder knee head clbow	kidney хамар muscle хоолой hip хөх(н) stomach хүзүү heart пус(н) shoulder цээж(н) knee шагай head пүд(н) clbow элэг(элгэн)



#### Exercise 4

- (a) Translate into Mongolian using perfective verbal nouns с р 'Your shoulder is dislocated.' Таны мөр мултарсан байна.
- 1 Bat's nose is frostbitten.
- 2 Delgermaa's ankle is sprained.
- 3 His rib is broken.
- 4 My elbow is scratched.
- 5 Your (thy) face is sunburned.
- (b) Translate the sentences using short-action verbs in the pass perfect tense e.g. I have dislocated my shoulder. Ви мөрөө мулталчихлаа. Миний мөр мултарчихлаа.

#### I vercise 5

thinde up the following body parts into four groups:

- ) sic bones.
- дотор эрхтэн organs,
- имеч limbs and
- ve joints:

ньсой, мөр, уушиг, шагай, хөл, нуруу, бөөр, бугуй, зүрх, нүд, гар, гэдэс, хавирга, элэг, өвдөг.

#### I xercise 6

hanslate into English:

Миргааці нь Хандааг ирэхэд Буян:

- -За ах чинь юу гэж байна? гэв Хандаа:
- —Ах минь ч өг л гэж байна. Чи хараандаагий минь талчихуузай! гэв. Буян:
- —За хаапаас даа! Би их гамтай хэрэглэнэ гэхэд Хандаа:
- —Чи битгий үзүүрлээрэй. Бичихдээ битгий чанга дараарай. Пх юм зурвал бал нь дуусчихна гэв. Бас амандаа хийж «Млохгүй шүү.

#### Exercise 7

Panslate into Mongolian:

- 1 I am not well (my body is bad).
- 1 I have stomach pains.
- · Please give me a prescription.
- I I have toothache.
- I have a temperature.

# Dialogue 3

Хамтран ажиллах бололцоотой With the possibility of cooperation

David goes with Sükh to the Ulan Butor exhibition hall and meets a Mongolian businesswoman.

SUKH:

DAVID:

Udval:

DAVID:

UDVAL:

DAVID:

UDVAL:

at 10 o'clock.

organization do you represent?

wool washing equipment.

my pack.

Девид:	Би «Монголын шинэ бүтээгдэхүүн 97» үзэсг гэг
	узмээр байна. Нээлтийн ёслол хэзээ болох вэ?
Cyx:	Үзэсгэлэнг Монгол Улсын Ерөнхий сайд арван пи-
	нээнэ.
Девид:	Бүртгэх товчоо хаана байдаг вэ? Минию
	төлөөлөгчийн хавтасанд энгэрийн тэмдэг алга.
Уцвал:	Сайн байна уу? Намайг Удвал гэдэг. Би Сүхийн туу
	хүүхэн. Би «Тэмээний ноос» компанийн еропхоо
	захирал. Та ямар байгууллагыг толөөлж байгаа н
Девид:	Сайн байна уу? Би английн гадаад худалданы
	нэгдлийг төлөөлж байна. Намайг Браун гэдэг. Тапш
1/	пуусийн үзмэр хаана байна вэ?
Удвал:	Тэр хаалганы тэнд байна. Манайх тэмээний неви
tv	угаах төхөөрөмж үзүүлж байгаа.
Девид:	Хараад авах уу? Энэ төхөөрөмж яаж ажилладагиш
Vanore	үзэж болох уу?
Удвал:	Болно, болно. Бид хамтран ажиллах бололцоонов
Девид:	хэлбэрийг хэлэлцэх саналтай байна.
Удвал:	Танайх ямар орнуудад бүтээгдэхүүнээ гаргадаг нэ
Девид:	Олон оронд тэмээний ноос гаргадаг.
Удвал:	Бид танайд удаан хугацааны зээл олгож болно.
n William.	«Өргүй бол баян, өвчингүй бол жаргал» гэдэг им Хэдий тийм боловч, танайх баримт бичгийг хээгг
	бидэнд өгөх вэ?
Девид:	Аль болох тургэн өгнө.
DAVID:	I would like to see the exhibition 'Mongolia's New Products
	97'. When is the (exhibition's) opening ceremony?

The Mongolian Prime Minister will open the exhibition

Where is the registration desk? My badge is missing from

Hello! My name is Udval. I'm Stikh's sister. I'm the

director-general of the 'Camel Wool' company, What

Hello! I represent the British Foreign Trade Association

Over there by the door. Our firm is demonstrating camel

Of course you can. We would like (have a mind) to

My name is Brown. Where is your company's stand?

Let me see. May I see how this equipment works?

discuss possible forms of collaboration.

1155 (1)	What countries do you export (your products) to?
) mai:	We export our camel wool to many countries.
100000	We could grant you long-term credit.
Possi:	They say, '(Having) no debt is wealth (rich) and no illness
	happiness.' However, when can you let us have the docu- mentation?
Davida	As soon as possible.

# Шинэ Үг Vocabulary

пайгууллага	organization	өр	debt
Фаримт бичиг	document(ation)	пүүс	company
<b>Аннолядоо</b>	possibility	саналтай	of mind to
Хеттур	to register	РІОПОВЛЮТ	representative
espirax	to export, put out	телеелех	to represent
проихий захирал	director-general	техееремж	equipment
оснол	ceremony	үзмэр	stand, exhibit
1979.7[	loan, credit	хавтас(ан)	pack, folder
Theen	opening	хэлбэр	form, kind
nnrox	to grant	хэлэлцэх	to discuss
пинн	illness	энгэр	lapel; flap

# Language points

# More on auxiliary verbs

David says, **Xapaag abax yy** 'Let me take a look', the verbal noun appearing in its auxiliary form, meaning to do something for one's own benefit: **бичаж** means 'to note down, to make a note of':

Hoмoo авч болох уу? May I order (myself) a book?

The verbal noun узэх 'to see' has an auxiliary role, in the sense of 'to try', e.g. Өмсөөд үз! 'Try (it – a coat, etc.) on!'

Ta mиво ууж үзсэн үү? Have you tried (drinking) the beer?

The verbal noun rex 'to say' also has auxiliary functions. With the voluntative form of the verb it expresses intention:

Би гэж бодож байна (Би гэж байна). I'm just going (thinking of going).

# Verbal nouns plus accusative

When David says, Энэ техееремж — ажилладгийг үзэж болог уу? 'May I see how this equipment works?' — is the imperfective converb of the interrogative verb — 'to do how?'; ажилладгийг is derived from ажилладаг, the iterative verbal noun form of 'to work', plus the accusative case suffix (as the specific of direct object); and Үзэж болох уу? means 'May I see?'

This construction with the accusative is quite common, because a verbal noun is often the direct object of a sentence, especially in reported speech:

Би цас орсоныг мэдээгүй.

I didn't know that it had snowed.

Өчигдөр ирснээ над хэлсэн.

(He) told us that (he) came (of his having come) yesterday.

Ви таны хэлснийг сонссон.

I heard what you said.

Та ямар эмчид үзүүлэхээ тэр хүнээс мэдээрэй.

You find out from that man which doctor to be seen by.

Таныг ямар эмчид үзүүлэхийг тэр хүн мэднэ.

That man knows which doctor you are to be seen by.

Би Доржийг ирснийг мэдээгүй.

I didn't know that Dorj had come.

In the last two examples there are two subjects, so one is also in the accusative case.

# **Double declension**

This term is sometimes used to describe the successive use of two different noun-case suffixes. For example, Сухийнд 'at the Sükhs'', 'at Sükh's home' combines (with Sükh's name) the suffixes for both the genitive -ийн and dative/locative -д.

Та ахындаа очдог уу (ах-ын-д-аа)?

Do you call on your (own) elder brother (regularly)?

Here are some other examples (comitative plus accusative):

Ямар кинотойт ч мэдэхгүй байна (кино-той-г).

(1) don't know what film is on (at the cinema).

Монголчууд хүүхдээ ямар эрхтэйг муу мэддэг (эрх-тэй-г). The Mongols have a poor understanding of their children's rights (newspaper headline).

Double declension is also possible with numerals (dative/locative plus instrumental or genitive without fleeting n):

иэгдүгээр сарын арван тавдаар (от тавдын үеэр) around 15th January

хоёрдугаар сарын хорьдоор (от хорьдын үеэр) about 20th February

#### Other points

The compound xampan axunnax comprises the modal converb xampan from xampax 'to unite' and the verbal noun 'to work', giving 'to collaborate' or 'cooperate'.

Note the colloquial 'over there by the door' тэр хаалганы тэнд which literally means 'that door's there'.

# Нэмэлт Yr Additional vocabulary

актив	assets	пүүс	company
алдагдал	losses	санхуугийн тайлая	accounts
ангилах	to divide up	татвар	tax
ашиг	profit	тодорхой	specific
38ax	to show	тусгах	to display
зарлага	expenditure	үр дүн	result
зарцуулагдах	to be spent	хөрөнгө(н)	capital
зорилго	aim	оруулалт	investment
нягтлан бодогч	accountant	хувьцаа эзэмшигч	shareholder
орлого	revenue	хехдех	to do what?
пассив	liabilities	aprant	turnover

#### Exercise 8

Translate into Mongolian:

- 1 What products does this section put out?
- 2 May I have a catalogue?
- 3 I would like to talk to the commercial director.
- 4 Who is your main buyer?
- 5 How many hours a week do (they) work?

#### Exercise 9

Translate into English:

Нягтлан бодох баланс байгууллагын үйл ажиллагааны үр дүш тодорхой хугацааны байдлаар харуулдаг, хоёр тал бүхин санхүүгийн тайлангийн баримт бичиг мөн. Балансын нэг тапп актив, нөгөө талд нь пассивыг харуулдаг бөгөөд энэхүү хоёр талын дүн тэнцүү (балансалсан) байх ёстой. Баланс нь хаанаш мөнгө орж ирж, хэрхэн зарцуулагдсаныг заадаг. Актив нь үндсэн болон эргэлтийн активуудад ангилагддаг пассив нахувьдаа эзэмшигчдийн сан, урт хугацаат болон богино хугацааг пассивуудад ангилагддаг. АНУ, Итали, Филиппин зэрэг орона активыг балансын зүүн талд харуулдаг бол Малайзи зэрэг оронд баруун талд нь тусгадаг. Тайлан баланс нь оны эцэст пүүсийн ажлын байдлын талаар үнэн зов мэдээлэл өгөх зорилготой.

# Exercise 10

Translate the following telephone conversation into English:

- —Байна уу? Эмчээ, миний бие муудаад байна. Та хурдан ирэхгүй юу?
- —Эмч байхгүй байна. Би сувилагч нь байна. Эмч хуралд явсан. Та гурав хоногийн дараа утасдахгүй юу?
- -Гурав хоногийн дараа гэнэ ээ? Би үхчихвэл яах юм бэ?
- —Тэгвэл та дуудлагаа болиулахаа битгий мартаарай.

# Exercise 11

In the tables on page 199 headed Monronux the left-hand column gives the official exchange rates for several currencies and the right-hand one commercial bank rates for buying and selling the US dollar.

- 1 The official rate of exchange for one US\$ is 801.4 tögrög; where could you get a better rate?
- If you are selling dollars for tögrög which banks should you avoid?
- Il you want to buy dollars for tögrög where should you go?
- How many tögrög should you get for five GB£?

#### Менгений

налкот тегрегийн ханш

Ханшийн мэдээ

1993 оны долдугаар сарын

1-27 хүртэл

1997 оны долдугаар сарын 21-ний байдлаар арилжааны банкуудын гадаад валют худалдан авах, худалдах ханш АНУ-ын доллартай харьцуулснаар дараахь байдалтай байна.

Вилютын нэр	ханш төгрөг	нэр		худалдах ханш
АНУ-ын доллар 1	801.40	Голомт банк	780	
Германы марк 1	447.0851	ХОТШ банк	795	
Ипоны нен I	6.9385	Сэргээн босголтын банк	797	805
Швейцарийн франк 1	543.8751	Монгол шуудан банк	795	-
Британийн фунт 1	1344.7492	Худалдаа хогжлийн банк		
Хонконгийн доллар 1	103.4131		796	803
Италийн лир 1	0.4590	Монгол бизнес банк	780	-
ОХУ-ын рубль 1	0.1385	Экспорт импорт банк	798	803
БНХАУ-ын юань 1	96,6532	Цогт чандмань		
Канадын доллар 1	583.0696	налютын бирж	803	806
БНСУ-ын вон 1	0.8954	Тэлд	798	-
Францын франк I	132.3206	Элба	798	-
Австри шиллинг 1	63.5603	Анод	802	806
Европын валютын нэгж	882.2613	Нью сэнчери	802	806
Зээлжих тусгай эрх 1	1112.4554	Мон Ази трейд	800	805

арилжааны банк exchange bank харьцуулах to compare with валют сигтепсу ханш exchange rate Европын валютын нэгж ECU special drawing rights

# Dialogue for comprehension 9

Дэлгэрмаа: Эрийн гурван наадам долдугаар сард болдог

Улаанбаатар хотын төв цэнгэлдэх хүрээлэнд жил

бур уламжлал ёсоор 512 бөх зодоглодог.

Бат: Төв цэнгэлдэх хүрээлэнгийн үндэсний сурын

талбайд паадмын өмнөх өдөр хана харваа эхлэв. Энэ жилийн наадамд 200 шахам харваач оролцсон. Дөчин сумнаас гучин ес онож улсын

мэргэн Дагвасүрэн улсын дээд амжилт тогтоосон.

Дэлгэрмаа: 11-ний өглөө эрт 630 шахам хурдан азарга

гарааны зурхай тийш ходоллоо. Хурдан азарганы түрүү магнай сартай хамар цагаан хонгор 24 км

замыг 33 минутад туулжээ.

Девид: Би өчигдөр мориноосоо унаж өвдөгөө

гэмтээчихлээ. Миний толгой эргээд байна.

Бат: Толгойгоо бас гэмтээчихээ юү?

Девид: Тийм, гэмтээчихлээ. Би босч болохгүй юу?

Бат: Болохгүй. Би Монголын үйлдвэрийн үзэсгэлэн

үзмээр байна. Хамт явъя.

Девид: Тэгье. Үзэсгэлэнг Монгол Улсын Ерөнхий сайд

арван цагт нээнэ.

Удвал: Сайн байна уу? Намайг Удвал гэдэг. Би Батын

дүү хүүхэн. Би «Монгол арьс шир» компанийн худалдааны захирал. Та ямар байгууллагыг

төлөөлж байгаа вэ?

Девид: Сайн байна уу? Би английн худалдаа, үйлдвэрийн

тапхимын нарийн бичгийн дарга. Намайг Девид

гэдэг.

Удвал: Би хамтран ажиллах бололцоотой хэлбэрийт

хэлэлцэх саналгай байна.

Девид: Би танайд удаан хугацааны зээл олгож болно.

Удвал: «Өргүй бол баян, өвчингүй бол жаргал» гэдэг юм.

# 10 Эзэн хичээвэл хичээнэ

# Heaven helps those who help themselves

#### In this lesson you will learn

- About Genghis Khan and the Secret History
- About classical Mongol and the old script
- How Mongol came to be written in Cyrillic

# Reading 1

Монголын Нууц Товчоо
The Secret History of the Mongols

These are brief extracts from Damdinstiren's modern Mongol version of the 'Secret History of the Mongols', an account in 282 sections of the life and times of Genghis Khan written in 'the Year of the Rat' (1228 or 1240).

(1) Чингис хааны язгуур: дээр тэнгэрээс заяат төрсөн Бөртэчино, гэргий Гуа-маралын хамт тэнгис далайг гэтэлж ирээд Онон мөрний эх Бурхан халдун ууланд нутаглаж нэгэн хөвгүүнийг торүүлжээ.

(59) Тэр цагт Есүхэй баатар, татаарын Тэмүжин-үгэ, Хорибуха зэргийн татаар хүнийг барьж ирэхэд жирэмсэн байсан Өэлүн үжин, Ононы Дэлүүн болдог гэдэг газар Чингис хааныг төрүүлжээ. Чингис төрөхдөө баруун гартаа шагайн чинээ нөж атган төржээ. Татаарын Тэмүжин-үгээг барьж ирэх цагт тохиолдож төрөв гэж Тэмүжин нэрийг өгчөө.

(123) Алтан, Хучар, Сача-бэхи бүгдээр зовлолдож Тэмүжинд өгүүлрүүн: Чамайг хаан болгоё.

Тэмүжин чамайг хаан болгож бид Олон дайнд Оройлон явж

Онц гуа

Охидыг олзолж

Ордон сайхан

Гэрийг авч

Олны хаан

Тэмүжинд өгье.

Харийн иргэнийг

Халдан довтолж

Хацар гуа

Хатдыг олзолж

Хатир сайт

Агтыг хөөж

Авчирч огье.

Ийм үгийг хэлж, ийнхүү ам алдаж, Тэмүжинийг Чингис хаан гэж нэрийдэж хаан болгов.

(202) Тэгээд эсгий туургатан улс энх шударга болж, барс жил Онон мөрний эхэнд хуралдаж, есөн холт цагаан тугаа мандуулаад Тэмүжинд Чингис хаан цолыг өргөв.

(268) Тангуд улс, үгээ баталж хэлээд тэр хэлсэн үгэндэг хүрсэнгүйн тул дахин байлдахаар явж, Тангуд улсыг сөнөөн дараад гахай жил Чингис хаан тэнгэрт халив.

Note: The modern Cyrillic transcription differs somewhat from the Mongol text, which had to be reconstructed from a Chinese transliteration, the oldest extant version.

- (1) The origins (line) of Genghis Khan: Börte-Chino (grey wolf) (who was) born with his destiny ordained by Heaven Above and his wife Gua-Maral (beautiful doe) came across the great lake (sea) together and dwelt at the source of the river Onon at Mount Burkhan Khaldun, where (she) gave birth to a son [Batachi Khan, born around 786AD].
- (59) At the time when Yesükhei Baatar came back from taking the Tartars' (chieftains) Temüjin-Üge, Khori-Bukha and other Tartars, Lady Öelün was pregnant, and she gave birth to Genghis Khan at the place on the Onon called Delüün Boldog. When Genghis was born he was born holding in his right hand a blood clot as big as an anklebone. Because it happened that he was born when the Tartars' Temüjin-Üge was taken, they thought of giving him the name Temüjin (төмөрчин 'blacksmith').

[He was born on the 16th day of the first summer month in the Year of the Water Horse, or 16th April 1162.]

(123) Altan, Khuchar and Sacha-Beki [tribal leaders who went over to Temüjin's side], after consulting together, said to Temüjin, We will make you khan. Temüjin, when we make you khan,

In many wars going in the vanguard,

Capturing especially beautiful girls,

Taking fine palace tents,

We will give (them) to everyone's khan, Temüjin.

Attacking foreigners,

Capturing ladies with beautiful cheeks,

Driving geldings good at trotting,

We will bring (them) for you.'

Note: The lines have been doubled up to help clarify translation.

Saying these words, thus they promised, and Temüjin was made khan, being named Genghis Khan [in 1189].

(202) Thus the people of the felt-walled tents [the Mongols and allied nomadic tribes] became peaceful and loyal, and in the Year of the Tiger [1206] they assembled at the source of the Onon and having raised their white banner with nine tails (legs) they offered up to Temüjin the title Genghis Khan.

(268) Because the Tangut nation having affirmed their words (made promises) did not keep (reach) their words, (Genghis Khan) the to fight (them), and having destroyed the Tangut nation in the Year of the Pig, Genghis Khan soared up to heaven (died).

[He died on the yellow hen day of the seventh lunar month, or 25th August 1227, in what is now Qingshui district of China's Gansu province. The Tangut state, Chinese name Hsi-Hsia or Xi-Xia, was on the territory of modern Gansu and Qinghai.]

Note: The heading **Sasa** 'Heaven helps those who help themselves' translates literally as 'If (when) the one responsible strives, fate strives,' **Dasa** can mean 'master'.

# Шинэ Yr Vocabulary

art(H)	gelding	ГЭТЛЭХ	to cross
вм алдах	to promise	довтлох	to attack, assault
DTTAX	to grasp	жирэмсэн	pregnant
байлдах	to fight, do battle	100	fate, destiny
rya (roo)	beautiful	KHM	such, like this

ийнхүү	thus, in this way	тэнгис далай	sea, great lake
мандуулах	to raise	ужин	lady
неж	blood clot	харь (харийн)	foreign, alien
нутаглах	to dwell	хатан	lady, queen
нэрийцэх	to name	хатир	trot
одзлох	to capture	жащар	cheek
оройлох	to lead	хөвгүүн	boy, son
өгүүлэх	to recount, say	Marine .	to drive (stock)
сенеех	to destroy	журалдах	to meet, assemble
Тангуд	Tangut, Hsi-Hsia	чинээ	sized, of the size
татаар	Tartar	шударга (шудрага	a) loyal
тохиолдох	to happen	эх(н)	source
туг	banner	939H	lord, master
туурга(н)	tent wall	язгуур	line, descent
тэнгэрт	to die		

# Language points

# Classical Mongol forms

The word **өгүүлрүүн** 'saying' derived (stem plus -**рүүн**) from the verbal noun **өгүүлэх** 'to recount', 'say', 'tell' was used in classical Mongol to introduce direct speech. The author seems to have slipped it in for effect – it has no modern equivalent. The now obsolete word **үжин** refers only to Genghis Khan's mother.

# White nine-tailed banners

The econ xout maraan tyr called 'white nine-tailed banners', although econ xout means 'with nine legs' or 'stalks', are the traditional symbol of Genghis Khan's rule. They consist of nine poles (eight smaller ones mounted around one large one) each with white horse tails hanging down around the top and surmounted by a metal trident. These banners are nowadays the state symbol of Mongolia. They are kept in the State Palace and taken out for display at least once a year at the naadam festival attended by the President.

# People of the felt walls

The эсгий туургатан улс 'people of the felt walls (tents)' were the nomadic tribes. Mongol and Turkic, who rallied to Genghis

Khan's banner. The term is still used today, and embraces such peoples as the Kazakhs and Kirghiz with their post-communist independent states, now usually called Kazakstan and Kyrgyzstan.

# Reading 2

Терийн бичгийг зохиолгосон нь How the state script was created

This brief extract from Natsagdorj's 'The Life of Genghis Khan', published in 1991, describes how in 1204 the Uighur script was adopted for the writing of Mongolian.

Чингис төр, цэрэг, засаг захиргааны талаар хийсэн циннэтгэлээс гадна хятад ба Дундад Азийн ард түмний соёлын ололтыг тус орны нөхцөлд тохируулан чадамгайгаар ашиглаж, төрийн хэрэгт харь орны нэрт эрдэмтдийг оргөнөөр хэрэглэсэн байна.

Чингисийн хийсэн хамгийн чухал шинэтгэл тухайлбал уйгар бичгийн үндсэн дээр монгол бичиг зохиолгож улмаар улсын бичгийг буй болгосон явдал юм.

Чингис 1204 онд Найман улсыг дарж Таян ханы бичгийн сайд эрдэмтэн Тататунга улсын алтан тамгаа хүзүүндээ батлан уяж тулалдааны үймээн дунд хаан ээнээ олох гэж бачимдан яваад монголын цэрэгт баривчлагджээ.

Чингис эзэндээ үнэнч хүнийг хэзээний үнэлдэг ёсоор Тататунгаг бат журамт хүн гэж ихэд сайшаасан бөгөөд түүний их эрдэмтэн хүн болохыг мэдээд уйгар бичгээр монгол уг бичихэд хан хөвгүүдийг зааж сургахыг тушаажээ. Ийнхүү монголчууд уйгаржин бичиг хэрэглэх эхлэл тавигджээ.

Besides the state, military and administrative (side) reforms done by Genghis, he skilfully exploited the cultural achievements of the masses of China and Central Asia, adjusting them to the conditions of this country [Mongolia], and made wide use in state affairs of famous scholars from foreign countries.

The most important reform made by Genghis in fact was the creation (having brought into being) of a state script, thanks to having a Mongol script created on the basis of the Uighur script.

In 1204 Genghis was putting down the Naiman nation, and Tayang Khan's secretary of state (civil minister), the scholar Tatatunga, tied the nation's gold seal round (to) his neck to protect

it (protecting tied) and amidst the tumult of battle was going about worriedly, trying to find the Khan his master, when he was taken prisoner by Mongol troops.

Genghis always valued people (a person who was) loyal to (his) master and saying that Tatatunga (was) a firmly loyal person greatly praised (him), and having learned (understood) he was (his being) a very scholarly person (he) commanded that the Khan's sons his shown and taught to write Mongol words in the Uighur script. Thus was the use of the Uighur script begun (the beginning was put) by the Mongols.

# Шинэ Үг Vocabulary

ард түмэн	the masses	тавигдах	to be placed, put
баривчлагдах	to be taken prisoner	тамга	seal
бат	firm		
	111111	тохируулах	to adjust
батлах	to protect	тулалдаан	battle
бачимдах	to be worried	тухайлбал	in fact
бегеед	and	тушаах	to command
буй болгох	to create	уйгар	Uighur
ёc(н)	habit, custom	улмаар	thanks to
журамт	loyal	уях	to tie
388X	to show	үймээн	tumult
засаг захиргаа	administration	үнэнч	loyal
зохиолгох	to have composed	хэзээннй	always; of old
ЕХЭД	greatly	хэрэглэх	to use
Найман	Naiman (tribe)	<b>Чадамгай</b>	skilfully
нехцел	condition	плинальтал	reform
ололт	achievement	эрдэмт	learned
сайшаах	to approve	явцал	matter, affair
cyprax	to teach		

# Language points

# The Uighur Mongol script

The Mongol script, in which archaic Mongol was first written, is called yurap or yurapжин (уштуржин) монгол усэг because the alphabet was based on Uighur letters, although these were derived

hom the Sogdian and Aramaic scripts. The script was modified, particularly in the 17th-18th centuries, the period of classical Mongol, when a great number of Buddhist treatises were translated from Tibetan. Today, the уйгаржин script and the classical Mongol language are taught in Mongol schools. A modified classical script called тод усэг 'clear letters', devised in 1648 by the Oirat Zayapandita Luvsanperenlei, was adopted by western Mongols (Oirats and Kalmyks) and is still used in China.

# The oldest Mongol inscription

The oldest known inscription in Mongol is on the so-called 'Genghis's stone', which is now in the Hermitage museum in St. Petersburg. The inscription says that in дахь жарны тахиа жил (1225) an archer called Есунгэ мэргэн shot an arrow into a target over a distance of 335 алд (fathoms, equal to 536 metres). 'Genghis's stone', which has no direct connection with Genghis Khan, was found by a Russian explorer on the river Kharkhiraa in western Mongolia in 1918.

#### Another form of the causative

Genghis Khan had (caused to be) created (**30x40,000x**) a script for the Mongol language: the derivative suffixes for the causative include **-,117-** which in this case is added to the verbal noun **30x40x** to create' (also, 'to compose' or 'design').

# Other points

The word **тухайлбал** meaning 'in fact', 'actually' is the conditional converb of **тухайлах** 'to specify' meaning literally 'if specified'. Do you remember that the postposition **тухай** means 'concerning'?

# Reading 3

Кирил усгийг ундэслэсэн монгол шинэ усэг The new Mongol script based on Cyrillic

These extracts from Vol. III of the 'History of the Mongolian People's Republic', published in 1969, give the then official view about the adoption of the Cyrillic script for Mongolian.

Бичиг үл мэдэх явдалтай тэмцэх үйлсэд тохиолдож банган бас нэг бэрхшээл бол эртний монгол хэлний авиа зүй, үг зүнн байгууллыг тусгасан, хуучин монгол бичиг орчин цагинн монголд хүн сурахад хялбар дөхөм бус байсанд оршиж байж ••

1930 оноос эхлэн бичиг үсэг сургах соёлын довтолгооны зохион явуулжээ. Мөн онд латин үсгийг туршлагын чанартын авч хэрэглэв. Гэвч латин үсэгний тоо цөөнөөс монгол хэлээ с нэмэлт үсэг олон хэрэгтэй болсон, мөн техникшин бэрхшээлтэй тал байсан тул төдий л ахиц олж чадаагүй юм

1940 оноос манай оронд социалист нийгмийг бүтэш байгуулах үе эхлэхэд нийт хөдөлмөрчдийн соёлын хэм хэмжээ дээшлүүлэх, ялашгуяа бичиг үсгийн мэдлэгийг эрс ондөржүүл ч нь хурцаар шаардагдах болов. Үүнийг хангахын тулд сурахлч бэрх уйгуржин монгол үсгийг шинэтгэн өөрчлөх шаардлага гарчээ.

1941 оны 3-р сарын 25-пд МАХН-ын Төв Хороо, Сайд нарын Зөвлөл хамтарсан хурлаараа кирилл үсгийг үндэслэн монго с шинэ үсэг зохион хэрэглэх тухай чухал шийдвэр гаргаж эх Кирилл үсгийг үндэс болгон зохиосон монгол шинэ үсэг нь бичгийн хэл, ярианы хэл хоёрыг ойртуулж, бичгийн хэлшин нэгдмэл дуудлагыг тогтооход чухал ач холбогдолтой байжээ

One difficulty that the struggle activities against (with) illiteracy encountered consisted in that the ancient Mongolian script, which reflected the phonetics and grammatical structure of the early Mongolian language, was not suitable for teaching people modern Mongolian.

A 'cultural offensive' to teach literacy was organized (beginning) from 1930. In the same year the Latin script was experimentally adopted and used. However, since the number of Latin letters was few and many additional letters were necessary for the Mongot language, and since there were technical difficulties, it did not find that much success.

When the period of building a socialist society in our country began from 1940, the raising of the cultural standards of all working people and especially a sharp heightening of literacy (knowledge of writing) were urgently demanded. In order to satisfy this, there emerged a demand for reforming the Uighur-Mongol script which was difficult to learn.

A joint meeting of the MPRP Central Committee and Council of Ministers issued the important decision of 25th March 1941 on creating and using a new Mongolian script based on the Cyrillic

ript. A new Mongolian script created on the basis of the Cyrillic wipt was especially important for bringing the written and spoken languages close to one another and for establishing a unified pronunciation.

MPRP congress in April 1930 and adopted for all Mongol-speaking people at Moscow conference in 1931. The preparatory work done in Mongolia was approved by the MPRP and Council of Ministers in a joint resolution in February 111. However, just over a month later they abandoned the Latin alphabet as 'definition and, 'because of the need for the country's culture and education to develop unison with the fraternal USSR', resolved to base a new Mongol script on all eletters of the Russian Cyrillic alphabet. This reflected events in the USSR, where vrillic scripts had been devised to supplant the Arabic and Latin scripts used by the minority nationalities. A new joint resolution published in May 1945 ordered the introduction of Mongolian Cyrillic in all Mongolian newspapers and official documents from 1st January 1946.

# Шинэ Үг Vocabulary

Төдий

аниа зуй	phonetics	туриллага	experiment
дхиц	success, progress	тул	because
ич холбогдолтой	important	тусгах	to reflect
Овйгуулал	structure	тэмцэх	to struggle
бичиг үсэг	script	уг зүй	grammar
бус	as <b>бил</b> not	үйлс	activities
бүтээх	to construct	ул	not
борх	difficult	унцэслэх	to base on
пеешхаед	difficulty	хамтарсан	joint
довтолгоо	offensive	хеделмерчин	working man
дуудлага	pronunciation	хурц	sharp, acute
дээшлүүлэх	to raise, enhance	X9M Mex	standard
кирил(л)	Cyrillic	хялбар дөхөм	easy, suitable
МОН	the same	чанартай	by way of
метйин	society, social	шаардагдах	to be demanded
HHÄT	all	шаардлага	demand
петимел	united, unified	ценцики	decision
тлемен	additional	шинэтгэх	to modernize
ойртуулах	to bring close	эрс	sharp, direct
нйитан нигоо	modern	эртний	old, ancient
ондоржуулэх	to heighten	япангуяа	especially
T00	number	ярив	talk, speech,
	. 1		

that much, many

# Language points

# Script reform

The verb шинэтгэн өөрчлөх 'to reform' comprises the modal converb of шинэтгэх 'to modernize', 'make new' and the verbal noun өөрчлөх 'to change', 'make other'. Many such combinations of modal converbs and verbal nouns are possible in Mongol,

The Mongol Cyrillic script is sometimes called the 'new' script монгол шинэ үсэг. 'Literacy' in Mongol is 'knowledge of writing бичиг үсгийн мэдлэг and illiteracy is 'writing not knowing matter бичиг үл мэдэх явдал. The Mongol for 'alphabet' is цагали толгой, lit. 'white head': толгой үсэг are 'initial letters' and цагали үсэг means 'plain letters' (of the old script, without diacritical marks).

#### Other Mongol scripts

A 44-letter vertical script called **gepsenkun 6uun** 'square script was devised in 1269 on the basis of the Tibetan script by a Tibetan lama, the Revd (hPags-pa) Lodoi Jaltsan at Kubilai Khan's court Sometimes also known as 'hPags-pa' script, it became the offical script of the Yuan dynasty in China founded by Kubilai Khan and other languages besides Mongol could be written in it. It is found in documents, seals, coins and banknotes of the period. A 90-letter horizontal script called **coemso**, named after the symbol in that script which became the national emblem of Mongolia, was devised in 1686 by the Öndör Gegeen Zanabazar on the basis of the Devanagari script used for Sanskrit.

Zanabazar also devised a 66-letter script called **хэвтээ** дөрвөлжин бичиг 'horizontal square script' based on the Devanagari and Tibetan scripts.

Today these scripts are used only for decorative purposes.

# Runic script

The runic inscriptions to be found in the Orkhon valley and else where in Mongolia are in Old Turkic. They are relics of the Turkic state which occupied much of the territory of present-day Mongolia in the 6th-8th centuries. Turkic runes are unrelated to Scandinavian runes.

#### Монгол усгийн гол зурам

Опос бидний хэрэглэж байгаа кирил усгээр бичихэд зүүнээс труунш хөндлөн бичдэг бол монгол үсгээр бичихэд дээрээс прогш гулд бичдэг.

кприл дармал үсэгт үсэг бүрийг хооронд нь холболгүй, ойр ыйтай жагсаан өрдөг бол монгол үсгийн дармал бичмэлийн пинд ч бүх үсгийг дээрээс дорогш шулуун зураасаар хооронд нь холбон бичдэг. Тэр зураасыг нуруу гэдэг.

#### Монгол бичгийн гол долоон зурмыг үзьс

Үндсэн зурам	Бичих арга
т-титим нуруу	* *
нуруу	4 1
нуруу	1 1
нуруу жим	4 4
) Hym	2 3
сччл	tt
- орхиц буюу цацлага	

# The main strokes of the Mongol script

When we write in the Cyrillic script that we now use we write across from left to right, while when we write in the Mongol script we write down from top to bottom.

In the printed Cyrillic script the letters are unconnected (between each of its letters is without connection) and they are (lined up

and type-)set close together, while in both printed and written Mongol script all the letters are written from the top downwants in a straight line joined together. This line is called the 'spine'

# Пинэ Yr Vocabulary

гол	main	ойр зайтай	close together
гулд	lengthways	өрөх	to fit, set type
дармал	printed	холболтгүй	unconnected
<b>X</b> arcaax	to line up	холбох	to join
зураас(н)	line	шулуун	straight
3VDaM(H)	stroke (script)		

зүүнээс баруунш хөндлөн	across from left to right
дээрээс дорогш гулд	down (lengthways) from top to bottom

Let us look at the Mongol script's seven main strokes (see p. 211)

Basic strokes Method of writing

титим (титэм)		нуруу	'spine'	шүд	'tooth'
шилбэ(н)	'shin'	гэдэс	'stomach'	нум	,pow.
сүүл	"tail"	орхиц	(цацлага)	long final	stroke

Note: This and the following illustrations are from the Mongolian Ministry of Education's textbook *Monron Engin* for seventh-grade middle-school children published in 1986.

#### **Монгол Ycэr** Mongol Script

	МО	NGOL SCF	RIPT			
beginning	m	iddle of a wo	ord	end of		
of word	before a vowel	before a consonant	before opxиц	word	Cyrillic	Latin

written printed 2

	MOF	тол ү	СЭГ			
Үгийн эхэнд	Ү Эгшгийн өмнө	ГИЙН ДУ Гийгүү- лэгчийн өмнө	нд Орхицын өмнө	Үгийн адагт	л үсэг	Латин үсэг
бичмэл дармал	бичмэл	бичмэл дармал	бичмэл дармал	бичмэл дармал	Кирил	Лати
1 2	3 4	5 6	7 8	9 10	11	12
74		1		المال	a	a
7 4		14		4	Э	e
イオ		11		ろろ	И	i
वं व		<b>d d</b>			0	0
व व		d <b>d</b>		<b>o o</b>	у	u
\$3		gaga			θ	ö
\$\$		9999		かめ	Y	ü
4 مراء	र्भ क्ला	11	5	(r	Н	n
99	9Ф	фф		29	б	b
ヤヤ	1 1		12		Х	q
77	ሳ <b>ሳ</b>				X	k
ヤキヤ	ং/ হৰা	1 4	:(:1	支出	Γ	γ
33	24	77		31	Γ	g

1 2	3 4	5 6	7 8	9 10	11	12
11	44		00		ж	j
11	11		20	2	Й	у
P #	11				Т	t
₽₽	14	44		91	Д	d
44	ሐ <b>ተ</b>	h th	44	54	М	m
耳耳	14				ч	č
X 71	XI	XII	カカ	カカ	p	r
77	<b>} \$</b>	<b>}</b>	大支	女夫	С	s
4 4	<b>\2 \1</b>				ш	š
lη.Ψι	44	44	p 👣	U.U	Л	1
11	11	₫ <b>₫</b>	<b>(b) (b)</b>	@ <b></b>	В	V
99	44				П	p
<b>ம்.</b> ம்	φφ	b		929	ф	f
HH	권 <b>시</b>	4		러시	3	Z
HK	침쾌	H		भम	Ц	С
77	ሳ <b>ሳ</b>	4		中中	K	k
11	ad	d		14	Х	h

Note: While the shapes of most Mongol script letters vary according to their position in a word, there are no capital letters. Note also that in the Mongol script distributional order begins with the vowels. There are some ambiguities.

# Бичвэр



#### Галиг

чан чипап-а. чаг чохин-а. бичиг бичин-э. ачи гучи - төрүл гучи дөчи - тог-а, чуг-таган гарчагай-а. чөм хүрчэгэй-э. хичийэл-дэгэн хичий-э. хичийэжү чирмайижагай-а. чонгху чэбэрлэжэгэ. чимайи хэн гэдэг буи. чи чан чиначих-а. чэбэр бичиг-ийэн бичичих-э.

#### Хервуулэг

Цай чанана. Цаг цохино, Бичиг бичнэ. Ач гуч - төрөл. Гуч дөч - тоо. Цугтаа гарцгаая. Цөм хүрцгээс. Хичээлдээ хичээ Хичээж чармайцгаая. Цонх цэвэрлэцгээ. Чамайг хэн гэдэг буй? Чи цай чаначих. Цэвэр бичгээ биччих,

The tea is boiling. The clock is ticking. The letter is written, or (X) is writing a letter. Grandchildren and great-grandchildren are relatives. Thirty and forty are numbers. Let's all go out together (all together let's go out together). Let's all arrive together. Devote yourself(selves) to your lesson(s)! Let's all try to do our best together. Clean the window(s) (together)! What's your name? Boil the tea quickly! Write neatly and quickly!

Note: The exercise is in writing the Mongolian script letter 'cha', which is represented by both a and a in Cyrillic.

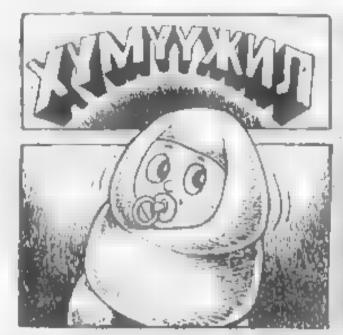
яч grandchildren цугтаа all together гуч great-grandchildren цэвэр neat төрөл relatives чармайх to try, do one's best

Note the examples here of the participatory form of the verb with the derivative suffix in -mraa- and of the quick-action form in the derivative suffix -mrx-. The term many furur can also mean handwriting'.



Teacher! You've got your book the wrong way up!

буруу wrong, incorrect харуулах to cause to face, turn















#### key:

# Хумуужил Upbringing

- 1 Баюу баюу
  - Russian: Hushaby baby.
- ' Буратино, Чебурашка
  - Russian puppets Pinocchio and Tumbler
- ↓ Октябрь ура!
  - Russian: October, Hurrah!
  - (Celebrating the anniversary of the Bolshevik revolution of 1917)
- 4 Пусть всегда будет солице!
  - Russian: Let there always be sunshine!
  - (Children's song)
- 5 Мир! Дружба!
  - Russian: Peace! Friendship!
- 6 Монголоо алдсан ... Одоохон сур!
  - Mongolian man: (You've) lost your Mongol (nature)! Woman:
  - Now study! (offers a Mongolian script textbook)

Note: Genghis Khan warned the Mongols not to lose their Mongolian nature; annax to lose, also means to miss, or drop. Did you notice that the spelling of the book-title 'Mongolian Script' in the two cartoons differs? In the cartoon on page 217 the book is called 'monggol bichig' which is correct, but in the cartoon on page 218 'bichig' is written with two myn instead of one mands.

# Grammar summary

# Nouns

#### Inflectional suffixes

#### Back vowels

Short vowel Short vowel + r 'book' 'fund' Singular: nominative CaH accusative HOMBIL Cahr genitive НОМЫН сангийн dative/locative номд санд ablative номоос сангаас instrumental номоор сангаар comitative номтой сантай Plural: nominative номууд сангууд Short vowels Short vowels + H 'daughter' 'horse' Singular: nominative HUXO морь accusative морийг ОХИНЫГ genitive морины dative/locative ДНИХО моринд ablative мориноос instrumental охиноор мориор comitative ОХИНТОЙ морьтой Plural: nominative ОХИД морыд

Long vowel Final diphthong 'goat' 'dog' Singular: nominative НОХОЙ RMAR accusative HOXOŬI **SMAAL** genitive нохойн ямааны dative/locative нохойд диванц ablative нохойгоос ямаанаас instrumental нохойгоор ямаагаар comitative нохойтой **Маатай** Phiral: nominative ямаанууд ноход

#### Front vowels

	Short vowel	Short vowels
	'yurt'	'friend'
Singular:		
nominative	гэр	нехер
accusative	гэрийг	нехрийг
genitive	гэрийн	нехрийн
dative/locative	гэрт	нехерт
ablative	гэрээс	нехреес
instrumental	гэрээр	нехреер
comitative	гэртэй	нехертэй
Plural:		
nominative	гэрүүд	нехед
	Short vowel + ■	Final diphthong
	'word'	'woman'
Singular:		
nominative	Ϋ́Γ	бусгуй
accusative	үгийг	бусгүйг
genitive	<b>УГИЙН</b>	бусгуйн
dative/locative	угэнд	бусгүйд
ablative	<b>УГНЭЭС</b>	бусгуйгээс
instrumental	үгээр	бүсгүйгээр
comitative	угтэй	бусгүйтэй
Phural:		
nominative	угс	бусгүйчүүд

comitative

ямаатайтаа

нохойтойгоо

Singular:	Long final vowel + 1 'camel'	t Long vowel 'child'	accusative 1	Short front vowel 'yurt' гэрийгээ	Short front vowels 'friend' HOXPUЙГӨӨ
nominative	ТЭМЭЭ	хүүхэд	accusative 2	гэрээ	нөхрөө
accusative	тэмээг	хүүхдийг	genitive	гэрийнхээ	нөхрийнхөө
genitive	тэмээний	хүүхдийн	dative/locative	гэртээ	нехертее
dative/locative	тэмээнд	хүүхдэд	ablative	гэрээсээ	нөхрөөсөө
ablative	тэмээнээс	хүүхдээс	mstrumental	гэрээрээ	нехреерее
instrumental	тэмээгээр	хүүхдээр	comitative	гэртэйгээ	нөхөртэйгөө
comitative	ТЭМЭЭТЭЙ	хүүхэдтэй		-	
Plural:					Front final diphthong
nominative	тэмээнүүд	хүүхдүүд		'word'	'woman'
	A A		accusative	Yr99	бүсгүйгээ
Reflexive suffixes	S		genitive	угнийхээ	бүсгүйнхээ
			dative/locative	Агантаа	бүсгүйдээ
	Short back vowel	Short back vowel + r	ablative	<b>ҮГНЭЭСЭЭ</b>	бусгуйгээсээ
	'book'	'fund'	instrumental	үгээрээ	бүсгүйгээрээ
accusative	номоо		comitative	үгтэйгээ	бусгүйтэйгээ
genitive	номынхоо	сангийнхаа		Long front vowel	Long front vowel + ■
dative/locative	номдоо	санцаа		'child'	'camel'
ablative	номоосоо	сангаясая	accusative I	естйицхүүх	TOMOSTO
instrumental	номоороо	сангаараа	accusative 2	хүүхдээ	ТЭМЭЭГЭЭ
comitative	номтойгоо	сантайгаа	genitive	куухдийнхээ	ТЭМЭЭНИЙХЭЭ
			dative/locative	хүүхдэдээ	тэмээнцээ
	Short back vowels	Short back vowels	ablative	хүүхдээсээ	ТЭМЭЭНЭЭСЭЭ
	'daughter'	'horse'	instrumental	хүүхдээрээ	тэмээгээрээ
accusative 1	ОХИНРІГОО	морийгоо	comitative	хүүхэдтэйгээ	тэмээтэйгээ
accusative 2	OXMHOO	морио			
genitive	ОХИНЫХОО	мориныхоо	Plural suffixes		
dative/locative	ООДНИХО	мориндоо	7 TOTOT SUTTINGS		
ablative	охиноосоо	мориноосоо		Chant bank and the	
instrumental	ожиноороо	мориороо		Short back vowels 'h	
comitative	ОХИНТОЙГОО	морьтойгоо	numinativa	Singular:	Plural:
	Long back vowel	Final back diphthong	nominative	малчин	динтиц
	'goat'	'dog'	accusative	малчныг	падривм
accusative	ямаагаа	нохойгоо	genitive dative/locative	малчны	нідрепам
genitive	ямаяныхаа	нохойныхоо		малчинд	малчдад
dative/locative	ямаандаа	нохойдоо	ablative	малчнаас	малчдаас
ablative	ямаанаасаа	нохойноосоо	instrumental	малчнаар	малчдаар
instrumental	ямаагаараа	нохойгоороо	comitative	малчинтай	малчицтай

	Short front vow	els 'old man'
	Singular:	Plural:
nominative	40.0	өвгөд
accusative	өвгөнийг	өвгөдийг
genitive	өвгөний	<b>өвгөдийн</b>
dative/locative	<b>өвгөн</b> д	өвгөдөд
ablative		<b>өвгөдөө</b> с
instrumental	өвгөнөөр	өвгөдөөр
comitative	өвгөнтэй	өвгөдтэй

#### Plural reflexive suffixes

	Short back vowels	herdsman'
	Singular:	Plural:
accusative 1	малчныгаа	валидигаа
accusative 2	малчнаа	малчдаа
genitive	малчныхаа	малчдынхаа
dative/locative	малчиндаа	малчдадаа
ablative	малчнаасаа	малчдаасаа
instrumental	малчнаараа	малчдаараа
comitative	малчинтайгаа	малчидтайгаа

These examples cannot cover the whole range – Damdinsüren's Orthographic Dictionary for school use (1983) divides Mongol nouns into 29 groups and 110 sub-groups.

# **Pronouns**

# Personal pronouns

#### Singular:

Dingmar.			
	First person	Second person	Third person
nominative	би	чи	энэ, тэр
accusative	намайт	чамайг	тулнийг (т)
genitive	миний	чиний	(т)үүний
dative/locative	надад	<b>ТАМД</b>	(т)үүнд
ablative	надаас	чамаас	(т)үүнээс
instrumental	надаар	чамаар	(т)үүнээр
comitative	надтай	чамтай	(т)үүнтэй

#### Phiral:

	First person		Second	Third
	Inclusive*	Exclusive*		
nominative	бид	мань	та	эд, тэд
accusative	биднийг	маныг	таныт	(т)эднийг
genitive	бидний	маны		йинде(т)
		манай	танай	
dative/locative	бидэнд	манд	танд	(т)эдэнд
ablative	биднээс	манаас	танаас	(т)эднээс
instrumental	биднээр	манаар	танаар	(т)эднээр
comitative	бидэнтэй	мантай	тантай	(т)эдэнтэй

These distinctions are hardly made in modern Mongol.

# Short form of personal pronouns

	First person	Second person	Third person
singular	над (шиг)	чам (шиг)	түүн (шиг)
plural	ман (шиг)	тан (ппиг)	тэд (пииг)

#### Possessive pronouns

As genitive case of personal pronouns.

# Postpositional possessive pronouns

	First person	Second person	Third person
singular	МИНЪ	1000	НЬ
plural	маань	тань	

# Interrogative pronouns

Note in the paradigm of what? and who? that toy has hidden n.

nominative	юу	what		who
accusative	юуг	what	ТЙИНСХ	whom
genitive	юуны	of what	хэний	whose
dative/locative	юунд	to what	хэнд	to whom
ablative	юунаас	from what	хэнээс	from whom
instrumental	юугаар	by what	хэнээр	by whom
comitative	юутай	with what	ХЭНТЭЙ	with whom

юу ч anything, хэн ч anybody

# Verbs

# Inflectional suffixes

verbal nouns:	Short back vowels 'to take'	Short front vowels 'to give'
	'to take'	'to give'
managed fortuna		Ü
present-future	abax	өгөх
imperfective	аваа	eree
iterative	авдаг	өгдөг
perfective	авсан	өгсөн
agent	авагч	erera
tenses:		
present-future	авна	өгнө
past definite	авав	1000
past perfect	авлаа	өглөө
past finite	авчээ	есето
converbs:		
concessive	ававч	<b>РЕӨТӨ</b>
conditional	авбал	өгвөл
continuous	авсаар	өгсөөр
imperfective	авч	PIG
modal	аван	өгөн
optative	аваасай	өгөөсэй
perfective	аваад	өгөөд
successive	авангуут	өгөнгүүт
temporal	аар	егехлеер
temporal	авмагц	өгмөгц
terminal	abtaji	егтел
imperatives, etc.:		
imperative	ав	өг
imperative	аваарай	өгөөрэй
imperative	аваач	Рееле
imperative	авагтун	өгөгтүн
voluntative	авъя	өгье
voluntative	авсугай	өгсүгэй
concessive	автугай	өгтүгэй
concessive	abar	erer
opportune	авангаа	өгөнгөө
admonitory	авуузай	өгүүзэй

	Long	Long
	back vowel	front vowel
	'to ask'	'to laugh'
verbal nouns:		
present-future	асуух	
imperfective	асуу	инээгээ
iterative	асуудаг	инээдэг
perfective	асуусан	инээсэн
agent	асуугч	РІССНИ
tenses:		
present-future	асууна	инээнэ
past definite	асуув	инээв
past perfect	асуулаа	инээлээ
past finite	асуужээ	ИН99Ж99
converbs:		
concessive	асуувч	<b>РЕСЕНИ</b>
conditional	асуувал	инээвэл
continuous	acyycaap	инээсээр
imperfective	асууж	инээж
modal	асуун	инээн
optative	асуугаасай	инээгээсэй
perfective	асуугаад	инээгээд
successive	асуунгуут	туучнеены
temporal	асуухлаар	<b>инээхлээр</b>
temporal	асуумагц	<b>ИНЕМЕЕНИ</b>
terminal	асуутал	инээтэл
imperatives, etc.:		
imperative	асуу	HH99
imperative	асуугаарай	инээгээрэй
imperative	асуугаач	<b>Рестесни</b>
imperative	асуугтун	инээгтүн
voluntative	асууя	инээе
voluntative	асуусугай	инээсүгэй
concessive	асуутугай	инээтүгэй
concessive	асууг	инээг
opportune	асуунгаа	инээнгээ
admonitory	асуугуузай	инээгүүзэй

	Short front	Short front		Diphthong	Short back
	vowel	vowels		back vowel	vowels
	'to say'	'to see'		'to be'	'to become'
verbal nouns:			verbal nouns:		
present-future	гэж	үзэх	present-future	байх	болох
imperfective	199	үзээ	imperfective	байгаа	болоо
iterative	гэдэг	үздэг	iterative	байдаг	болдог
perfective	Г9С9Н	үзсэн	perfective	байсан	болсон
agent	гэгч	үзэгч	agent	байгч	бологч
tenses:			tenses:		
present-future	LSES	үзнэ	present-future	байна	болно
past definite	ГЭВ	үзэв	past definite	байв	болов
past perfect	r9.199	үзлээ еелгү	past perfect	байлаа	боллоо
past finite	CCXC1	үзжээ	past finite	байжээ	болжээ
converbs:			converbs:		
concessive	L3BA	үзэвч	concessive	байвч	боловч
conditional	ГЭВЭЛ	узвэл	conditional	байвал	болбол
continuous	гэсээр	үзсээр	continuous	байсаар	болсоор
imperfective	r9x	узэж	imperfective	байж	болж
modal		үзэн	modal	байн	болон
optative	гээсэй	үзээсэй	optative	байгаасай	болоосой
perfective	гээд	узээд	perfective	байгаад	болоод
successive	гэнгүүт	узэнгүүт	successive	байнгуут	болонгуут
temporal	гэхлээр	үзэхлээр	temporal	байхлаар	боложноор
temporal	гэмэгц	узмэгц	temporal	баймагц	болмогц
terminal	гэтэл	узтэл	terminal	байтал	болтол
imperatives, etc.:			imperatives, etc.:		
imperative	T9	Y3	imperative	бай	бол
imperative	гээрэй	үзээрэй	imperative	байгаарай	болоорой
imperative	PEET	үзээч	imperative	байгаач	болооч
imperative	гэггүн	үзэгтүн	imperative	байгтун	бологтун
voluntative	ree	үзье	voluntative	байя	болъё
voluntative	гэсүгэй	үзсүгэй	voluntative	байсугай	болсугай
concessive	гэтүгэй	үзтүгэй	concessive	байтугай	болтугай
concessive	гэг	үзэг	concessive	байг	болог
opportune	гэнгээ	узэнгээ	opportune	байнгаа	болонгоо
admonitory	гэвүүзэй	үзүүзэй	admonitory	байгуузай	болуузай

	Short back	Short front
	vowels	vowels
	'to cease'	'to do thus'
verbal nouns:		
present-future	болих	тэгэх
imperfective	болио	19199
iterative	болидог	тэгдэг
perfective	болисон	ТЭГСЭН
agent	болигч	FICTET
tenses:		
present-future	болино	ТЭГНЭ
past definite	болив	тэгэв
past perfect	болилоо	тэглээ
past finite	болижээ	тэгжээ
converbs:		
concessive	боливч	тэгэвч
conditional	боливол	тэгвэл
continuous	болисоор	тэгсээр
imperfective	болиж	TOFE
modal	болин	тэгэн
optative	болиосой	ТЭГЭЭСЭЙ
perfective	болиод	тэгээд
successive	болингуут	тэгэнгүүт
temporal	боликлоор	тэгэхлээр
temporal	болимогц	ТЭГМЭГЦ
terminal	болитол	ТЭГТЭЛ
imperatives, etc.:		
imperative	боль	TOT
imperative	болиорой	тэгээрэй
imperative	болиоч	T994
imperative	болигтун	тэгэгтүн
voluntative	больё	тэгъе
voluntative	болисугай	тэгсүгэй
concessive	болитугай	тэгтүгэй
concessive	болиг	Terer
opportune	болингоо	тэгэнгээ
admonitory	болиузай	тэгүүзэй

These examples cannot cover the whole range – Damdinsüren's Orthographic Dictionary for school use (1983) divides Mongol verbs into 18 groups and 68 sub-groups.

# Noun formation from verbs

Some examples of the suffixes producing nouns from verbal noun stems:

Suffix	Verb	Meaning	Noun	Meaning
ager	nt:			
-aaq	зурах	to draw	зураач	artist
/ээч	бичих	to write	бичээч	clerk
-уул	xapax	to look	харуул	guard
/уур	хепиед	to display	дэлгүүр	shop
activ	vity:			
-гаа	2	to work	ажиллагаа	activity
/rээ	уйлчлэх	to serve	еспирийу	service
-щ	ургах	to grow	ургац	harvest
	суух	to sit, live	сууц	housing
-111	түлэх	to burn	тулш	fuel
	булах	to bury	були	grave
-99	идэх	to eat	идээ	food
	түлэх	to burn	түлээ	firewood
proc	ess:			
-aa	худалдах	to sell	худалдаа	trade
/аан	тулалдах	to fight	тулалдаан	battle
-aac	хадах	to pin on	хадаас	nail
	бүрэх	to cover	бурээс	cover
-бар	тайлах	to explain	тайлбар	explanation
/вар	300X	to carry	зөөвөр	transport
-дал	нүүх	to migrate	нүүдэл	migration
/тал	сурах	to study	суртал	doctrine
-уур	тулгах	to be supported	тулгуур	support; pylon
/ууль	сургах	to teach	сургууль	school
resu	lt:			
-T	бичих	to write	бичиг	writing
	зурах	to draw	sypar	drawing
-ra	найруулах	to mix	найруулга	composition
	нудрах	to punch	нудрага	fist
-дос	орхих	to abandon	орхидос	junk
	ороож	to wrap	ороодос	wrapping
-MT	боох	to close	боомт	barrier
	барих	to hold	баримт	fact
-р/рь	суух	to sit	суурь	place
	шавах	to cover	шавар	mud

Suffix	Verb	Meaning	Noun	Meaning
aost	ract:			
-JI	зовлех	to advise	зевлел	advice
	судлах	to study	судлал	study
-лага	opox	to enter	орлого	revenue
/лга	унших	to read	уншлага	reading
	xaax	to close	хаалга	door
-лан	жаргах	to be happy	жаргалан	happiness
/галан	елсех	to be hungry	өлсгөлөн	hunger
-JFT	нэмэх	to add	нэмэлт	increase
	өсөх	to grow	өсөлт	growth
-MIK	үзэх	to see	<b>үзэмж</b>	appearance
	туслах	to assist	тусламж	aid
-мөр	хөдлөх	to get busy	хөдөлмөр	labour
	<b>хее</b> ү	to see	үзмэр	exhibit

# **Postpositions**

# A selection of common postpositions and their cases

With nominative case (plus fleeting n): дор under:

газар дор пирээн дор under the ground under the table

дунд in the middle:

едер дунд шене дунд midday midnight

дээр on, at:

ширээн дээр шуудан дээр

on the table at the post office

руу (рүү/луу/лүү) to, towards:

хот руу Улаанбаатар луу to(wards) (the) town to Ulan Bator

турш throughout:

өдөр турш турш all day long all night long хуртэл up to:

энэ хүртэл дөрвөн цаг хүртэл up to here up to four o'clock

шахам almost:

эуу бүр

almost a hundred almost every day

mmr like:

чам шиг нохой шиг

like you like a dog

With genitive case:

гадаа outside:

гэрийн гадаа

outside the ger

дарав after:

хийсний дараа хоолны дараа

after doing (having done) after food

дор under:

бүтээлгийн дор

under the bedspread under observation

дотор within, amidst:

тогооны дотор

inside the pot within a month

дунд in the middle of:

голын дунд танхимын дунд in the middle of the river in the centre of the hall

дэргэд near:

үүдний дэргэд хотын дэргэд near the door

наана this side of, closer:

хуухдийн паркийн наана

this side of the children's park before the fifth of the month орчим near:

мирео нйисуулкед нэг хоёр цагийн орчим near the department store between one and two o'clock

emme in front of, before:

XOOJIHIJ WAR

before food

эхлэхээс гучин минугын өмнө сургуулийн өмнө

30 minutes before the start in front of the university Та буцахынхаа энийг хий. Do this before you go.

тедийгүй not only, as well:

арьсны тедийгүй үсний

hair as well as skin colour

телее for (someone's) sake:

миний телее

for me

эрүүл мэндийн төлөө!

to (your) health!

тул for the sake of, in order to:

миний тул

for my sake

бурууг засахын тул

so as to put right the mistake

тухай about, concerning:

юуны тухай

what about? about Mongolia

Монголын тухай

xamt together with:

тэрний

together with them accompanied by (his) wife

хойно behind, after:

гэргийн хамт

гэрийн хойно хоёр жилийн хойно

behind the ger after two years

цаана that side of:

шуудангийн цаана уулын цаана

behind the post office beyond the mountain(s)

With ablative case

бусад other than:

бутэн сайнаас бусад өдөр

except Sundays

гадна besides, except:

туунээс гадна

besides that

доош smaller, less:

таваас доош жүүхэд

child under the age of five

opp near:

эндээс ойр

near here

омне before:

хоёр цагаас

before two o'clock

Та буцахаас өмнө энийг хий. Do this before you go.

койно after:

уунээс хойно

henceforth

xomm after:

налаас хойш удээс хойш

after me

afternoon

after two o'clock

хоёр цагаас хойш

maam from ... onwards:

нэг сараас цааш

from January onwards

# With comitative case:

xamr together with:

надтай шр

come with me

nyr together with:

чамтай цуг

together with you

Suffixes attached to postpositions:

дээрээс from above:

ийм дээрээс

as a result of this

емнеес from in front:

миний \_\_\_\_\_

on my behalf

The suffix -х/хи (доторхи, доорхи, дээрх, etc.) enables postpost tions to be used attributively:

мянгын доторхи тоо numbers under 1,000 life before the revolution хувьсгал ялсны дараахь амьдрал life after the revolution

The word дахь 'in' plays a similar role:

Дархан дахь зах

the market in Darkhan

# Adverbs

Most adjectives may act also as adverbs, but a few 'pure' adverbe cannot act as adjectives: сайтар 'thoroughly', сая 'recently' and даруй 'immediately' are usually placed in this category. Adverbs and adverbial phrases can be derived from stems with the instrumental case suffix:

голын хөвөөгөөр along the river bank coldiy

Adverbs of place ask and answer the question 'where?' (хаа от хаана), in some cases using the dative/locative suffix (-д):

тадаа that side that side оutside падаа outside inside энд here тэнд there ард at the back урд at the front

Adverbs of direction ask and answer the questions 'where to?' and 'where from?' (-maa and -aac):

the north

түүгээр around there

There is also a suffix -уур/үүр meaning 'around': гадуур outdoors', дотуур 'indoors', etc.

Adverbs of time ask and answer the question 'when?' (хэзээ, хэдийд): дараа 'afterwards' заримдаа 'sometimes' эрт 'early', etc. оноодор 'today' and маргааш 'tomorrow' take noun case suffixes.

Adverbs of mode include голдуу 'mainly' ихэд 'greatly' үнэхээр 'really', etc. and some word-pairs: хааш яаш 'carelessly', арай чарай 'somehow', дөнгөн данган 'hardly', etc.

The question хэрхэн means 'in what circumstances?' but 'how?' and 'why?' are usually forms of the verb (яаж, яагаад) combined with another verb: Яаж хийх вэ? 'How is it to be done?' Adverbs and adjectives may be modified:

маш чухал	extremely important
тун амархан	very easy
хэтэрхий олон	too many
хеди йихдетех	to overeat
яг харалдаа	exactly opposite

# Adjective formation from nouns and adjectives

The table illustrates examples of the suffixes producing adjectives from nouns and other adjectives.

Suffix	Stem	Meaning	Adjective	Meaning
-втар	хар	black	харавтар	blackish
	XOX	dark blue	хөхөвтөр	bluish
-дуу	саарал	grey	сааралдуу	greyish
	хөнгөн	light	хөнгөндүү	rather light
-лаг	авьяас	talent	авьяаслаг	talented
-маг	100	elder brother	ахимаг	elderly
	нойр	sleep	нойрмог	sleepy
-мсаг	ECX	great	ихэмсэг	grand
	roë	beauty	roëmcor	beautiful
-ржаг	yyn .	mountain	уулархаг	mountainous
/-лхаг	үүл	cloud	үүлэрхэг	cloudy
	эр	man	эрэлхэг	manly
-рхай	бут	into pieces	бутархай	fragmented
	тод	clear	тодорхой	specific

Suffix	Stem	Meaning	Adjective	Meaning
-рхуу	морь	horse	морирхуу	horselike
	хөдөө	countryside	хөдөөрхүү	countrylike
	ендег	egg	өндгөрхүү	eggshaped
-car	төрхөм	wife's family	төрхөмсөг	family-loving
	цай	tea	цайсаг	tea-loving
-T	ену	price	<b>үнэ</b> т	valuable
	элс	sand	элст	sandy
-хай	балар	dense, dark	балархай	indistinct
	муу	bad	муухай	nasty
-XH	дор	below	дорхи	lower
	урд	south	урдахь	southern, from
-XOH	бага	small	багахан	rather small
	TOM	big	THE RESERVE OF THE PERSON NAMED IN	biggish

Autfix	Verb	Meaning	Adjective	Meaning
	тэнцэх	to balance	тэнцүү	equal
	яцах	to be hardly	ядуу	poor
		able		
уун	агшаах	to boil down	агшуун	thick
	хөгжих	to be happy	хөгжүүн	cheerful
ууштай	анхаарах	to pay	анхаарууштай	attention-
		attention		worthy
	хегу	to see	үзүүштэй	worth looking
				at
шгүй	танигдах	to be known	танигдашгүй	unrecognizable
	дуусах	to finish	дуусаннүй	inexhaustible

Note: Don't confuse the negative adjectival suffix -unry# with the negative noun unitox -ry# of үдэнгүй (from \_\_\_\_\_\_ 'evening') in the expression өглөө үдэнгүй both morning and evening' (like өдөр шөнөгүй 'day and night').

# Adjective formation from verbs

Some examples of the suffixes producing adjectives from verbs:

Suffix	Verb	Meaning	Adjective	Meaning
-гай	хазайх	to lean	хазгай	crooked
	шамдах	to exert oneself	шамдгай	keen
-M	дурлах	to love	дурлам	charming
	еревдех	to pity	өрөвдөм	pitiful
-Mar	зорих	to strive for	зоримог	purposeful
	xyypax	to deceive	хуурмаг	false
100000	барих	to hold	баримал	sculpted
	хийх	to do, make	хиймэл	artificial
-мгай	мэдэх	to know	йилмецем	knowledgeable
/мкай	айх	to fear	аймхай	nervous
-мтгай	ярих	to converse	яримитай	talkative
	үргэх	to shy	үргэмтгий	jumpy
-H	шингэх	to be absorbed	ПОЛНЕЗН	liquid
	DIYBTAX	to taper	шувтан	tapering
-HIM at		to stick	наанги	sticky
	COOX	to grow hoarse	3 4 1 2	hoarse
-шүй	дэлгэрэх	to spread	дэлгэрэнгүй	detailed
	xypaax	to collect	хураангуй	summarized
-нхай	уйлах	to cry	уйланхай	tearful
	эцэх	to tire	эцэнхий	tired
-уу	таарах	to suit	тааруу	appropriate

# Cardinal and Ordinal Numbers

cardinal numbers:		ordinal numbers:
1	(нетен)	нэгдүгээр
2	хоёр	хоёрдугаар
3	гурав (гурван)	гуравдугаар
4	дөрөв (дөрвөн)	дөрөвдүгээр
5	тав (таван)	тавдугаар
6	зургаа (зургаан)	зургацугаар
7	долоо (долоон)	долдугаар
8	найм (найман)	наймдугаар
9	ес (есен)	есдугээр
10	арав (арван)	аравдугаар
11	арван нэг	арван нэгдүгээр
12	арван хоёр	арван хоёрдугаар
20	хорь (хорин)	хорьдугаар
25	хорин тав	хорин тавдугаар
30	гуч (гучин)	гучлугаар
40	дөч (дөчин)	детудгээр
50	(тавин)	тавьдугаар
60	жар (жаран)	жардугаар
70	дал (далан)	далдугаар
80	(наян)	наядугаар
90	ер (ерэн)	ердүгээр
100	зуу (зуун)	зуудугаар

111	зуун арван нэг
200	хоёр зуу
212	хоёр зуун арван хоёр
300	гурван зуу
1,000	мянга (мянган төгрөг)
1997	мянга есен зуун ерэн долоо
10,000	арван мянга (түмэн)
100,000	зуун
1,000,000	сая
000,000,01	
100,000,000	дунчуур
000,000,000	тэрбум
0	ТЭГ

Note: Large figures in statistics (e.g. budgets) tend to be published as 'thousand' 657219.8 Mahra is 657,219,800. Commas are used not to divide the thousands. It is in place of the decimal point. Cardinal numbers are declined as nouns. The ordinal numbers first to twelfth are used for the months of the year.

The cardinal numbers are declined with the usual case suffixes had nouns, but note the variation between the base forms and the n-stem forms;

nominative	<b>ЕЭГ</b>	нэгэн
accusative	нэгийг	тыныен
genitive	нэгийн	нэгний
dative/locative	нэгд	нэгэнд
ablative	нэгээс	нэгнээс
instrumental	нэгээр	нэгнээр
comitative	<b>М</b> СТТЕН	<b>НЭГЭНТЭЙ</b>
nominative	арав	арван
accusative	арвыг	аравныг
genitive	арвын	аравны
dative/locative	аравд	арванд
ablative	арваас	аравнаас
instrumental	арваар	аравнаар
comitative	аравтай	арвантай

# The lunar calendar

The birth of Mongolian democracy and freedom in the early 1990s generated an upsurge of popular interest in the Mongols' national heritage and in such traditions as the lunar calendar. Mongolia's first democratic state constitution came into force (Article 70)

приан долдугаар жарны усан бичин жилийн хаврын тэргүүн при барс сарын ... өлзийт сайн шар морин өдрийн морин приавс 'from the horse hour of the auspicious yellow horse day of the black tiger first spring month of the water monkey year of the aventeenth 60-year cycle', or 12 o'clock on 12th February 1992.

# **Animal years**

Mongolian year name	Date begins (цагаан сар)
пан хулгана	19th February 1996
улаагчин үхэр	7th February 1997
шороон бар	28th January 1998
шарагчин туулай	16th February 1999
гомер луу	5th February 2000
цагаагчин могой	24th February 2001
усан морь	13th February 2002
инрагчин хонь	2nd February 2003
модон подон	21st February 2004
хохогчин	9th February 2005
галі нохой	30th January 2006
улаагчин гахай	18th February 2007
шороон хулгана	8th February 2008
шарагчин үхэр	25th February 2009
темер бар	15th February 2010, etc.

\*Astrologers adjust the lunar calender every three years to match the solar calender by inserting an intercalary month. This last happened in 1998 and 2001. The new moon may be timed for the day before the holiday begins.

Note: The suffix -runn added to the colour stem is one of the few surviving gender-telated suffixes, used for female animals only.

## **Animal months**

The animal names are combined with the 12 months of the lunar year (naraan cap marks the beginning of the first spring month):

Month names	Equivalent months	
бар	хаврын тэргүүн сар	first spring
туулай	хаврын дунд сар	middle spring
луу	хаврын адаг сар	spring's end
могой	зуны тэргүүн сар	first summer
морь	зуны дунд сар	middle summer
хонь	зуны адаг сар	summer's end

Month names	Equivalent months	
PHM	намрын тэргүүн сар	first autumn
тахиа	намрын дунд сар	middle autumn
нохой	намрын адаг сар	autumn's end
raxaŭ	өвлийн тэргүүн сар	first winter
хулгана	өвлийн дунд сар	middle winter
үхэр	өвлийн адаг сар	winter's end

# **Animal days**

The names and colours of the 12 animals are given to the days of the lunar months as well. In the calendar for 1996 (i.e. lunar year 'pig' and 'mouse') the first 12 animal days from the first day of 'mouse' (19th February) were as follows: улаан нохой, улаагчин гахай, шар хулгана, шарагчин үхэр, цагаан бар, цагаагчин туулай, хар луу, харагчин могой, морь, хөхөгчин хонь, улаан бич and улаагчин тахиа, the latter being 1st March.

However, for the lunar calendar to keep up with the solar calendar, a leap day has to be added every now and then, and the numbering of some days in the lunar calendar is repeated, e.g. 1st and 2nd March 1996 were both the twelfth day of xabphin тэргүүн цагаан барс сар although one day was called улаагчин тахиа and the other map нохой. As a result things get so complicated that you need a lunar calendar (хуанля) for the year in question!

# Animal hours of the day

The animal names can also be given to the 12 two-hour 'hours' of the day; there is disagreement as to whether these 'hours' start 'on the hour' of the conventional clock or at 40 minutes past:

Hour names	Equivalent hours
хулгана	23.00-01.00 (23.40-01.40)
үхэр	01.00-03.00 (01.40-03.40)
бар	03.00-05.00 (03.40-05.40)
туулай	05.00-07.00 (05.40-07.40)
луу	07.00-09.00 (07.40-09.40)
могой	09.00-11.00 (09.40-11.40)
морь	11.00-13.00 (11.40-13.40)
хонь	13.00-15.00 (13.40-15.40)
PEM	15.00-17.00 (15.40-17.40)
тахиа	17.00-19.00 (17.40-19.40)

# **Animal compass points**

troing clockwise from north through east, south and west the 12 mimal signs indicate compass directions: i.e. north is 'mouse', east in 'hare', south is 'horse' and west is 'hen'.

# Family relationships

this is a more detailed genealogy than the basic one on page 45 and illustrates a wider range of relationships:



#### Fathers and mothers

нөхөр	husband	эхнэр	wife
эцэг (вав)	father	эх (ээж)	mother

Бат Дэлгэрмаагийн нөхөр. Bat is Delgermaa's husband. Дэлгэрмаа Батын эхнэр.

Delgermaa is Bat's wife.

Бат Басбингийн аав.

Bat is Basbish's father.

Базар Дэлгэрмаагийн эцэг.

Bazar is Delgermaa's father.

Наранцэцэг Сухийн эх.

Narantsetseg is Sükh's mother.

Дэлгэрмаа Хонгорзулын ээж.

Delgermaa is Khongorzul's mother.

#### Children

дехүүх	children	xyy son	охин daughter
ах	elder brother	бустэй дүү	male younger sibling
эгч	older sister	бүсгүй дүү	female younger sibling

Зориг, Басбиш бол Бат Дэлгэрмаа хоёрын хүүхэд. Zorig and Basbish are Bat and Delgermaa's children.

Басбин Батын хүү.

Basbish is Bat's son.

Хонгорзул Дэлгэрмаагийн

Khongorzul is Delgermaa's daughter.

Сух Батын ах.

Sükh is Bat's elder brother.

Зориг Басбишийн

Zorig is Basbish's elder brother.

Төмөр Чулууны

Tömör is Chuluun's elder brother.

Басбиш Хонгорзулын дүү.

Basbish is Khongorzul's younger brother.

Хонгорзул Хулангийн эгч.

Khongorzul is Khulan's elder sister.

Хулан Зоригийн дүү.

Khulan is Zorig's younger sister.

# Uncles, aunts, nephews, nieces

пагац ах	uncle (mother's side)
авга ах	uncle (father's side)
нагац эгч	aunt (mother's side)
анга эгч	aunt (father's side)
393	nephew/niece (mother's side)
49	nephew/niece (father's side)

Болд Басбишийн нагац ах.

Bold is Basbish's uncle (mother's brother).

Дэлгэрзаяа Басбишийн нагац эгч.

Delgerzayaa is Basbish's aunt (mother's sister).

Сух Басбишийн авга ах.

Sükh is Basbish's uncle (father's brother).

Удвал Басбишийн авга эгч.

Udval is Basbish's aunt (father's sister).

Басбил, Хонгорзул хоёр Сүхийн ач.

Basbish and Radnaa are Sükh's nephew and niece (on his brother's side).

Басбиш, Хонгорзул хоёр Дэлгэрзаяагийн зээ.

Basbish and Radnaa are Delgerzayaa's nephew and niece (on her sister's side).

# Grandparents

овог эцэг (овог аав)	paternal grandfather
эмэг эх (эмэг ээж)	paternal grandmother
пагац эцэг (нагац аав)	maternal grandfather
нагац эх (нагац ээж)	maternal grandmother

Чулуун Хулангийн өвөг эцэг (өвөг аав).

Chuluun is Khulan's (paternal) grandfather.

Наранцэцэг Хонгорзулын эмэг эх (эмэг ээж).

Narantsetseg is Khongorzul's (paternal) grandmother.

Базар Зоригийн нагац эцэг (нагац аав). Bazar is Zorig's (maternal) grandfather.

Түмэнжаргал Хулангийн нагац эх (нагац ээж). Tümenjargal is Khulan's (maternal) grandmother.

#### Grandchildren

ач хүү	grandson (son's side)
нихо Рв	granddaughter (son's side)
зээ хүү	grandson (daughter's side)
зээ охин	granddaughter (daughter's side)

Басбиш Чулууны и хүү.

Basbish is Chuluun's grandson (on his son's side).

Басбиш Базарын зээ хүү.

Basbish is Bazar's grandson (on his daughter's side).

Хонгорзул Чулууны ач охин.

Khongorzul is Chuluun's granddaughter (on his son's side).

Хонгорзул Базарын зээ охин.

Khongorzul is Bazar's granddaughter (on his daughter's side).

# In-laws

хадам эх	mother-in-law	хадам эцэг	father-in-law
хүргэн ах/дүү	brother-in-law	хүргэн хүү	son-in-law
бэр	sister-in-law, daug	ghter-in-law	
бэргэн	sister-in-law. elde	r brother's wife	
авга бэргэн	aunt, father's bro	other's wife	

Наранцэцэг Дэлгэрмаагийн хадам эх.

Narantsetseg is Delgermaa's mother-in-law.

Түмэнжаргал Батын хадам эх.

Tümenjargal is Bat's mother-in-law.

Чулуун Дэлгэрмаагийн хадам эцэг.

Chuluu is Delgermaa's father-in-law.

Базар Батын хадам эцэг.

Bazar is Bat's father-in-law.

# N

Some personal names are of Tibetan origin or have come from Sanskrit via Lamaism, like **Доржналам** 'diamond' and **Очир** and **Базар** (both meaning *vajra* or 'thunderbolt'), while **Лианхуа** 'lotus' is Chinese.

In this century Mongols have sometimes been given Russian names like Александр or Саша, or mixed ones like Иваанжав; also from Russian, Ёолк 'little fir tree' seems a bit strange. Politically correct parents once chose Октябрь (October), Сэсээр (USSR) and even Молотов as names for their offspring, although the strangest of all is perhaps Мэлсчо, composed of the first letters of Marx, Engels, Lenin, Stalin and Choibalsan!

Modern Mongolian names for men often denote 'manly' qualities, like **Бат** 'strong', **Болд** 'steel', **Чулуун** 'stone' or **Сүх** 'axe'. Women may be named after flowers, like **Наранцэцэг** 'sunflower', **Удвал** 'chrysanthemum' or **Хонгорзул** 'thistle', or qualities like **Оюун** 'wisdom'. It seems that traditional (Buddhist) names may now be coming back into fashion.

Sometimes names are shortened. For example a man called Дэлгэрбаяр might familiarly be called Дэлгэр; a woman Дэлгэрзаяа may be known in her family as Заяа and her sister Дэлгэрмаа as Maa. A little girl Хонгорзул could be called Хонги by her parents.

The Mongolian party leader, Prime Minister and President until 1984, Tsedenbal, was sometimes referred to as Ban napra 'Bal the chief'. Prominent figures in Mongolian history and society are traditionally named by the first syllable of their name plus title: To (To-wang) was Prince Togtokhtör, a 19th-century administrator who was also a traveller and innovator; Ps Garm was the 20th-century scholar, linguist and writer Academician Renchin. This practice has been extended also to the Mongolian People's Revolutionary Party (Mohron aphie xybecrant ham), sometimes called the Xy ham. The use of syllables is probably related to the rules of the classical script.

# Addresses

Ulan Bator, with its named districts and central streets, has a numbering system for offices, shops and homes, e.g.

Монголын Худалдаа танхим, Ж. Самбуугийн гудамж 11, Улаанбаатар-38 Mongolian Chamber of Trade and Industry, 11. J. Sambuu Street, Ulan Bator 38

Сухбаатар дуургийн 15-р хороо, 4-р байрны 7-р орцны подвалд

Sükhbaatar District's No. 15 sub-district, No. 4 (block of) flats No. 7 entrance's (in the) basement

Баянгол дүүрэг, IV хороолол, 12 байр, 4 орц 9–144 тоот Bayangol District. No. 4 residential district, No. 12 (block of) flats, No. 4 entrance, 9th floor, No. 144

Чингэлтэй дүүргийн Дэнжийн мянган айлын 34 дүгээр байрны зургаан тоотод

Chingeltei District's 'Terrace's 1000 tents encampment' No. 34 (block of) flats at No. 6.

Even in big towns, however, homes and businesses quite often have no street address. Advertisements indicate the locations of build ings in relation to neighbouring landmarks. These are business addresses:

Сонгино-Хайрхан дүүрэг, нэгдүгээр хороо, авто сургуулийн ард БЦ-ийн 022 дугаар ангийн хажуудахь хоёр давхар байр

Songino-Khairkhan District, No. I sub-district, two-storey building behind the driving school next to Construction Troops No. 022 unit

Оросын шинжлэх ухаан мэдээллийн төвийн зүүн талд, 48 дугаар сургуулийн хойно дан цагаан байшин

Lone white building north of No. 48 school on the east side of the Russian Science and Information Centre

There is no postal delivery and people rent post office boxes шуудангийн хайрцаг (ш/х). Box numbers for Ulan Bator are combined with postcodes which identify the local post office:

Базарын Нэхийтэд, m/x 263, Улаанбаатар 210646. То Bazaryn Nekhiit, PO Box 263, Ulan Bator 210646 (or 46)

# Poetry 00

#### Нацагдорж: Миний нутаг

Хэнтий, Хангай, Саяны өндөр сайхан нуруунууд, Хойд зүгийн чимэг болсон ой хөвчин уулнууд, Мэнэн, Шарга, Номины өргөн их говинууд, Өмнө зүгийн манлай болсон элсэн манхан далайнууд. Энэ бол миний төрсөн нутаг, Монголын сайхан орон.

Хэрлэн, Онон, Туулын тунгалаг ариун мөрнүүд, Хотол онны эм болсон горхи булаг рашаанууд, Хөвсгөл, Увс, Буйрын гүн цэнхэр нуурууд, Хүн малын ундаа болсон тойром бүрд уснууд. Энэ бол миний төрсөн нутаг, Монголын сайхан орон.

Орхон, Сэлэнгэ, Хөхүйн онц сайхан голууд, Уурхай баялгийн охь болсон олон уул даваанууд, Хуучин хөшөө дурсгал хот балгадын сууринууд, Хол газар одсон харгуй дардан замууд. Энэ бол миний төрсөн нутаг, Монголын сайхан орон.

Khentii, Khangai and Sayans, beautiful high mountain chains, The adornment of the north, forested mountain ranges, Meneng, Sharga and Nomin, great Gobi expanses, The vanguard of the south, oceans of sand dunes.

- This is Mongolia the beautiful, my native land.

Kherlen, Onon and Tuul, clear pure rivers, Everyone's medicine, streams, springs and mineral springs. Khövsgöl, Uvs and Buir, deep sky-blue lakes, Drink for man and beast, salt-marsh and spring-pool waters. – This is Mongolia the beautiful, my native land.

Orkhon, Selenge and Khökhüi, very beautiful rivers.
The symbol of mining wealth, many mountains and passes,
Old monuments, memorials, towns and settlements,
The trails and roads leading off to distant places.

– This is Mongolia the beautiful, my native land.

In traditional Mongol poetry there is alliteration of first syllables in paired lines (e.g. xэ-/хой-, xэ-/хо-, хө-/хү-, ор-/уур-, etc.). By rhyming the line ends as well, using plural suffixes in -(н)ууд, Natsagdorj (see page 67) created his own special rhythm. The poem has 12 or 13 stanzas, depending on the publisher. For new words check the main vocabulary (pages 277ff).

# Key to exercises

#### Unit 1

#### Exercise 1

Сүх ээ! Сайн байна уу? Сайн. Та сайн байна уу? Сайн байна аа!

#### Exercise 2

1 Энэ миний гэргий. 2 Тайван байна. 3 Сайн байна аа! 4 Тийм. энэ ноён Девид Браун байна. 5 Тийм, тайван байна.

#### Exercise 3

1 Сайн байна уу? 2 Сайн. Та сайн байна уу? 3 Сонин сайхан юу байна? 4 Тайван байна. Танайхан сайн байна уу? 5 Сайн байна аа!

#### Exercise 4a

1 идсэн 2 үзсэн 3 ирсэн 4 уншсан 5 бичсэн 6 сурсан

#### Exercise 👚

1 идэж байна 2 узэж байна 3 ирж байна 4 уншиж байна 5 бичиж байна 6 сурч байна

#### Exercise 5

1 би байна 2 тэд бичсэн 3 та ирсэн 4 тэр хүн байсан 5 тэд нар байна 6 бид суусан

#### Exercise

I Сүх ээ! Энэ таны гэргий юү? 2 Бат аа! Хатагтай Браун ядарсан. З Зөөгч өө! Таны нэр хэн бэ? 4 Миний нэр Девид.

#### Exercise 7

I (b) Биш, Сүх багш биш. 2 (a) Тийм, Брауныхан саяхан Улаанбаатарт ирсэн. 3 (a) Тийм, хатагтай Браун монгол хэл мэднэ. 4 (b) Үгүй, Сүх зочид буудалд суудаггүй.

#### Exercise

Бид Лондон хотод суудаг. 2 Тэр (хүн) то сургуулийн багш.
З Би орчуулагч биш, би сургуулийн багш байна. 4 Тэд яарч байна. 5 Энэ сургууль том сургууль.

#### Exercise 9

1d2a3e4b5c

#### Exercise 10

1 Миний нэр \_\_\_\_\_ 2 (а) Тийм, би Лондон хотод суудаг. от (b) Үгүй, Лондон хотод суудаггүй. от (c) Биш, Лондон хотод биш, би \_\_\_\_ хотод суудаг. 3 (а) Тийм, би их сургуульд ажиллаж байна. от (b) Үгүй, би их сургуульд ажилладаггүй. 4 (а) Би монгол хэл сайн мэднэ. от (b) Би монгол хэл сайн мэдэхгүй. 5 (а) Би монгол гэрт суудаг. от (b) Би монгол гэрт суудаггүй.

#### Exercise 11

1 Үгүй, Сүх Лондонд суудаггүй. 2 Девид багш биш, бизнесмен. 3 Жюли эмч биш, их сургуулийн багш. 4 Үгүй, Оюун их сургуульд ажилладаггүй. 5 Үгүй, Брауныхан Лондон хотоос ирсэн.

#### Translation of dialogue for comprehension 1

Sükh:

Mr. Brown! How are you?

DAVID:

Hey, Sükh! I am well. How are you?

SOKH: I'm fine. What's new?

DAVID: It's quiet (nothing special). How's the family? SUKH: They're fine. Who's this? Is this Mrs Brown?

DAVID: Yes, this is my wife Julie.

SUKH: How are you?

Julie: I'm well. How are you?

SUKH: I'm fine. My name is Sükh. This is my wife Oyuun Julie: Oyuun! How are you? Do you speak English? Oyuun: No, I don't speak English, but I speak Russian well

JULIE: What do you do?

OYUUN: I work as a doctor in an Ulan Bator hospital. Where

are you working?

JULIE: I am working at London University.

OYUUN: Did you arrive recently?

DAVID: We arrived from London yesterday.

SUKH: Where are you staying?

JULIE: We are staying at the Ulan Bator Hotel.

Sükii: Is the Ulan Bator Hotel good?

David: It isn't bad. Well, we are in a hurry. Goodbyel

OYUUN/SÜKH: Goodbye!

#### Unit 2

#### Exercise 1

1 нэрийг 2 өрөөнд 3 унтлагын 4 хажууд 5 уумаар

#### Exercise 2

1 Намайг Бат гэдэг. Сайхан танилцлаа! 2 Танай зочид буудал хэдэн өрөөтэй вэ? 3 Та юм идмээр байна уу? 4 Манай гал зуухны өрөөнд ор! 5 Том зочны өрөөнд диван байна уу?

#### Exercise 3

1 Тийм, Батын аав ээжийн унтлагын өрөө зочны өрөөний хажууд (байдаг). 2 Охины унтлагын өрөө хоёр цонхтой. 3 Үгүй, жорлон цонхгүй. 4 Гал зуухны өрөө хоёр үүдтэй. 5 Зочны өрөөнд диван дээр унтдаг.

#### Exercise 4

1 Зориг хоёр дүүтэй, нэг бүстэй, нэг бүсгүй дүүтэй. 2 Үгүй, Батын аав ээж хоёр хөдөө явсан. 3 Өвөрхангай аймаг Монгол Улсын төвд байдаг. 4 Бат гучин наймтай. 5 Бид мэдэхгүй.

#### Exercise 5

І Тийм (Үгүй), би хотод суудаг (үгүй, би хөдөө суудаг). 2 Тийм (Үгүй), би аав ээжтэйгээ хамт суудаг (суудаггүй). 3 Би (your number – see tables) – тай. 4 Би хүүхэдгүй (эхнэргүй, нөхөргүй) (нэг, хоёр, гурван хүүхэдтэй). 5 Миний аавын нэрийг \_\_\_\_\_ гэдэг.

#### Exercise |

І Үгүй, Хулангийн ахын нэрийг Басбиш гэдэггүй, Зориг гэдэг. (ог) Үгүй, Хулангийн ахын нэр Басбиш биш, Зориг (гэдэг). 2 Үгүй, Хонгорзулын ээжийн нэрийг Бат гэдэггүй, Дэлгэрмаа гэдэг. 3 Үгүй, Басбиш Хонгорзулын бүсгүй дүү биш, Хонгорзулын бүстэй дүү. 4 Үгүй, Басбиш Батын бүстэй дүү биш, Зоригийн бүстэй дүү, Батын хүү байна. 5 Биш, Зориг Дэлгэрмаагийн нөхөр биш, Дэлгэрмаагийн хүү.

#### Exercise 7

1 Басбиш нэг сонин шавьж гэртээ авчирсан. 2 Девид Батын нэг орос номыг уншмаар байсан. 3 Үгүй, Девид Жюли хоёр өнөө орой завгүй (байна). 4 Үгүй, Бат өнөө орой завтай (байна). 5 Дэлгэрмаа Монголд байнга суудаг.

#### Exercise 8

1 Ирэх сард ирээрэй! 2 Та битгий яв! 3 Та суу! 4 Та ор! 5 Сайн яваарай!

#### Exercise 9

1 Хулан цамцаа хиртүүлсэн. 2 Басбиш гараа угаасан. 3 Девид Жюли хоёр явах болсон. 4 Дэлгэрмаа олон зочинтой болсон уу? 5 Зориг Хонгорзул хоёр аавын аав ээжтэй хамт хөдөө явсан.

#### Translation of dialogue for comprehension 2

DAVID: How are you, Bat?

BAT: Well. How are you?

DAVID: I'm fine.

BAT: Please come in!

DELGERMAA: How do you do? My name is Delgermaa.

David: I'm called David.

Julie: I'm called Julie.

Delgermaa: Well, come this way. This is our warm kitchen.

Bat: The kitchen has a small table and four chairs.

JULIE: How many bedrooms has your flat got?

BAT: Our flat has three bedrooms.

Delgermaa: Are you thirsty? How about some tea?

David: I'd like a cold beer.

Julie: Do you have children?

BAT: We've got four. They're called Zorig, Bashish,

Khongorzul and Khulan.

Julie: How old are they?

BAT: The elder son Zorig is ten, the elder daughter

Khongorzul is seven, the younger daughter Khulun

is six and the younger son Basbish is five.

JULIE: Do your parents live in Ulan Bator?

Delgermaa: My father is dead. My mother doesn't live in Ulan

Bator. She lives with Bat's father's elder brother in

Övörkhangai province.

JULIE: How old are you?

DELGERMAA: I'm thirty.

DAVID: Well, we must be going.

Deligerman: All right then. Goodbye! Have a good trip!

JULIE: Thanks! Stay well!
BAT: Come again!

DAVID: Thank you! Goodbye!

# Unit 3

#### Exercise 1

1 Төрийн ордны омнө талд. 2 Сүхбаатарын талбайн хойт талд

3 Хуучин кинотеатрын зүүн талд, 4 Шуудангийн баруун талд

5 Жижиг цэцэрлэгийн дунд.

#### Exercise 2

І Улаанбаатар хотын төвд олон сонирхолтой газар. 2 Морьтой хүнийг Сүхбаатар гэдэг. 3 Талбайн зүүн талд дуурь бүжгийн театр бий. 4 Талбайн өмнө талд Орос Улсын элчин яам оршдог. 5 Энэ том байшинг юу гэж нэрлэдэг вэ?

#### Exercise 3

1 There are no gardens on the north side of the Sükhbaatar monument. 2 The British Embassy is in Peace Street. 3 The opera and ballet theatre is situated next to the Ulan Bator Hotel. 4 Damdiny Sükhbaatar was not the Prime Minister; he was the chief of the Revolutionary Army. 5 The stock exchange is situated on the west side of the square in an old cinema.

#### Exercise 4

1 Тийшээ явган явж болохгүй юү? 2 Дэлгэрмаа Түүхийн музейн хойноос ирсэн. 3 Та тэр шинэ улаан номыг үзсэн үү? 4 Девид таксины буудлаас такси аваад Төв музей рүү явна. 5 Сүх Төв ордны хойш явсан.

# Exercise 5

1 The sales assistant will go into the shop and do her work. 2 The bus which goes to the museum will leave from the stop next to the hotel. 3 When David and Julie come from England they will stay in Ulan Bator. 4 When the doctor has done his work he will go home. 5 Sükh and Delgermaa will go into their flat and drink tea.

#### Exercise 6

1 Та тийшээ юугаар явах вэ? 2 Бид энд ирээд Түүхийн музейг үзнэ. 3 Та одоо хаашаа явах гэж байна вэ? 4 Тэндээс такси аваад «Баянгол» зочид буудал руу явна. 5 Улаанбаатар луу явдаг автобусны буудал галт тэрэгний буудлын өмнө оршдог.

#### Exercise 7

1 Julie went home because she doesn't like dinosaur eggs. 2 David went into a bookshop near the department store and bought several

books. 3 I'm going to Choijin Lama temple because I want to see some tsam masks. 4 Delgermaa got very tired because she was walking in the street for a long time. 5 Hey, Sükh! How are you going to get home? By 'goat cart', of course!

#### Exercise I

І Бидэнд «Бэгз», «Их Хар»-ын муухай харц жаахан эвгүп санагдсан. 2 Төв шуудангаас баруун тийшээ гараад Энхтайвиы гудамжаар яваарай! 3 Би зам хөндлөн гараад «Баянгол» зочин буудалд орсон. 4 Дэлгэрмаа Сүхбаатарын талбайн зүүн талаар яваад, Соёлын төв ордны дэргэд нэг жижиг дэлгүүрээс сонш худалдаж авсан. 5 Та баруун зүгээс Энхтайвны гудамжаар явж Төв шуудангийн булан тойроод Сүхбаатарын хөшөө хүртэл явж, тэнд надтай уулзаарай!

#### Exercise 9

1 Би дэлгүүрт ороогүй учир монгол ном худалдан авсангүй 2 Төв талбайгаас зүүн тийшээ гараагүй учраас автобус зочил буудлын гудамжаар явсангүй. 3 Дэлгэрмаа Оюун хоёр Ардчилсан Холбоонд дургүй болохоор холбооны гишүүш болсонгүй. 4 Их Хурал хол учраас Ерөнхий сайд явган янж ирээгүй. 5 Би гэрээсээ гараагүй учраас автобусны буудал руу явсангүй.

# Translation of dialogue for comprehension 3

DAVID:	There are a lot of interesting places in Ulan Bator	
	to the state of th	

Sükh:	Yes, indeed! The Sükhbaatar memorial is situated in
	the middle of Sükhbagtar Square, and the Stute

Palace is on the north side of the Sükhbaatar memorial. The State Palace is called the 'grey building',

Julie: Who works in the State Palace?

SOKH: The State President and the Prime Minister and the members of the Great Khural and of the govern-

ment work in the 'grey building'.

JULIE: In front of the big grey building there is another

little building. What's that?

SUKH: That little building is the tomb of Sükhbaatar and

Choibalsan. In the old days the leaders of the MPR

and the Revolutionary Party used to go up on top of the tomb every year on the 11th July and stand watching the military parade.

Delgermaa: The 11th July is the anniversary of the people's revo-

lution won in '21.

DAVID: Isn't the opera and ballet theatre on the east side of

Sükhbaatar Square?

SOKH: Yes it is. It is situated next to the Ulan Bator Hotel.

The stock exchange is on the west side of the square, next to the central post office, in an old cinema.

Delgerman: On the south side of Sükhbaatar Square, beyond the

gardens, there is a wide road. It is called Peace Street.

The British Embassy is in that street.

SUKH: Where do you intend to go now? To Gandan

monastery?

DAVID: No, not to Gandan monastery, we are planning to

go to the Bogd Khan's winter palace museum. Can

one walk there?

SUKH: You need transport because it's rather far. The stop

for the bus going to the Bogd Khan's winter palace

museum is next to the hotel.

JULIE: Thank you. Goodbye!

# Unit 4

#### Exercise 1

1 оръё: Let's go to a restaurant. 2 явъя: Let's go together. 3 яръя: Let me speak to Delgermaa. 4 уулзая: Let's meet at the Ulan Bator Hotel. 5 авъя: I'll have a beer. Тэгье: Right.

#### Exercise 2

How many restaurants are there in Ulan Bator? Which is the best one? 2 The Bayan Gol Hotel's food is not as good as (worse than) the Tuul restaurant's. 3 My black camel is smaller than your grey horse, 4 The railway station is farther from the town centre than the hotel is. 5 The Bogd Khan's palace is more beautiful than Ulan Bator's biggest monastery, Gandan.

#### Exercise 3

1 Хэдэн цаг болж байна? Арван нэг хагас болж байна. 2 Тэр хүн хэдэн цагт ирэх вэ? Дөрвөн цагт ириэ. 3 Галт тэрэг хэдэн цагт явах вэ? Арван цаг хорин минутад (арав хорьд) галт тэрэгний буудлаас хөдөлнө. 4 Та өглөөний хоолоо хэзээ иддэг вэ? Би өглөөний хоолоо өдөр бүр долоон цагт иддэг. 5 Одоо гурван цагт долоон минут дутуу байна. Гурван цаг долоон минут болж байна.

#### Exercise 4

1 Оюуныг өнөөдөр ирвэл бид кинонд явна. 2 Хүйтэн болбол та энд ирэх үү? 3 Таныг будаатай шөл авбал би махтай шөл авна. 4 Би сүүтэй цай уувал чамд кофе өгнө. 5 Чамайг ирж чадахгүй бол би чамтай утсаар ярина.

#### Exercise 5

1 Чамайг төмс авбал би шар лууван авна. 2 Батыг гахайн мах захиалвал Дэлгэрмаа хонины мах иднэ. 3 Тэр хүнийг ирэхгүн бол эмч хот явна. 4 Таныг гурван цагт ирвэл би танд чихэр өгнө. 5 Цас орвол Бат гэртээ харьж чадахгүй.

#### Exercise 6

1 There was neither tea nor milk in the tea shop. 2 That new university lecturer doesn't know anything. 3 For second course I'll have pork schnitzel and chips. 4 Is the hotel's ice cream better than the stewed fruit? 5 I don't eat boiled mutton or beef because I like fried fish.

#### Exercise 7

1 Оюун монголоор л ярьдаг. 2 Сүх Гадаад харилцааны яаманд ажиллаж л байна уу? 3 Би ахдаа нэг юм явуулахаар төв шуудан руу явсан. 4 Ноён Браун гэргийн хамт ирэх долоо хоногоос хөдөө явах гэж байна. 5 Бат босоод явчихсан.

#### Exercise 8

| явах 'to go' – явуулах: to send 2 opox 'to enter' – оруулах: to insert 3 бичих 'to write' – бичүүлэх: to record 4 үзэх 'to see' – үзүүлэх: to show 5 гэрлэх 'to marry' – гэрлүүлэх: to get married, marry off

#### Exercise 9

1 May your wish(es) come true! 2 Of course (it can't be helped)! (There's nothing to be done!) 3 Of course, why not (do that)? 4 Of course (you may do that)! 5 Of course, why not (be like that)?

#### Translation of dialogue for comprehension 4

BAT: Are you free tomorrow evening?

DAVID: Indeed we are. What are you asking about?

BAT: Let's go to a nice restaurant. Will you come with us?

DAVID: OK. Which is the best restaurant in town?

BAT: The Mandukhai and Ulan Bator hotel restaurants

are the best.

DAVID: The Mandukhai's restaurant has very good food.

BAT: In that case let's go to the Mandukhai?

DAVID: OK. What time tomorrow?

BAT: Seven sifteen.

DAVID: Fine. Let's meet at the restaurant.

BAT: Let's do that.

(the next day)

JULIE: What are you all going to have?

Delgermaa: I like tomato soup very much.

Julie: Is there any tomato soup?

WAITER: No, it's off (finished). But we have rice soup and

vegetable soup.

JULIE: If you are all taking the rice soup I'll take the

vegetable soup.

DAVID: I'm not wegetarian, I don't like vegetable soup, I

like mutton.

DELGERMAA: In that case let's have two rice soups and a vegetable

soup.

WAITER: Right.

JULIE: For the second course I would like to have roast

pork.

Delgermaa: But and I will have roast chicken.

Julie: What kind of vegetables are there?

Watter: Boiled potatoes, onions and carrots.

David: Please bring us (from those of yours)!

WAITER: Will you have something to drink?

JULIE: I want to drink 'Russkoye Shampanskoye', A bottle is very cheap. If you will drink together with me I

shall be very happy. Let's celebrate our meeting!

#### Unit 5

#### Exercise 1

Dialogue reproduced as it might be printed in a Mongolian book

- 1 Жюли:
  - —Чи ойлгов уу? Бат:
  - -Ойлгосон.
- 2 Девид:
  - -Та ямар ном уншиж байна вэ? Жюли:
  - —Би Монголд байгаа жуулчны нэг лавлах бичиг уншиж байна.
- 3 Девид:
  - —Түүнийг над үзүүлээч! Бат:
  - —Хүлээж байгаарай!
- 4 Жюли:
  - —Хархорум руу яаж явах вэ? Дэлгэрмаа:
  - -Автомашин, нисэх онгоцоор явж болно.
- 5 Лавлах бичигт: «Гурван Сайхан уулс Өмнөговь аймагт оршдог» гэж бичсэн байна.

#### Exercise 2

1 Жюли, чи ойлгов уу гэж асуусан. Бат, ойлгосон гэж хариулав. 2 Девид, та ямар ном уншиж байна вэ гэж асуув. Жюли, би Монголд байгаа жуулчны нэг лавлах бичиг уншиж байна гэж хариулсан. 3 Девид Батад, түүнийг над үзүүлээч гэж хэлсэн. Бат, хүлээж байгаарай гэж хариулав. 4 Жюли, Хархорум руу яаж явах вэ гэж асуув. Дэлгэрмаа, автомашин, нисэх онгоцоор явж болно гэж хэлэв. 5 Лавлах бичигт, Гурван Сайхан уулс Өмнөговь аймагт оршдог гэж бичсэн байна.

#### Exercise 3

даваа, нэгдэх өдөр, 'Monday'; мягмар, хоёрдахь өдөр, 'Tuesday'; лхагва, гуравдахь өдөр, 'Wednesday'; пүрэв, дөрөвдэх өдөр, 'Thursday'; баасан, тавдахь өдөр, 'Friday'; бямба, хагас сайн өдөр, 'Saturday'; ням, бүтэн сайн өдөр, 'Sunday';

#### Exercise 4

1 Түүнийгээ бидэнд үзүүлээч! 2 Та энэ номоо Батад өгөөч! 3 Дахиад хэлээд өгөөч! 4 Та нар автобусандаа суугаач! 5 Нисэх онгоцоор яваач!

#### Exercise 5

1 Тэр хүн Монголд ирсээр удаж байна уу? 2 Элчин сайд Улаанбаатарт ирсээр дөрвөн жил гаруй боллоо. 3 Он гарсаар цас орж байна. 4 Тэд намайг хүлээсээр байна. 5 Дэлгэрмаа лавлах бичгээ уншсаар байна.

#### Exercise 6

1 Түүнийг иртэл хүлээж байгаарай. 2 Бид хэдий хүртэл энд байх вэ? 3 Хавар болтол Бат Лондон хотод сууна. 4 Батыг гэр лүүгээ буцтал бид хамт ажиллаж байсан. 5 Намайг гэрээсээ гартал цас орж байв.

#### Exercise 7

1 Би зургадугаар (зургаадахь, зургаац) сарын хорип дорвонд төрсөн. 2 Даваа гариг бол долоо хоногийн нэгдэх өдөр. 3 Тэд аравдугаар (аравдахь, арван) сарын гуравны өдөр лхагва гаригт ирнэ. 4 Долдугаар (долоодахь, долоон) сарын арван нэг — Ардын Хувьсгалын өдөр. 5 Арван нэгдүгээр (арван нэгдэх, арван нэгэн) сарын арван гурав бүтэн сайн өдөр (ням гариг) байсан.

#### Exercise I

1 Хаан түүнийг ням гаригт хүлээн авсан. 2 Их хурал шинэ засгийн газар зохион байгуулсан, 3 Багш даваа гаригт шинэ ном худалдан авна. 4 Монгол Улс, Их Британи хамтран ажиллаж байна. 5 Жюли Бэгзийг айн харж байсан.

#### Exercise 9

1 мэдэгдэх 'to be known' 2 алагдах 'to be killed' 3 идэгдэх 'to be eaten' 4 сонсогдох 'to be heard' 5 нээгдэх 'to be opened'

#### Exercise 10

1 Тэмүүжин мянга хоёр зуун зургаан онд Чингис Хаан болсон 2 Би мянга есөн зуун наян есөн оны дөрөвдүгээр (дөрвөн) сарын хорин хоёронд төрсөн. 3 Зуун гурав номерыв гала тэргээр явах хэрэгтэй. 4 Манай их сургууль арван мянга оюутантай. 5 Батад дөрвөн мянга зургаан зуун тавин хонь бил

# Translation of dialogue for comprehension 5

DAVID: What book are you reading?

Julie: I'm reading m guidebook for tourists in Mongoliu.

DAVID: Show it to me!

JULIE: Wait a moment! The guidebook says, 'One of the

places in the Gobi much visited by tourists is the Yolyn Am reserve in the Gurvan Saikhan

mountains.'

DAVID: Where is another place tourists are greatly attracted

to?

BAT: Another place tourists are greatly attracted to is the

Khangai mountain region. The ruins of worldfamous Karakorum and Erdene-Zuu monastery are

situated there.

JULIE: It also says that the third place where tourists gather

a lot is Terelj, which is part of the Khentii moun-

tain region. Is Terelj near here?

BAT: It's not far. It's an hour's drive to the north-east of

Ulan Bator.

DAVID: How do we get to Karakorum?

BAT: You can go by bus or aeroplane to Kharkhorin.

Have you decided when you are going to

Kharkhorin?

Deligerman: How long will you stay there?

JULIE: You really have asked us a lot of questions! Only

we haven't decided for the moment. Let me have a

look at your guidebook.

DAVID: But the guidebook says that in the 16th century

Karakorum town was destroyed in a war and now all that remains of its palaces is the foundation

stones! Surely there's nothing to see there?

Deligerman: But the next chapter of the book says that in 1585

the Mongolian 'yellow faith's' first monastery was built near the place where Karakorum had been.

DAVID: Well, shall we get our air tickets booked to

Kharkhorin?

#### Answers to the crossword

Б	Щ	TA A B	IA IA	13
TAPX	A H	JI		АУ
R age	C	TY	No. 1	1 O J
$O \setminus B \mid \frac{H}{\Theta} \mid P \mid X$	*A U *P	AH	B 3	
	$\frac{A}{P} = \frac{H}{O}$		i i	A-i
H JI C	X O B	( ) ()	1.1	УБА
O H	A b			
O H P H X	H C	9 1 0	H I D	A !
"A M	$\frac{\Gamma}{\Lambda} = \frac{Y}{M}$	No.		1 A
A	П	ABH	N O H	I TO P
"H N P N Y	<u>)</u>		B	H
	ДОР	11 ()	Б	TOT
	JB D I	( ) ( ) ( )	А [Р] <u>Л</u> Э	H H
	Α		T	УУ
M 0 8 0	H		A	у у л
ri	3 A B	Z A H	ij.	P
ХОВП	ДУП	1110	ВЬ	Y H
"14"	Î I	P		л г
P N II I	A H	X	A P y	0
A S	Z I	0	A	M
Л A Д П	нь A ан	Д Д	Ш Б А Р	УУИ
A M	T.		A	T
HT A	И	3 Y	YH	A
P TO	БУЙ	P	*A	[L [ \( \) [ \( \) \]

#### Unit I

#### Exercise 1

1 Би түүнээс яаж асууж мэдэхгүй. 2 Бид машинтай бол Хархорин явахсан. 3 Та автобусаар нохойгоо авч явж болохгун 4 Бат нөгөөдөр ирэх бол уу? 5 Гадаадынхан бас оочирт зогоох хэрэгтэй.

#### Exercise 2

1 Улаанбаатар: улаан (red) 2 шарын шашин: шар (yellow) 3 хир ажил: хар (black) 4 цагаан идээ: цагаан (white) 5 мөнгө (silver) and ногоон (green)

#### Exercise 3

- 'What time did you come home last night, darling?'
- 'Exactly ten o'clock.'
- 'Don't tell lies! Our clock struck one just as you came in.'
- 'Of course! So far (as of today) people have not yet made a clock that strikes zero, my dear.'

#### Exercise 4

1 From Ulan Bator to the tourist camp in South Gobi province 2 There are flights to Khovd from Ulan Bator on Tuesdays. Thursdays and Saturdays, and on Fridays with an onward connection to Bulgan district (on the border with China). 3 Those going to Mörön on Mondays, Wednesdays and Fridays. 4 Flights are scheduled from Altai to Ulan Bator at 11.50 on Tuesdays, Thursdays and Saturdays. 5 On Mondays and Thursdays the 08.30 flight goes to Kharkhorin via Övörkhangai provincial centre (Arvaikheer) 6 There are MIAT flights from Beijing to Ulan Bator on Mondays. Tuesdays, Wednesdays, Fridays and Saturdays. 7 There are flights from Ulan Bator to Moscow on Tuesdays, Thursdays and Sundays.

#### Exercise 5

1 Танайд нэг хүний өрөө байна уу? 2 Миний өрөөний дугаар хэд вэ? 3 Хэддүгээр давхарт вэ? 4 Надад жорлонгийн цаас аваад өгнө үү. 5 Хэдэн цагаас хоолны газар онгойх вэ?

#### Exercise

1 The cheapest room at the Ulaanbaatar Hotel costs US\$60 a night. 2 The New Capital Hotel is in Peace Avenue, west of the British Embassy. 3 The Tsetseg Hotel advertisement says it has 366 beds. 4 The Baigal has rooms at US\$10, but the Mandukhai and Zaluuchuud have tögrög rates (1,200 and 2,200). 5 The Bayangol and Züch are in Чингисийн өргөн чөлөө.

#### Exercise 7

I Although Sükh bought a single ticket at the MIAT desk he didn't take the plane. 2 Delgermaa waited at the railway station for a long time but Bat didn't come. 3 Although it's Monday the dust-cart is not coming today. 4 It was half past ten but the bus driver had not started work. 5 Although David is a businessman not an interpreter he speaks Mongol well.

#### Exercise 8

1 цав цагаан/цагаахан 2 ув улаап/улаавтар 3 хөв хөх/хөхдүү 4 хав хар/харавтар 5 шав шар/шаравтар

#### Exercise |

1 Машинд бензин хийж яваасай! 2 Цас битгий их ороосой! 3 Девид архи битгий уугаасай! 4 Цаг сайхан болоосой! 5 Шинэ дэлгүүр нээгдээсэй!

#### Exercise 10

1 Галт тэргийг ирэхлээр би Баттай уулзана. 2 Галт тэргийг ирэхээр би Баттай уулзана. 3 Галт тэргийг ирэхтэй зэрэг би Баттай уулзана. 4 Галт тэргийг ирмэгц би Баттай уулзана.

#### Exercise 11

I Although it's sunny today it's cold. 2 As soon as we went in the concert began. 3 Read your book when I go. 4 If you haven't read this book read it now. 5 How am I supposed to know that?

# Translation of dialogue for comprehension 6

Assistant: How can I help you?

JULIE: I would like to book three seats to Khovd.

Assistant: When were you thinking of going?

JULIE: Is there a plane tomorrow?

Assistant: No. The next plane to Khovd is at 15.40 the day

after tomorrow.

JULIE: How much are three tickets?

Assistant: Children between five and sixteen are half price

Three tickets will be 625 dollars.

Assistant: Right, here are 625 dollars.

Please show me your passports.

Julie: Certainly. (We are) non-smoking.

Assistant: Here are your tickets. Be at the airport an home

and a half before departure time. When you get to Khovd don't forget to confirm your return trip.

RECEPTIONIST (at the Khovd hotel): Hello, Mr Brown! The room

you booked is room 411 on the fourth floor.

DAVID: How much is this room? RECEPTIONIST: It's 45 dollars a night.

DAVID: It's too expensive. The room hasn't been cleaned

The light doesn't work. Is there another room for

three?

RECEPTIONIST: Of course! Room 401 is a better room for 50

dollars a night.

DAVID: (We would) like to stay two nights. We'll take it.

RECEPTIONIST: Certainly. Enjoy your stay in Khovd!

DAVID: There are plenty of sights around Khovd. Which

is the best way to go?

RECEPTIONIST: First walk round the old Manchu town, have a look

at the Yellow Temple, then drive out to visit Black

Water lake.

# Unit 7

Answers to questions in text: (a) The herdsmen use the term 'white zud' when the pastures are covered with deep snow that the livestock cannot break through to graze. (b) After the brief summer rains the grasslands and larch forests turn yellow in the cool dry air of autumn.

#### Exercise 1

The weather is improving. 2 If there is little snow in winter will there be a black zud? 3 The wind blew up and there was a dust storm. 4 The nines begin from the winter solstice. 5 It was as sunny as spring but reached minus 20 degrees.

#### Exercise 2

1 Тав дээр арвыг нэмэхэд арван тав болно. 2 Есийг үржих нь ес тэнцүү наян нэг. 3 Хорин нэгээс арвыг хасвал арван цэг үлдэнэ. 4 Арван зургааг дөрвөд хуваабал дөрөв болно. 5 Намайг тортоо найм болгон хуваабал хүн болгон нэг нэг зүсмээр авч чадна.

#### Exercise 3

1 дулаан, хүйтэн 2 дулаарах, хүйтрэх 3 зун, өвөл 4 цас, бороо 5 нар, сар 6 арван хэм дулаан, хасах арван хэм 7 хавар, цамар 8 тэнгэр, шороо 9 үржүүлэх, хуваах 10 над шиг, тап шиг

#### Exercise I

- 1 Би хоёрхон хүүхэдтэй. 2 Дэлгэрмаа арав шахам нохойтой.
- 3 Бат далаадхан үхэртэй. 4 Төмөр гучаас бага хоньтой.
- 5 Монгол Улс хорин есөн сая илүү малтай.

#### Exercise 5

1 Horses, camels, sheep, goats and cows are called the five kinds of livestock. 2 Horses and sheep are called hot-nosed livestock. 3 Cows, camels and goats are called cold-nosed livestock. 4 Pigs and poultry are not included in the five kinds of livestock. 5 Which of the five kinds of livestock does cashmere come from? (answer: goats)

#### Exercise 6

(a) ger equipment: багана 'roof post', тооно 'roof ring', хана 'lattice wall section', хөхүүр 'koumiss bag' (cowhide), яндан 'stove pipe', (b) herding equipment: уурга 'lasso pole', хазаар 'bridle', чөдөр 'hobble', ташуур 'whip', эмээл 'saddle'. Of course, all articles

under (b) could be kept in the ger when not in use, except the 'yypra' which may be four metres long; there is a special place in the ger for a saddle stand, between the xoxyyp and the bed.

#### Exercise 7

1 P. Jasrai is to be relieved of his duties as Prime Minister. 2 Just as soon as the phone rang Sükh went to answer (take) it. 3 This decree is to become invalid. 4 Just as soon as Bat reached the stop the 'goat cart' (trolleybus) came. 5 The district called 'Songino' is to be changed to (renamed) 'Songino Khairkhan' district [of Ulan Bator].

#### Exercise |

#### DECREE OF THE PRESIDENT OF MONGOLIA

13 January 1993 Number 5 Ulan Bator town

ABOUT AWARDING ORDERS AND MEDALS TO CERTAIN PEOPLE For making a special contribution to the development of livestock production by creating a high-productivity new breed of livestock and in appreciation for the labour success the below-mentioned people are to be awarded orders and medals of Mongolia.

Order of Sükhbaatar:

Sambuugiin Dugarjav

Sector Manager, Animal Husbandry Research Institute

Order of the Pole Star:

Davaajavyn Baljinnyam

Herdsman, Shankh district, Övörkhangai province

President of Mongolia

P. OCHIRBAT

#### Exercise 9

1 2003/4 = black (water) ewe 2 2007/8 = red (fire) sow 3 2000/1 = white (iron) dragon 4 2005/6 = blue (wooden) hen 5 2002/3 = black (water) horse

# Translation of dialogue for comprehension 7

DAVID:

What's the weather like today?

JULIE:

The weather is fine. In Mongolia the sky is clear most days of the year. That's why Mongolia is

called the land of blue skies!

DAVID: What will it be like tomorrow?

Julie: They say the weather will turn bad. There's

going to be a thunderstorm.

DAVID: Is the weather going to clear up the day after

tomorrow?

JULIE: Perhaps. The signs are that a cold winter's

coming. Is it warm inside a ger in winter?

BALJINNYAM: In the winter there are three layers.

David: What heating does the ger have?

HERDSMAN'S WIFE MÖNKHÖÖ: We heat the stove with dried dung

fuel.

DAVID: How many livestock do you have?

BALJINNYAM: I have around two hundred sheep, almost eighty

goats, only ten cows and five horses. I don't

have any camels.

David: What year were you born in?

BALJINNYAM: I was born in the mouse year. My wife was born

in the tiger year.

JULIE: How many children do you have?

Monkhöö: Only seven.

JULIE: Since there are nine of you it must cost a lot?

BALJINNYAM: Although I am rich in livestock I am a poor

man in money terms. But I am a 'front-ranking' herdsman. The President of Mongolia has

awarded me a medal.

JULIE: What did your wife say?

BALJINNYAM: The wife said to me that you shouldn't press

the head of an ox that doesn't drink, nor stroke

the head of a man that doesn't know.

# Unit |

# Exercise 1

1 Төмс их үнэтэй биш. Хагас кило нь таван зуун төгрөг. 2 Манайд талх бий юү? Байхгүй. Өчигдөрийн талх дууссан байна. 3 Касс хаа байна вэ? Касс руу очиж бичүүлье. 4 Хэдэн төгрөг болж байгаа бол? Найман мянга долоон зуун дөчин гурван төгрөг. 5 Хэдэн доллар болж байгаа бол? Найман мянга долоон зуун дөчин гурван төгрөг тэнцэх нь арван нэг орчим доллар.

#### Exercise 2

1 мэдээдэхье! мэдээдэх, мэдээдэхээч, мэдээдэхээрэн 2 яваадахья! яваадах, яваадахаач, яваадахаарай! 3 ороодохъё! ороодох, ороодохооч, ороодохоорой! 4 аваадахъя! аваадах аваадахаач, аваадахаарай! 5 өгөөдөхье! өгөөдөх, өгөөдөхөөч, өгөөдөхөөрэй!

#### Exercise 3

foodstuffs: ааруул 'dried curd', архи 'vodka', байцаа 'cabbage', жүрж 'orange', талх 'bread', төмс 'potatoes', хонины мих 'mutton', цай 'tea', other goods: жорлонгийн цаас 'toilet paper' залгуур 'electric plug', лавлах бичиг 'guidebook', тавиур 'shell' хайч 'scissors', харандаа 'pencil', чийдэнгийн шил 'light bulb'

#### Exercise 4

1 «Далай Ээж» захыг хамгийн сайн нь гэдэг юм. 2 «Далан Ээж» зах улсын их дэлгүүрээс урагшаа, улсын циркийн баруун талд байдаг, 3 Учир нь хүнсний барааны сонголт сайтай 4 Бөөнөөр авбал бүр сайн хямдрана. 5 Такси дуудаад явж болно.

#### Exercise |

1 Та дэлгүүр явангаа хэдэн гадил аваарай! 2 Улаанбаатарт амьдардаг гадаадынхан энэ дэлгүүр лүү очиж, тэндээс уух юмаа авах дуртай. 3 Тэнд янз бүрийн модон эдлэлээс аль хүссэнээ сонтож болно. 4 Би Монгол Улс руу явангаа Москва хотод хоёр хономоор байна. 5 Таны утасны дугаар хэд нэ? Миний утасны дугаар дөчин долоо, дөчин гурав, гучин ес.

#### Exercise 6

There are foodstuffs (food goods) on the first [ground] floor of the department store (big shop). Because I bought (took) bread, milk, meat and granulated sugar this (today) morning I didn't buy (take) anything (a thing) from there. But going (up) to the second [first] floor I visited the men's clothing department and saw a red shirt. I gave my money at the cash desk and took my shirt from the sales assistant. On the third [second] floor of the department store there

are men's and women's clothes of all kinds. I didn't go (up) to the third floor. (I) went down to the first floor. When I went out (of there) it was five o'clock. Outside the weather was fine. I went home, changed into my new shirt and went (together) with my wife to the cinema to see a film.

#### Exercise 7

1 Та архи уувуузай! Та унтуузай! 2 Би бага байхдаа Лондон хотод амьдардаг байсан. 3 Намайг зочид буудалд ороход гэргий минь тэнд байхгүй байсан. 4 Монгол бол очиж үзэлтэй орон. 5 Өвөл ууланд явалтгүй газар.

#### Exercise

Khandaa had two green pencils. Her friend the little girl Buyan did not have even one green pencil.

Buyan said, '(Please) give me one of your green pencil(s).'

Khandaa said, 'I must ask my mummy (having quickly asked my mummy let me give).'

The following day the two (having) met again during the lesson break Buyan asked, 'What did your mummy say?'

Khandaa said, 'Mummy says (is saying) just give (it to her).

(But) I didn't ask my elder brother.'

Buyan said, 'Well, never mind, ask your elder brother.' (To be continued)

#### Exercise 9

I «Далай ээж» and «Дөрвөн уул» covered markets will be closed on 8th and 9th February, and «Хүчит шонхор» open-air market will be closed 8th, 9th, 10th and 11th February. 2 24-hour food shops will remain open during the holiday; two-shift (extended hour) food shops will be closed on 8th February; one-shift food shops will be closed on 8th and 9th February. 3 Trolleybuses will operate from 8 am to 10.30 pm on the 8th. 4 There will be no water supply on 8th and 9th February. 5 Yes, two telephones are manned 24 hours a day.

## Exercise 10

Teacher: What can we make use of from sheep?

Pupil: Wool.

TEACHER: Indeed. What is made of wool?

Pupil: Don't know.

Teacher: Well, in that case what is your overcoat made of?

Pupil: It's made of my father's old overcoat.

#### Exercise 11

I Mondays and Saturdays. 2 8.08 on Sundays, 3 No. 3 train leaves. Ulan Bator for Moscow at 13.50 on Thursdays. No. 24 train leaves. Ulan Bator for Beijing at 8.08 on Thursdays. 4 At 3.02 am on Tuesdays, Wednesdays, Thursdays, Saturdays and Sundays, 5 No. 212 train departs from Darkhan for Ulan Bator at 22.20 daily arriving at 5.30 am.

# Translation of dialogue for comprehension

BAT: So what are the two of us going to buy?

DELGERMAA: You do have a shopping list.

BAT: Let me take a look. Tea, sugar, flour, a little pork,

potatoes, radishes, tomatoes and dried curd. Ah, we also need some batteries. Our torch battery is that

(recently finished). Do we have any bread?

Delgermaa: No. Yesterday's bread is finished. And let's add a

half kilo of nice grapes.

BAT: OK, OK. Grapes are certainly expensive. One kilo

of them is 1,700 tugriks.

Delgermaa: How much is that altogether?

CASHIER: 5,390 tugriks.

BAT: Right, thank you, goodbye. Cashier: Goodbye. Please call again.

BAT: The Narantuul goods market isn't far. Let's go to

the market.

DELGERMAA: Let's. I would like to buy a new hat. How much is

this nice hat?

Seller: We're talking 20,000 tugriks.

Delgerman: Can you reduce your price a bit?

Seller: I can reduce the price a bit. How much do you want

to pay?

DELGERMAA: I'll take it for 16,000.

Seller: It's a bit too little. Take it for 18,000.

Delgermaa: It's a bit too much. I'll take it for 17,000.

SELLER: OK, OK, take it, take it.

Delgerman: I'm going home. I'm tired. On your way to the 'Sea

Mother' market why don't you pop into the Mongol Transport Co.? We need a timetable for the bus to Övörkhangai province. Mind you don't forget!

#### Unit 9

#### Exercise 1

1 долоон зуун ер 2 далан тав 3 таван зуун арван хоёр 4 гучин зургаа 5 гучин хоёр 6 арван нэг 7 зургаан зуун гуч

#### Exercise 2

! гуравны хоёр 2 зургаа (зургаан бүхэл) наймны гурав 3 тав (таван бүхэл) мянганы хоёр зуун жаран тав 4 арван долоо (арван долоон бүхэл) зууны наян ес 5 ерэн ес (ерэн есөн бүхэл) зууны ерэн долоо

#### Exercise 3

Wall (target) shooting began the day before naadam at the central stadium's national archery grounds, Almost 200 archers participated (entered together) in this year's naadam. In the years of the state festive naadam 22 crack shots and 98 Masters of Sport have been produced. Having established a state record with 39 hits from 40 arrows two years ago, state crack shot Dagvasüren's son Batjargal led for the second year with 18 hits from 20 arrows and the yyxax for his arrow hits had not subsided when (when the yyxax for his arrow hits had not subsided) his daughter Azjargal scored 19 hits from 20 arrows and led in the girls' archery.

#### Exercise 4a

1 Батын хамар холдсон байна. 2 Дэлгэрмаагийн шагай булгарсан байна. 3 Түүний хавирга хугарсан байна. 4 Миний тохой халцарсан байна. 5 Чиний нүүр наранд түлэгдсэн байна.

#### Exercise 4b

1 Бат хамраа хөлдөөчихлөө, (Батын хамар хөлджээ) 2 Дэлгэрмаа шагайгаа булгалчихлаа, (Дэлгэрмаагийн шагай булгарчихлаа.) 3 Тэр хүн хавиргаа хугалчихлаа, (Тэр хүннө хавирга хугарчихлаа.) 4 Би тохойгоо эсгэчихлээ, (Миний тохон эсгэчихжээ.) 5 Чи нүүрээ наранд түлчихлээ. (Чиний шүүр наранд түлэгдчихлээ.)

#### Exercise 5

1 яс: нуруу, хавирга 2 дотор эрхтэн: бөөр, гэдэс, зурх, нуд, уушил элэг 3 мөч: бугуй, мөр, өвдөг, тохой, шагай 4 үе: гар, хол.

#### Exercise 6

The following day when Khandaa came Buyan asked, 'So what does your elder brother say?'

Khandaa said, 'My elder brother says just give it. Mind you don't break my pencil!'

Buyan (having) said, 'Well, of course not. I'll use it very carefully.'

Khandaa said, 'Don't (you) sharpen (it). When you're writing don't press hard. If you do a lot of drawing the lead will run out. Also, (you) must not put it in your mouth.'

#### Exercise 7

1 Миний бие муу байна. 2 Миний гэдэс өвдөөд байна. 3 Эмийн жор бичиж өгнө үү? 4 Миний шүд өвдөөд байна. 5 Би халуунтай байна.

#### Exercise

1 Энэ хэсэг ямар бүтээгдэхүүн гаргадаг вэ? 2 Би барааны жагсаалт авч болох уу? 3 Би худалдааны захиралтай ярилцмаар байна. 4 Танай гол захиалагч хэн бэ? 5 Долоо хоногт хэдэн цаг ажилладаг вэ?

#### Exercise 9

An (accounting) balance sheet is a financial accounting document which shows the results of an organisation's activities over a specific period and which has two sides. On one side of the balance sheet the assets are shown, on (its) other side the liabilities, and these two sides' totals must be equal (balanced). The balance sheet shows where the money comes from and how it has been spent. The (its) assets are divided into basic and turnover assets, and its liabilities are divided into shareholders' funds and long-term and short-term liabilities. In the USA, Italy, the Philippines and other countries the assets are shown on the left side of the balance sheet, but in Malaysia and other countries they are displayed on its right side. The accounts balance sheet has the aim of giving true and correct information concerning the company's year-end circumstances (work situation).

#### Exercise 10

Hello? Doctor, I feel (my health has grown) worse. Could (couldn't) you come quickly?

The doctor's not (here). This is (I) his nurse speaking. The doctor's gone to a conference. Couldn't you ring back in three days?

In (after) three days, you say? And what if I die (suddenly)? In that case don't forget to cancel (have cease) your call.

#### Exercise 11

1 'The Tsogt Chandmani exchange is buying dollars at 803 tögrög. 2 The Golomt 'hearth' Bank and Mongol Business Bank offer only 780 tögrög for a dollar. 3 The cheapest dollars are from the Trade and Development Bank and the Export Import Bank at 803 tögrög. 4 You would get £5 × 1,344.7492 = 6,723.74 tögrög (less commission!).

# Translation of dialogue for comprehension 9

Delgermaa: The 'three manly games' are held in July. Every year in the Ulan Bator city central stadium in accordance with tradition 512 wrestlers put on their wrestler's jackets.

BAT: Wall-target archery began at the central stadium's

archery grounds the day before the games. Almost 200 archers participated in the games this year. With 39 hits from 40 arrows state crack shot Dagvasüren

established a state record,

DELGERMAA: Early in the morning of the 11th nearly 630 fast stal-

lions moved off towards the starting line. The first of the fast stallions to come in, a light bay with a white nose and a blaze on its forehead, covered the

24-km road in 33 minutes.

David: Yesterday I fell off my horse and hurt my knee. I

feel dizzy.

BAT: Did you bang your head as well?

Yes I did. Must I stay in bed?

BAT: No. I want to see the Mongolian industrial exhibi-

tion. Let's go together.

DAVID: Let's. The Mongolian Prime Minister will open the

exhibition at 10 o'clock.

Udval.: Hello! My name is Udval. I'm Bat's sister. I'm the

commercial director of the Mongolian Skins and Hides Co. What organization do you represent?

DAVID: Hello! I'm the secretary of the British Chamber of

Trade and Industry. I'm called David.

UDVAL: I would like to discuss possible forms of collabora-

tion.

David: I could grant you long-term credit.

Udval: They say, 'Having no debt is wealth and no illness

happiness.'

There are no exercises for Unit 10.

# Mongolian-English vocabulary

The first meaning given is that first used in this book and not necessarily the most common meaning.

A		азарга(н)	stallion
aas	dad	аймаг	province
ааруул	dried curd	айраг	koumiss
аарц	sour-milk curd	айх	to fear
авах	to take; to do	актив	assets
	something for	анах	to kill
	oneself	алга	not, none;
авдар	chest, box		lacking
зуй	phonetics	алцагдал	losses
аврага	giant; champion	алдар	name
автобус(н)	bus		(honorary);
авчрах	to fetch, to bring		fame
авьяас	talent	AJIEB STATE	come on then
araap	air	алс	far
агт(н)	gelding	алт(н)	gold
ary <b>ä</b>	cave	аль (алин)	which?
адаг	end	am(H)	gorge; mouth
аж ахуй	enterprise,	алдах	to promise
	activity	амар	calm, quiet
ардын аж	independent	амаргуй	difficult
ахуйтан	herder	Америк	America
мал ахуй	animal	<b>AMPRILIT</b>	success
	husbandry	амиараа	individually
ахуйн нэгж	business (unit)	амралт	holiday
фил.	industry	амрах	to rest
ажил	work	амтат жүрж	orange (fruit)
AMEDIAL AND	activity	амттай	tasty
ажиллак	to work	амь дааттал	life insurance

BETT DE LABOR DE L'ALLES CO MARK AND COURT DE L'ALLES CO MARK AND COURT DE L'ALLES COURT DE	амъдрах	to live	ATTIVIT TITUM	productivity	башас(н)	ruin(ed town)	бий болгох	to create
ABTEMENTARY AT TO the divided aura (m) to exploit Garac(m) bank Gara ye? sin't it?  ABTEMENTARY AT TO the divided aura (m) to the divided aura (m) to cup, slass Garutt (m) meat dumplings Garrani?  ABTEMENTARY England aura xandara tableware Gapaa goods Gerwar writing letter and the same tableware fableware						, ,	-	
антиландах to be divided arm(n) cup, glass Gamu(n) meat dumplings Garry closed; thick arrange to divide up (rumbler) Gap tiger Garry closed; thick armana to divide up (rumbler) Gap tiger Garry closed; thick armana to divide up (rumbler) Gap tiger Garry closed; thick armana tableware Gapa Gapa Garry to be taken Garry closed; thick armana tableware Gapa Gapa Gapa Gapa Gapa Gapa Gapa Gap			TOPAGE TAMES					
ARTHER ENglind ANT ALATOR (burbler) 6ap tiger 6arry closed; thick ANT ALATOR (balleware 6apa goods 6aver writing, letter altribus first and and journey prisoner 6aver writing, letter altribus) first and goods 6aver writing, letter altribus) first and goods first goods first goods first and goods first			agra(H)					
ARTHEN England ARTH XANGATA Lableware 6apas goods 6BVET writing, letter arthrus English arthrus to travel 6apas goods 6BVET writing, letter arthrus English arthrus to travel 6apas goods 6BVET writing, letter arthrus English arthrus to travel 6apas goods 6BVET to be taken 6BVET with the writing to write arthrus arthrus arthrus campaign 6apas grand to become 6BVET to write to write arthrus to pay attention arthrus nice, good 6apas grandal wrestling 6BVET to get one's bill to 6apas and a bit (e.g. more) 6aacas Friday 6apax to pleth ager: one') one') one') one') apra method 6acarap hero to hold 6DVET fact with ager one') one') apra method 6acarap hero arthrus dung how 6ara little 6apas pillar, post 6apas firm document(ation) 60000 opinion flopbeaux organization for accommoner decline 6ara firm 6aram pillar, post 6apyyr west; right 60000 opinion or reckon appa people; 6araeax to fall, to 6ac also reckon apprainant to democratize 6aaram nature 6aarama organization for decline 6aram firm 6aram particle') apprainant to democratize 6aaram nature 6aarama write firm 6arama firm form particle') apprainant to democratize 6aaram organization form particle') apprainant to democratize 6aaram organization form particle') apprainant to democratize 6aaram organization form organization form organization form organization form organization form organization organization form organization organization form form form form organization organization form organization form organization form organization form organization form organization form organization organization form organization form organization form organization form organization form organization form organization organization form organization organization form organization form organization organization form organization form organization form organization form organization form organization form organization organization organization form organizat			and in (13)				_	
RETTIER   English	4		agra vantiera	` '				
mex (max) first Ami journey prisoner багчих to write anxiaapan attention Ami jamin can gadin campaign of appurraxity to be come fire with the masses of anxian the masses of anxian to call the appuraxity to general cache commoner (weather) Gadryyman attention for appurraxity to general cache commoner (weather) Gadryyman attractive (weather) Gadryyman to faming found, to faming appurraxity to general cache commoner (weather) Gadryyman attractive found, to faming appurraxity with the masses of anxian to collers up of appurraxity and to collers up of afaryyman attractive (weather) Gadryyman to found, to faming appurraxity or appurraxity of a faming appurraxity or and the masses of afarma to collers up of afaryyman and the masses of afarma to collers up of afaryyman appurraxity or collers up of afaryyman appurraxity o		-						
arkapan attention Am gadm campaign of apaltraxux to become developed distribution are arkapan nice, good to become to be developed distribution are arkapan nice, good to be developed distribution of developed developed developed developed developed distribution of developed developed developed developed developed distribution of developed developed distribution of developed develope							-	
вежараж to pay attention arrainam nice, good to Samyymax to get one's bill to S construction back, rear 6aap bar 6apamrakyyaax to vevelop Gresses elerk pape back, rear 6aap bar 6apamrakyyaax to picte a ger: one's apaa a bit (e.g. more) 6aacam Friday 6apax to picte a ger: one's apra method 6aarap hero to hold 60rma short one's apram method 6aarap hero to hold 60rma short one's apram dry animal dung 6ar mask 6apmar farear fact, evidence 60rmator to shorten aparams dung box 6ara little 6apmar farear document(ation) 60god opinion дерведж to fall, to 6ac also reckon papeamax to fall, to 6ac also reckon appramax to decline 6ar firm 60g to confirm particle) appramax to decline 6ar firm 60g to confirm particle) appramax to decline 6ar firm 60g confirm particle) appramax to define 6arana ture (weather) 6aarana mature (weather) 6aarana ture (statement) 60god congrupax to cancel apprama vodka firm organize tructure (statement) 60god possibility appramay vodka firm organize resources 60god to be permitted; to be some apprama to ask 6aana state, situation 6aana resources 60god to be permitted; to ask 6aana state, situation 6aana resources 60god to be permitted; to ask 6aana pace					барилгажих	1.		
to back, rear бавр har барштажуулах to develop бятвоч clerk пот (пот this арай a bit (eg. more) бавсам Friday барили (to hold ботнаго меньод бага пака функтыра функ	-							
врв back, rear бавр har барядаав wrestling one one one of this apaß a bit (e.g. more) басагая Friday барях to pitch a ger.  шеноб багатар hero to hold ботяво short apran dry animal dung box бага little барях барях со pitch a ger.  другальня dung box бага little барях барях фосштенцатion) бодол орілюл форму фор	unnumpun			Lice, good	барилгажуулах			
арай a bit (e.g. more) Gacae Friday Gapex to pitch a ger: to hold Garap method Garap hero to hold Gordon short apran method Garap hero to hold Gordon short apran dry animal dung Gar mask Gapent fact, evidence Gordon to shorten apranatit dung box Gara little Gapent Gaver document(ation) Godon opinion opinion pepsonix to general pittat, post Gapent Gaver document(ation) Godon opinion opinion opinion decline Garana pittat, post Gapent Gaver document(ation) Godon opinion opinion opinion opinion decline Garana pittat, post Gapyn west; right Godox to think; to reckon opinion opini	an.			har				
method Gaztap hero to hold Gorneo short apran dry animal dung Gar mask Garmer fact, evidence Gorneottox to shorten apranam dung box Gara little Gapmer fact, evidence Gorneottox to shorten Garama dung box Gara little Gapmer fact, evidence Gorneottox to shorten Garama dung box Garama pillar, post Gapmer document(ation) Gogon opinion dependix of Garama permanent decline Gar little Gapmer fact, evidence Gogon opinion opinion gorneottox decline Garama decline Garama decline Garama decline Garama to decline Garama to democratize Garama nature Gooking Gomton particle) apprenana to democratize Garama nature Gooking Gomton each, every apprenana to democratize Garama organization organization (weather) Garayymara to be founded Garama to be founded Gorneottox to case, to stop apprena pure Garayymara structure Gomton Gomex to cease, to stop apprena vodka Gomton Garayymax to be founded Gorneottox Gomon yr? perhaps? appears vodka Gorneottox Gomon yr? perhaps? appears vodka Gorneottox Garama wealth, Gomon and appedix skin organize Tesources Gonox to be permitted; appedix skin organize Gorneottox Gomon yr? Gooking appedix vodka Gorneottox Garama wealth, Gomon and appedix skin sand hides Garama state, situation Garama wealth, Gomon organize Tesources Gonox to be permitted; appedix skin sand hides Garama state, situation Gorneottox (appedix permanently Gorneottox to the come fried pastry appedix to garap attache fait (apartment), Beptim Berlin to close armama attache Garama permanently Gorneottox Concrete Gopo tain air-dried strips are anachildren Garama to be (together) yours) word); upright badga goods-passenger (ballpen) Garama passan balancy Gorneotto Gorneot to get up anasa-cryfunnam goods-passenger (ballpen) Garama Garama balancy Gorneotto Gorneot to Goll in (up.)								
аргалы dry animal dung баг mask баринг fact, evidence богшеоттох to shorten аргалын dung box бага little баринг бичиг босшени(аtion) бодол opinion содол ориноп формот фо	_				,		богино	
аргалын dung box бага little барямт бачая document(ation) бодол opinion  дерментя д					баримт			
дервелж реорle; багана pillar, post барун west; right бодох to think; to ард реорle; багасах to fall, to бас also reckon commoner decline бат firm бол is (emphatic particle) ард тумэл the masses багш teacher баташхуулах to confirm particle) ардчилах to democratize байгаль nature (booking) болгов each, every organization organization confirm forms to cancel (weather) байгууллагдах to be founded confirm forms to cancel (weather) байгууллагдах to be founded confirm forms to cancel confirm forms	_							
ард реоріе; батасах to fail, to decline far firm food is (emphatic particle)  ард тумен the masses farm teacher farminax to democratize farminament for clear up for dearly mature for clear up for fairyynnara for ganization for clear up for fairyynnara fairynnara for fairyynnara fairynnara for fairynnara fairynnar	_	ddiig ww						
commoner decline бат firm бол is (emphatic apg түмэл the masses баги teacher баталгаажуулах to confirm particle) ард түмэл to democratize байгаль nature (booking) болгов each, every apвилах to clear up байгууллагдах to be founded confirm болжх to cease, to stop (weather) байгуулал structure (weather) байгуулал structure (statement) болов уу? perhaps? apклае lion байгуулах to build, to байгалах to be worried болом уу? perhaps? apклае lion байгуулах to build, to байгал wealth, болов and apse(s) skin organize resources болох to be permitted; apke шпр skins and hides байдал state, situation байг rich to become асуулт question байгах to fight, to do байгал thank you! боом barrier; customs arrax to grasp hattle байр flat (apartment), баяра дегой сонстей борох to tie, to wrap; axe us defer brother position, place of all form of an array grandchildren байхуу black tea бил syynthia grandchildren байхуу black tea бил we conserved form of meat av колбогологой important байцва cabbage (balance) (balance) боло высненый болож to grap word); upright to be do, tealing the position, place of the conserved form of the same of the position, place of the conserved form of meat avanoforgontrow important байцва cabbage (balance) бил вай вай вай вай объе вой, health босох to get up avan-cyyynthia goods-passenger (ballpen) бил закасах газар lavatory ботых boots		people:				-		
ард тумян the masses багих teacher баталгаашуулах to confirm (booking) болгов each, every арянах to clear up байгууллага огдалізатіол (weather) байгууллагдах to be founded confirm болях to case, to stop аряув риге байгуулах structure (statement) болов уу? perhaps? арелав lion байгуулах to build, to баялаг wealth, болов and архен vodka found, to organize organize organize resources болох to be permitted; askin organize resources болох to be permitted; appected by not? баялаг state, situation баялаг to be sarrax to grasp why not? баяла thank you! болов установ розт аттах to grasp hattle баялаг permanently баяла вотом atom байла permanently баяла ветий to close are elder brother are elder brother success, progress байх to be permitted; become concrete forom concrete forom concrete forom concrete forom concrete forom concrete forom are grandchildren байлах to be case, to stop cash to be worried forom and resources fonox to be permitted; to be worried fonom and resources fonox to be permitted; to become acyyntr question байлах state, situation for fired pastry by not? баял poy fonom barrier; customs acyynt to ask байлах to fight, to do баярлалая thank you! fonom barrier; customs acyynt atom for fired pastry post arrax to grasp flat (apartment). Gensus permanently fonom permanently fonom permanently fonom post to close are elder brother position, place forom concrete fonom rain array grandchildren fair, dia flag cabbage fonom position, place forom concrete fonom array are grandchildren fair, dia flag cabbage fonom f	~!^		our nous				бол	
арденах to democratize байталь nature (booking) болгов each, every apenax to clear up байтууллагдах to be founded confirm болж to cancel (weather) байтууллагдах to be founded confirm болж to cancel confirm forms to cancel confirms to cance	ADI TYMBE		багии					
арилах to clear up байгууллагдах to be founded confirm болих to cancel (weather) байгууллагдах to be founded confirm болих to cancel confirm form form to cancel confirm form form to cancel confirm form form to cancel confirm form form form form form form form fo					7,000		болгон	•
weather) байтууллагдах to be founded confirm болах to cease, to stop арвун риге байгуулал structure (statement) болов уу? perhaps? арслав lion байгуулах to build, to баллаг to be worried бололдоо possibility архи vodka found, to баллаг wealth, болов and арьс(н) skin organize resources болох to be permitted; арьс шир skins and hides байлал state, situation балла rich to become acyулт question байлах to fight, to do баяр joy боов(н) fried pastry acyyx to ask байлдах to fight, to do баярлала thank you! боомт barrier; customs arrax to grasp battle баяртай goodbye! post arrame attaché байр flat (apartment) бензин реtrol боох to tic, to wrap; arrame attaché байр flat (apartment). Берлин Веrlin to close ax elder brother position, place бетов concrete бороо rain arrame success, progress байх to be бил I бори air-dried strips ay grandchildren байгуу black tea бил we grandchildren байгуа to be (together) yours) word); upright results avaa, avaa baggage байгаах to be (together) yours) word); upright goods-passenger (ballpen) бие бие засах газар lavatory ботик boots (train) баланс balance бильноствен businessman бөглөх to fill in (up.					батлах		4	
арку риге байгуулах structure (statement) болов уу? perhaps?  арслав lion байгуулах to build, to баялаг wealth, болов арку apper wodka  арке но organize resources болох to be permitted;  арке шир skins and hides байлал state, situation баял гich to become acyynt question байлах to fight, to do баялалава thank you! боом barrier; customs arrax to grasp hattle баяр flat (apartment); беляя вегія to close ax elder brother position, place бегон concrete боро гаіп акиц success, progress байх to be fainax to be байлах to be байлах to be байлах to be байлах black tea бид we of meat ax xолбогдолтой шроттапт байлах cabbage бильяй ошть байлах to be (together) yours) word); upright avaa-суудпын goods-passenger (train) баланс balance бильность вышесь бильность быльность быльност						*		
арслан lion байгуулах to build, to байгидах to be worried болощоо possibility архи vodka found, to organize resources болох to be permitted; apac шир skins and hides байдал state, situation бахи rich to become acyynt question байлах to fight, to do баяр joy боов(н) fried pastry acryyx to ask байлах to fight, to do баярлала thank you! боомт barrier; customs arrax to grasp battle баяртай goodbye! post arom atom байла permanently бензин petrol боох to tie, to wrap; arraine attaché байр flat (apartment), bennum bernier customs arraine aux elder brother position, place бил we arraine arraine success, progress байх to be бил we of meat arx vonfornorroù important байла cabbage байлах to be (together) yours) word); upright avaa. avaa baggage байлах to be (together) yours) word); upright follows to get up avaa-суудлын goods-passenger (ballpen) баланс balance бизлесмен businessman бөглөх to fill in (up,	аричн	1						
архи vodka found, to баялаг wealth, болон and огдалізе resources болох to be permitted; арьс шир skins and hides байдал state, situation баян rich to become асуулт question байлах to fight, to do баярлалаа thank you! боомт barrier; customs асуух to ask байлдах to fight, to do баярлалаа thank you! боомт barrier; customs arrax to grasp battle баяртай goodbye! post arom atom байла permanently безян petrol боох to tic, to wrap; arrame attaché байр flat (арагителт). Берлин Berlin to close ax elder brother position, place бетон сопстете боро гаіп акин success, progress байх to be бя I бори аіт-dried strips ay grandchildren байлур black tea бид we of meat ay холбогдолтой important байлаа cabbage бящай ours (ours not босо down (cross-ачаа, ачаа baggage байцтаах to be (together) yours) word); upright тээш бал lead (pencil), ink бие body, health босох to get up avaa-суудлым goods-passenger (ballpen) бязнесмен businessman бөглөх to fill in (up,		•			бачимиах	1	_	
арьс(н) skin organize resources болох to be permitted; арьс шир skins and hides байдал state, situation байн rich to become асуулт question байдах to fight, to do байр joy боомт barrier; customs асуух to ask байдах to fight, to do байрай goodbyel post arom atom байр flat (apartment); белун Berlin to close ах elder brother position, place average grandchildren байху black tea бид we of meat av холбогдолтой important байцаа cabbage байцах to be (together) yours) word); upright тээш бал lead (pencil), ink бие засах газар lavatory ботинк boots (train) баланс balance байнесмен businessman бөглөх to fill in (up.			Oddi y y wast	C#				
арьс шир skins and hides байдал state, situation байн rich to become асуулт question байлгүй яах вэ why not? баяр joy боов(н) fried pastry асуух to ask байлдах to fight, to do баярлалаа thank you! боомт barrier; customs розтам atom байла permanently безян petrol боох to tie, to wrap; атташе attaché байр flat (apartment); Берлин Вerlin to close ах elder brother position, place бетон солстете боро гаіп ахищ success, progress байх to be би l борц air-dried strips ач grandchildren байлуу black tea бид we of meat ач холбогдолтой important байлаа cabbage бидний ours (ours not босоо down (cross-ачаа, ачаа baggage байлгаах to be (together) yours) word); upright тээш боль (train) баланс balance бизнесмен businessman бөглөх to fill in (up.								
асуунт question байнүй яах вэ why not? баяр joy боов(я) fried pastry асуух to ask байндах to fight, to do баярналаа thank you! боомт barrier; customs battle баяртай goodbye! post arom atom байнга permanently бонзан petrol боох to tie, to wrap; arrame attaché байр flat (apartment). Берлия Berlin to close ax elder brother position, place бетов concrete боро гаіп акиц success, progress байх to be бв l борц air-dried strips ay grandchildren байхуу black tea бид we of meat ay холбогдолтой important байнаа cabbage билнай ours (ours not босоо down (cross-амаа, амаа baggage байцтаах to be (together) yours) word); upright тээш бал lead (pencil), ink бие body, health босох to get up awaa-суудпын goods-passenger (ballpen) бизнесмен businessman бөглөх to fill in (up,			байлал		баян			· ·
асуух to ask байщах to fight, to do баярпалая thank you! боомт barrier; customs battle баяртай goodbye! post atrax to grasp battle баяртай goodbye! post atrame attaché байр flat (apartment); Берлин Веrlin to close ах elder brother position, place бетон сопстете боро гаіп акнц success, progress байх to be би l бори аіт-dried strips ач grandchildren байкуу black tea бид we of meat ач холбогдолтой important байцаа cabbage бидний ours (ours not босоо down (cross-ачаа, ачаа baggage байцтаах to be (together) yours) word); upright тээш бал lead (pencil), ink бие васах газар lavatory ботинк boots (train) баланс balance билнесмен businessman бөглөх to fill in (up,							боов(н)	
аттах to grasp battle баяртай goodbye! post atom atom байнга permanently бонзин petrol боох to tic, to wrap; atrame attaché байр flat (apartment); Берлин Berlin to close ax elder brother position, place бетон concrete бороо гаіп акиц success, progress байх to be бн l борц air-dried strips ay grandchildren байхуу black tea бнд we of meat ay холбогдолтой important байцаа cabbage бидний ours (ours not босоо down (crossavaa, ачаа baggage байцгаах to be (together) yours) word); upright тээш бал lead (pencil), ink бно body, health босох to get up ayaa-суудлын goods-passenger (ballpen) бне засах газар lavatory ботник boots (train) баланс balance бизнесмен businessman бөглөх to fill in (up,		•		,			•	
atrame attaché байр flat (apartment); Берлин Berlin to close  ах elder brother position, place бетон concrete боро гаіп  ахиц success, progress байх to be би l борх air-dried strips  ач grandchildren байху black tea бид we of meat  ач холбогдолтой important байцаа cabbage бидний ошг (ошг пот босоо down (cross-  ачаа, ачаа baggage байцтаах to be (together) yours) word); upright  тээш бал lead (pencil), ink бие body, health босох to get up  ачаа-суудлын goods-passenger (ballpen) бие засах газар lavatory ботянк boots  (train) баланс balance бизнесмен businessman бөглөх to fill in (up,			State Light Control	~				
атташе attaché байр flat (apartment); Берлин Berlin to close  ах elder brother position, place бетон concrete бороо rain  ахиц success, progress байх to be би I бору air-dried strips  ач grandchildren байхуу black tea бид we of meat  ач колбогдолтой important байцаа cabbage бидний ours (ours not босоо down (cross-  ачаа, ачаа baggage байцуаах to be (together) yours) word); upright  тээш бал lead (pencil), ink бие body, health босох to get up  ачаа-суудлын goods-passenger (ballpen) бие засах газар lavatory ботянк boots  (train) баланс balance бизнесмен businessman бөглөх to fill in (up,		-	байнга				боох	
ах elder brother position, place бетон concrete бороо rain summy success, progress байх to be бн l борх air-dried strips оf meat grandchildren байхуу black tea бид we of meat ач холбогдолтой important байцаа cabbage бидний ours (ours not босоо down (cross-ачаа, ачаа baggage байцгаах to be (together) yours) word); upright тээш бал lead (pencil), ink бие body, health босох to get up ачаа-суудлын goods-passenger (ballpen) бне засах газар lavatory ботинк boots (train) баланс balance бизнесмен businessman бөглөх to fill in (up,								
акиц success, progress байх to be бид we of meat образи образи образителя об							бороо	rain
яч grandchildren байхуу black tea бид we of meat ач холбогдолтой important байцаа cabbage бидний ours (ours not босоо down (cross- ачаа, ачаа baggage байцгаах to be (together) yours) word); upright тээш бал lead (pencil), ink бие body, health босох to get up ачаа-суудлын goods-passenger (ballpen) биз засах газар lavatory ботинк boots (train) баланс balance бизнесмен businessman бөглөх to fill in (up,			байх			1	_	
ач колбогдолтой important байцаа cabbage байцгаах to be (together) yours) word); upright тээш бал lead (pencil), ink бие body, health босох to get up ачаа-суудлын goods-passenger (ballpen) бизнесмен businessman бөглөх to fill in (up.	· ·				бил	we		
ачаа, ачааbaggageбайцгаахto be (together)yours)word); uprightтээшбалlead (pencil), inkбиеbody, healthбосохto get upачаа-суудлынgoods-passenger(ballpen)бне засах газар lavatoryботянкboots(train)балансbalanceбизнесменbusinessmanбөглөхto fill in (up,							босоо	
тээш бал lead (pencil), ink бие body, health босох to get up ачаа-суудлын goods-passenger (ballpen) бизнесмен businessman бөглөх to fill in (up,		. *						1
ачаа-суудлын goods-passenger (ballpen) бие засах газар lavatory ботинк boots (train) баланс balance бизнесмен businessman бөглөх to fill in (up,					био		босох	
(train) баланс balance бизнесмен businessman бөглөх to fill in (up.		goods-passenger						
			баланс					
Total Control	amer	profit		(accounting)	бий	is		out)

бегеед	and	бүрд	spring pool	гадил	banana	голлон	mainly
бөөнөөр	in bulk;	бүртгүүлэх	to get booked	гадна (+ abl.)	besides	голомт	hearth
	wholesale		(ticket)	гадуур	outside, external	гольф	golf
бөөр(н)	kidney	буртгэл	registration	газар	place, land	LOO	beauty
бех	wrestler	буртгэх	to register	гайгүй	not bad	горхи	stream
бех барилдах	wrestling	бүрэн	completely	гал	fire	rya	as roo
брюк	trousers	бүрэн эрхт	plenipotentiary	гал тогоо	kitchen, cuisine	гуанз(н)	restaurant, diner
бугуй	wrist	бүрэх	to cover	галиг	transcription	гудамж(н)	street
бугуйвч	bracelet	бүрээс(н)	covering	галт тэрэг	railway train	гулд	lengthways
будаа	grain	бус	belt, sash; zone	ганцаараа	on one's own	гурил	flour
будрах	to flurry	бустуй	woman	ганц(хан)	only, single, just	гутал	boots
буй болгох	to create	бустэй	man		one	гуч	great-
булаг	spring (of water)	бүтээгдэхүүн	product	гар	hand, arm		grandchildren
булах	to bury	бутээл	article	гар чийдэн	torch	гуя	hip
булга(н)	sable	бүтээх	to construct	гарын үсэг	signature	FYE	deep
булгарах	to get sprained	бүү	don't	гараа	start	Pact	but
булчин	muscle	бух	all, whole	гарааны зурхай	starting line	гэдэс (гэдсэн)	stomach
булш(н)	grave	бухий	which is, which		(horse racing)	гэл үү?	is that so?
бунхан	tomb		has	гарааш	garage	гэм	trouble
бургер	burger	бухэл	whole (number)	гаран	over, more than	гэмтээх	to injure
буруу	wrong, incorrect	бучих	to surround	гарах	to go out, to	гэр	felt tent, yurt;
бурхан	Buddha, Buddha	бэлгэвч	condom		leave; to begin		home
	statue	бэлэг	genitals	raprax	to publish; to	гэрээр үйлчлэх	home (delivery)
бус	see бит	бэлэг	gift; sign		produce,		service
бусад	other	бэлэн	ready		to put out:	гэргий	wife
бутерброд	sandwich	бэрх	difficult		to export	гэрлүүлэх	to marry off
буу	gun	бэрхшээл	difficulty	гариг	planet; (with	гэрлэх	to get married
буудал	stop, station	Бээжин	Beijing, Peking		name) day of	гэрлэх ёслол	wedding
бууэ(н)	meat dumplings	бямба	Saturday		the week	гэрэл	light
буурал	grey-haired	бяслаг	cheese	гаруй	more than	гэрэлд харуулах	to x-ray
буух	to descend, to	В		гахай	pig	renter	to cross
	get off; to	ваар	vase	гектар	hectare	T9X	to speak, to say,
	land	вагон	railway carriage	Герман	Germany	гэх мэт	etc.
буцах	to return, to go	BAHH	bathtub	герман	German	Д	
	back	вант улс	kingdom	РТСПУУТЙКТ	consonant	даага(н)	colt
буюу	or	варень	jam	гиштэх	to tread	даарах	to feel cold
бугд	all, everybody	вольтметр	voltameter	гишүүн	member	даатгал	insurance
бүгд найрамдах	republic	Γ		говь	Gobi	даваа	Monday
улс		<b>гадаа</b> (+ nom.	outside	roë	heautiful	даваа	mountain pass
бужиг	ballet, dance	or gen.)		пеплемир пёол	ornament	даваа	round of
бүлэг	chapter	гадаад	foreign, external	гол	river; main		wrestling
бүр	every; each; very	гадас(н)	pole, stake	гол мах	fillet	давс(н)	salt

давтах	to repeat	дор (+ пот.	under	дэвсгэр	banknote	жагсаал	parade,
давхар	floor, storey:	or gen.)		дэвтэр	notebook		demonstration
	layer	дор дурдсан	under-mentioned	дэлгүүр	shop	жагсаалт	list
дайлах	to fight	дорно	east	дэлгэрэх	to spread	Warcaax	to line up
дайндах	to be conquered	дотоод	internal	дэлгэх	to display	жаргах	to be happy
дайн	war	дотор (+ gen.)	inside	TO DESCRIPTION OF THE PROPERTY	world	жаргал,	happiness
дайрах	to bump into	дотор эрхтэн	organs	дэлхий дахин	world-wide	жаргалан(г)	парритезо
далай	sea, ocean	дотуур	internal, indoors	HERMANIE MARKETT	world-famous	жигнэмэг	jam
далайх	to brandish	дерее	stirrup	алдартай	world-fullious	MCHITH9X	to roast; to bake
дамжуулах	to relay, to	дулаан/дупаахан	warm	дэнж	terrace; place in	MEH HOA	(bread), to
	transmit	дулаарах	to grow warm	дона	Ulan Bator		brew (tea)
дан	single; simple	дунд (+ nom. or		TOPPET (4 Gen )		Urnaan Werting	` '
дараа (+ gen.)	later, after		in the middle	дэргэд (+ gen.)	next to, near roof cover for a	уураар жигнэх	to steam small
дараагийн	next		of, middle	дээвэр		XIOKOT .	
дараалал	queue	д <b>ургүй</b> (+ dat.)	having a		ger	жижүүр	receptionist
даралт	pressure	,	disliking (for	пеед	deel, traditional	XXIII	year
дарах	to press; to		something)	man () som )	gown, robe	EMMC(H)	fruit
todoolis over	suppress	дурдах	to mention	дээр (+ nom.)	better; on, onto,	жирэмсэн	pregnant
дарга	chief, boss	дуртай (+ dat.)	having a liking		above	WHII39	example
дардан зам	hardened road,	April (+ dat.)	(for	дээр дурдсан	above-mentioned	жишээлбэл	for example
Anyman Sam	highway		something)	дээш	above, over	жолоо	reins; steering
дармал	printed	HUDOGY	to remember	хепүүпшеед	to raise, to		wheel
	wine	дурсах		77	enhance	<b>ж</b> олооч	driver
дарс(н)	sparkling wine	дурсган	memorial	E		жор	prescription
оргилуун дарс	(black)smith	дутуу	short of,	Европ	Europe	жорлон(г)	lavatory
дархан			insufficient	европ	European	жороо	ambler (horse)
дархан	sacred	дуу	thunder; voice	ер жь	actually	журам	loyal
даркан цаазат	nature reserve	дуугарах	to sound, to	оренхий	general manager	жуулчин	tourist
газар			strike (clock),	захирал		жүржийн	orange juice
дархлах 	reserve, protect		to ring (bell)	еренхий сайд	prime minister	шүүс(н)	
дахиад	again	дуудах	to call	сренхийдегч	president	3	
даяар	everywhere	дуудлага	pronunciation;	ерөөл	wishes, hopes	38 (388)	OK, well, so
цаян	whole, entire		call, summons	E		3BBH	elephant
даян аврага	supreme	дуулах	to hear, to listen	бл	vulture	388X	to show
	champion	дуулах	to sing		(lammergeyer)	388	free time, leisure
диван	sofa	дуурсагдах	to be famous	ÖOTOH	sugar lump	заваан	dirty
<b>диспетчер</b>	controller	дуурь	opera	ec(H)	custom, habit	завсарлах	to have a
<b>ДОВТЛОК</b>	to attack	дуусах	to finish	ёслол	сегетопу		break
довтолгоо	attack,	дун тэнцүү	balance	ёстой	necessary; must;	заг	saxaul,
	offensive	дурслэх урлаг	fine arts		truly, really		Haloxylon
цоллар	dollar	дүү	younger brother/	Ж			(desert shrub)
тонох оокор	week		sister	жаал	a bit	загас(н)	fish
доош (+ abl.)	below, under	дүүрэг	urban district	Kaaxah	a little	задгай	open, loose

задгай менге	small, loose	KOTROMKOE	to have	Зүүн	east; left	KOMHOT	stewed fruit
	change		composed	39p <b>9</b> r	and min	компьютер	computer
задлах	to open	PROBEOE	author	399Л	loan, credit	жонсерв	canned food
зай	battery	30XEOH	to organize	N		концерт	concert
38Й	space, distance	байгуулах		ндэр	young	KOHLEK	brandy
зайлах	to clear off, to	30XXOX	to compose	Hide	to eat	кострюль	saucepan
	push off	30XXX	to suit;	есди	food	KOCTIOM	suit, dress
залгах	to connect		appropriate:	MÄM	such, like this	кофе(н)	coffee
залгуур	plug		duly	ийнхүү	in this way	кресло	armchair
залуу	young	зохицуулант	check, regulation	ессийи	this way	куртка	jacket
38M	road	эочин	visitor, guest	илбэх	to stroke	Л	
зардал	cost	зочид буудал	hotel	EDDENIC(H)	288	лаа	watt; candle
зарим	certain, some	XOLLOC	to visit	нлүү	more; over	лааз(н)	can, tin
заримдаа	sometimes	36B	correct	импорт	import	лав	sure
зарлага	expenditure	зевлел	advice	жетни	in this way	лавлах	to enquire
зарлиг	decree	зовлох	to advise	ингэх	to do this	лавлах ном	guidebook
зарцуулагдах	to be spent	зовхон	only	инженер	engineer	лам	lama, Buddhist
засаг захиргаа	administration	зендее	plenty	иргэн	people; citizen		monk
3acax	to correct	зөөвөр	transport	иргэний	civil, civilian	литр	litre
засвар	repair	эөөгч	carrier; waiter/	ирэх	to come	Лондон	London
засгийн газар	government		waitress;	институт	institute	лут их	huge
засуул	wrestler's second		porter	инээх	to laugh	луу	dragon
3ax	market (place)	зөөлөн	gentle	их	big, great	лкагва	Wednesday
зах зээл	market	300X	to carry	ихэд	greatly	MOKC	de luxe
	(economy)	зуд	zud, lack of	ихэнх	greater part.	M	
захиалах	to order		forage		most	магадгуй	perhaps
залиалга	order	зун	summer	<b>шхэ</b> р	twins	магадлах	to check, to
захирал	director	зураас(н)	line	гурван ихэр	triplets		confirm;
3898	fate, destiny	зураач	artist	K			to enquire
SASAT	destined	зураг	drawing	Каир	Cairo	магнай	leader, leading
зовох	to worry	зурам(н)	stroke (writing)	карбюратор	carburettor		wrestler;
зогсоол	(bus) stop	зурах	to sign; to draw	карман	pocket		forehead
зогсох	to stand, to stop	зуслан	summer quarters	карт(н)	card (credit,	май	here you are
зодог	wrestler's jacket	зуун	century		ration, etc.)	мал	livestock, cattle
зодоглох	to put on a	зуух(н)	stove	KACC(H)	cash desk	малгай	hat
30 <u>Д</u> 011101	zodog	зуг	direction	билетийн касс	ticket office	Малчин	herdsman
SOBRIDO	aim	зүгээр	fine, all right;	кило(грамм)	kilo(gram)	манай	our (ours and
ЗОРЕЛГО	to be intended	Giroob	plenty	километр	kilometre		yours)
зорнулах	for	зүйл	object	кино(н)	film	манцах	to flourish
2027		зүнл <b>зүйтэй</b>	right, proper	кино театр	cinema	мандуулах	to raise (flag)
зорих	to set off		heart	кирилл	Cyrillic	манж	Manchu
эорчигч	passenger	зурх(н)					
эорчин явагч	passenger	aAA	needle	компани	company	маргаані	tomorrow

мартах	to forget	мэдээлэл	information	ноён	Mr; prince	HBMBX	to add
масштаб	scale (map)	мэргэн	wise (man);	HOM	book	нэр	пате
MAX(H)	meat		crack shot	номын сан(г)	library	нэрд гарсан	famous
махбод	element	мягмар	Tuesday	ноолуур	cashmere, goat	нэрийдэх	to name, to give
маш	very	H			hair		a name
машин	car, vehicle,	наад	this here	HOOC(H)	wool	нэрлэх	to name, to call
	machine.	наадам	traditional	нохой	dog	нээгдэх	to be opened
мебель	furniture		games	негее	other, another;	нээлт	opening
медаль	medal	<b>наана</b> (+ gen.)	this side of		that one	H99X	to open
Миний	my	HAAFI	(to) here, hither	негеедер	day after	няттлан бодогч	accountant
минут	minute	найциартай	reliable		tomorrow	HIIM	Sunday
мич(н)	monkey	найз	friend	нөж	blood clot	0	
могой	snake	наймаа	trade, business	нөхөр	husband; friend	osor	father's name
мод(н)	tree, wood	наймавчин	trader	некцеп	condition	овор кэмжээ	dimensions
модон эдлэл	furniture	Найман	Naiman (tribe)	нудрах	to punch	огтлол	street
Монгол	Mongolia	найруулах	to mix	нудрага	fist		intersection
монгол	Mongol(ian)	найруулга	composition	нум	archery bow	огтлох	to cut
морилох	to deign to	намар	autumn	нуруу	mountain range;	од(н)	star
морь (морин)	horse	нам	political party		back, spine	одон(г)	order (award)
морь уралдах	horse racing	нам	low	нутаг	homeland;	одоо	now
морин хуур	horse(head)	нандин	precious		territory	одоохон	just moment
	fiddle	нар	plural particle	нутаглах	to dwell	одоохондоо	for the moment
Москва	Moscow	нар(н)	sun	нуур	lake	одох	to go away, to
мөн	really am, is, are	нар зев	clockwise	нуд(н)	eye		go off
МӨН	the same	наранд шарсан	tanned	нуудэл	migration	OR	anniversary
менге(н)	silver; money,	наранд	sunburned	нуудэлчин	nomad	OÄ	forest
	change	тулэгдсэн		нүүр(н)	face	ойшох	to understand
томдогт	banknote	Hac(H)	age	нуух	to move, to	ойр (+ abl.)	near
мер(н)	shoulder	нас барах	to die, to pass		nomadize	ойрхон	quite near
мердех	to follow		away	НЬ	of him, her, etc.;	(+ dat./loc.)	
мерен	river	начин	falcon		his, her, their	ойр зайтай	with m small
мехеелдес	ice cream	нийгэм	society, social		etc.		space, close to
	limb	нийслэл	capital city	нь	is, are	ойртуулах	to bring near
музей	museum	HERT	all; public	<b>НЭГДМЭ</b> Л	united, unified	олгох	to grant
мултрах	to be dislocated	нимбэг	lemon	Нэгдсэн Вант	United Kingdom	олдвор	find, something
муу	bad	( a )	flight	Улс	<b>5.</b> -		found
муудах	to get worse	нисэх	to fly	нэгдэл	herding	олзлох	to capture
муур	cat	онгоц(н)	aeroplane		cooperative;	олимпиад	Olympics
муухай	ugly, nasty		rubbish		association	олопт	achievement
муухайрах	to worsen	Horoo	vegetable	нэгдэх	to unite	ОЛОН	many
	to know	ногоон	green	нэмэгдэх	to rise	олок	to find
мэдээ	news, report	ногоон хоолтон	vegetarian	нэмэлт	addition	OH	year

онгойлгох	to open	Θ		eex(H)	fat	пуус	company
онгоц(н)	vessel, ship	өвгөн	old man	өр	deht	P	
нисэх онгоц(н)	aeroplane	өвдег	knee	<b>ергежих</b>	to expand	радио	radio
0Н00	archery hit	өвдөх	to hurt	ергежуулэх	to broaden	размер	size
-	to hit the	овол	winter	өргөн	broad, wide	район	urban district
	target	өвөр	breast (male),	ерген челее(н)	avenue	рашаан	mineral spring
ОНЦ	special,		chest	ергее	pavilion; Urga	рашаан ус	mineral water
	extraordinary	өвөрмөц	peculiar, specific		(Ulan Bator)	рейс	trip
онцлог	feature	-	illness	ергес(н)	thorn	ресторан	restaurant
00Н0	buck antelope	өглөө	morning	өргөст хэмх	cucumber	розетк	socket
оочер	queue; turn	егех	to give; to do	өргөх	to raise, to offer	Ром	Rome
ор(н)	bed		something for		up	C	
орд(н)	palace		someone	өрнө	west	саарал	grey
орд харш	palaces	өгүүлэх	to recount, say	өрөм	clotted cream	CAB(H)	container
орного	revenue	өдөр	day	өрөө(н)	room	хогийн сав(н)	dustbin
орой	evening	елен	thin	epex	to fit, to set	сайжрах	to improve
оройнох	to lead	елсгелен	hunger		(type)	сайн	good, well
оролцох	to participate	елсех	to be hungry	ecrex	to let grow, to	сайт, сайтай	good as to, good
орон	place, country,	(+ gen.	south; in front;		raise		as far as
	region	or abl.)	before	еселт	growth	сайхан	nice; beautiful
ороодог	wrapping	өнгө	colour	өсөх	to grow	сайшаах	to approve; to
ороох	to wrap round	өнгөрөх	to pass	<b>дедтиг</b> ө	yesterday		praise
Opoc	Russia	өндөг(н)	egg	П		салат	salad
орос	Russian	өндөр	high	пальто	overcoat	CSIEKK(H)	wind
орох	to enter; to cost	<b>өндөржүүлэх</b>	to heighten, to	парламент	parliament	самрах	to stir
оруулалт	investment		raise	паснорт	passport;	сан(г)	fund, storehouse
орчим (+ gen.)	around, near	<b>9019</b>	today; now		identity	санаа	intention
орчин цагийн	modern	орой	this evening		document	санагдах	to seem
оржидос	junk	өнөөдөр	today	пассив	liabilities	CAHAR	opinion, view
орхих	to throw	өнцөг	corner	печень	biscuits	саналтай	of a mind to
	(wrestling);	өөр	other	IIMBO(H)	beer	санах	to remember
	to abandon	өөр	self	пилжак	coat	сандал	chair
орхиц	long final stroke	өөрийгөө	oneself	платье	dress, frock	сансар	space, cosmos;
	(script)	<b>өөриймсөх</b>	to feel at home	thickly.	hotplate, cooker		place in Ulan
орчуулагч	translator	өөрийн	one's own	поваарь	pepper		Bator
орчуулах	to translate	өөртөө	(one)self	подъезд(н)	entrance hall,	сантиметр	centimetre
орших	to be situated	<b>оорчлолт</b>	change,		lobby	санхүү	linance
OXEH	daughter; girl		alteration	приставк	video player	санхүүгийн	accounts,
ОХЪ	symbol	нөпрчлөн	'perestroika'.	программ	programme	тайлан	financial
хнро	to go to	байгуулалт	restructuring	прокат	hire		report
оюун	wisdom	хөглүү	to change, to	пуусти	rocket	cap	month
оюутан	student		alter	пүрэв	Thursday	сар(н)	moon

сарлаг	yak	сургууль	school	талбай	square	TOITOX	to stop (raining):
сартий	with a blaze	их сургууль	university	талх(н)	bread	TOTTOX	to be fixed,
	(horse)	суртал	doctrine	тамга	seal		to resolve
CAS	million	суудал	seat	тамки(н)	tobacco	тогтоц	structure
CAR	just now	суурин	settlement	тамки татах	to smoke	тод	clear
CANXAH	recently	суурь	foundations,	танай	your (plural)	тодорхой	specific
соёл	culture		place	Тангуд	Tangut, Hsi-Hsia	тодоруоп	to make clear
солонго	rainbow	суух	to sit; to live	Талгуд	(nation)	тойром	salt-marsh
Солонгос	Korea	сууц	dwelling	танилцах	to make the	тойрох	to go round
солонгос	Korean	сууцгаах	to sit (together)	Tananitak	acquaintance	толгой	head
сонгино	onion	суйдэх	to be destroyed	202723734	hall, chamber	толгойнох	to form a head
сонголт	selection	сулжээ	network, system	танхим	your (singular)	толь(н)	dictionary;
сонгох	to choose	сум	temple	таны	sour milk	TOMBUM	mirror
сонин	newspaper, news	cycer	faith, belief	тараг	tariff	mone	big
сонирхолтой	interesting	суу	milk	тариф		TOM	
сонирхох	to take an	сүүл	tail	тархи(н)	brain	томилогдох	to be appointed
	interest	сүх(н)	axe	Tacar	department	томилох	to appoint
сонсох	to listen, to hear	сэрүүхэн	cool	тасалбар	ticket	томоохон	big, important
сорочик	shirt	сэрэх	to wake up	тасалгаа	room; hall	TOO	number
социал-	social-democrat	C3D33(H)	fork	татаар	Tartar (tribe)	тооно(н)	ring, the
демократ		сэтгүүл	magazine	Tatax	to attract, to		'cartwheel'
сенеех	to destroy	T	***************************************		pull; to reduce		supporting a
спорт	sport	та	you (polite)	татвар	tax	(-)	ger's roof
суваг	channel	таалагдак	to please	тахиа	chicken	тооцоо(н)	bill
суварга	stupa, shrine	таалах	to like	ташуур	whip	тооцоолуур	computer
сувилагч	nurse	таваг	plate	театр	theatre	тооцоох	to calculate
сувилал	sanatorium	тавиур	shelf	телевиз	television	торт	sponge cake
суднал	study	тавигдах	to be placed,	теннис	tennis	TOC(H)	butter; oil
судлах	to study	A development	to be put	тийм	yes; such	тохиолдох	to happen
сул	available; free,	Taring	to blow (storm);	шид в минт	not at all	тохиромж	suitability
-,	vacant	A WALLESON	to put; to	тийшээ	that way	тохирох	to be suited
сунраж	to decline		release	титэм	crown	тохируулах	to adjust
сум	rural district;	тавтай	pleasant	товлох	to decide	TOXOŬ	elbow
-,	аггом	тайван	peaceful	(н)оориот	bureau	TOB	centre
сур	archery, archery	тайлан	account(ing)	товъёг	contents table	ТӨВШИН	level
*/ F	target	тайлах	to explain	тоглуулагч	record player	төгрөг	tögrög, tugrik;
сур харвах	archery	тайлбар	explanation	TOPOO(H)	cauldron,	_	round
сурагч	student	такси(н)	taxi		cooking pot	төдий	that, so much,
сурах	to study, to	тап	side; plain,	POOTOT	cook	4 4	many
-//	learn; to ask	4 4004		TOPTOOX	to establish, to	төднигүй	not only
	about	коёр талын	steppe return price		fix	(+ gen.)	
сургах	to teach		(fare)	тогтоощгоох	to drink up	талбер	payment
-) France	to todell	СНА	(tare)		(together)	төлөө	for the sake of, to

телеелега	representative	түгээх	to distribute	удаан	slow, for a long	урьдаар	in advance
телеелех	to represent	түлхүүр	key		time	урьдчилах	to do
телех	to pay	түлш(н)	fuel	удах	to stay, to take	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	beforehand
төмөр	iron	тулэх	to fuel, to feed a		time	ус(н)	water
төмөр зам	railway		fire	удирдагч	leader	усан үзэм	grapes
темерчин	blacksmith	Сепут	firewood	уйгар	Uighur (nation)	утас (утсан)	telephone; wire
темс(н)	potato	түргэн	fast, quick	уйл	whirlpool	үүрэн утас	cell phone
төр	state	турүү	first, head,	улаан	red		•
төрөл	kind, sort;		lead	Улаанбаатар	Ulan Bator	утасдах	to phone, to ring
	relatives	түрүүлэх	to come first	улаан лооль	tomato	yrra	meaning
төрөх	to be born; to	Түүгээр	around there	улаан лууван	radish	уул	mountain
	he produced	ТУУНИЙ	that one's, his,	улайх		уулархаг	mountainous
төрсөн нутаг	homeland		her, its		to turn red	уулзах	to meet
төхөөрөмж	equipment	түүх	history	уламжлал	in accordance	уулзвар	junction
Tyr	banner	туух	to gather	ëcoop	with tradition	уур	steam
тул (+ gen.)	because, for the		to depend on	улирал	season	уурга	lasso pole
	sake of	тэгаэл	if so	улмаар	thanks to	уурхай	mine
тулалцаан	battle	тэгэх	to do thus	улс	state, people	уусах	to dissolve
тулалдах	to fight	тэгээд	so, and then	умар	north	уут(н)	bag
тулгар	newly	тэд (тэдгээр)	they; those	унаа(н)	transport	уух	to drink
	established	<b>Т</b> Эдний	theirs	унаажих	to get transport	уучлах	to forgive
тулгах	to be supported	тэмцэг		yHara(H)	foal	уушиг/уушги(н)	lungs
тулгуур	pylon	a an anapage of	sign; stamp,	унах	to ride	учир, учраас	hecause
ТУН	very	тэмцэглэх	badge	унах	to fall	учиртай	should; having
тунгалаг	clear	ТЭМЦЭХ	to emphasise	ундаа	drink		meaning
туруу(н)	hoof	ТЭМЭЭ(Н)	to struggle	ундаасах	to be thirsty	уна	hitching line for
Typm (+ nom.)	throughout		camel	унтах	to sleep		horses
турпплага	experiment	тэнгис далай	sea, great lake	унтлага	sleeping	уях	to tie, to tether
тус	assistance	тэнгэр	sky, weather	унграалга	light switch	Y	
тусгах	to display, to	тэнгэрт халих	to die	унтраах	to turn off	AL(B)	word
	reflect	ТЭНД	there	унинж	to read	уг зүй	grammar
тусламж	aid	тэнцүү	equal	уншлага	reading	угуй	no
туслах	to assist	тэнцэх	to equal	унь	roof pole, rafter	ДХ	noon
туулай	hare	тэр (тэрбээр)	that; he, she, it		of a ger	ye	time, period;
туулах	to cover	тэргүүн(ий)	leading, first	уралдах	to race, to		joint
	(distance)	тэрэг(н)	cart		compete	Yжин	lady (Genghis
туурга(н)	tent's felt wall	Т9989р	transport	yprax	to grow		Khan's
туфля		ТЭЭХ	to transport	ургац	harvest		mother)
тукай (+ gen.)	shoes	ТЭЭШ(Н)	haggage	урд	south; front	<b>УЗМЭР</b>	stand, exhibit
Ayana (1 gen.)	about,	У		урлах	to make	үзүүр	end, point
тухайлбал	concerning	yraax	to wash		artistically	үзүүрлэх	to sharpen
Тушаах	in fact, actually	удаа	time, occasion	урт	long		(pencil)
· 7 MIGGA	to command	удаа дараа	repeatedly	уртаттах	to lengthen	<b>узэмж</b>	appearance
					E1		. Promoter

lady, queen

to sting, to

pierce

strange, funny

to do, to make

to make dirty

oneself, to try

enclosure

monastery

air; gas

border

lesson

гаге

rubbish

two; and

behind, after

rear, hind

since, after

ice hockey

far, distant

unconnected

my darling

to join

bell

sheep

food

menu

throat

between

to be connected

alliance, union

light bay (horse)

a night; 24 hours

to spend a night

second (main)

course

north

to devote

trot

hard

cheek

үзэсгэлэн	exhibition	үхэр	cow, ox	хамаарах	to belong to, to	жатан
X6EA	to see; to study;	YX9X	to die		apply to	Xatrax
	to try	Φ		хамаг	whole	
уйл ажиллагаа	activities	фабрик	factory	хамар	nose	хатир
dearingA	factory	Франц	France	хамгийн	most	хатуу
аж үйлдвэр	industry	франц	French	<b>хам</b> т (+ gen.	together	хацар
<b>үйлдвэрлэ</b> л	production	X		or com.)		хачин
үйлс	activities; cause	xaaryyp?	which way?	хамтарсан	joint	хашаа
eenlappaky	service	хаалга(н)	door, gate	хамтран	to collaborate	RHH
PICLPLÄY	waiter/waitress;	ISSH	khan, emperor	ажиллах		жийд
	assistant	хаана	where?	хамтрах	to unite	хийх
хеприйу	to serve	Xaax	to open	хана(н)	wall; lattice-wall	XHJI
үймээн	tumult	хаачих	to go where?		section of a	хиртүүлэх
ry rcy	not	(with 69?)	6		ger	цеерих
хедду	to stay, to	XARIUAA	where to?	хангамж	supply	хесрих
	remain	хавар	spring	хангарьд	Garuda, King of	
улэг гүрвэл	dinosaur	хавлах	to swell		Birds	ховор
үндэс (үндсэн)	root, nation;	хавирга(н)	rib	XAHPAX	to satisfy	xor
	basis	XABTAC(H)	file, pack, folder	ханш(н)	exchange rate	хоёр
<b>үндэслэх</b>	to base on	хавчуулах	to insert, to tuck	хар	black	хойд
үндсэн хууль	constitution		in	жарамсал	regret	<b>хойно</b> (+ ger
үнэ(н)	price, value, cost	хавь	vicinity	харандаа	pencil	or abl.)
хецену	to appreciate, to	хагалах	to break	харах	to look, to face	хойт
	value	xarac	half	харваа	shooting	xožm (+ abl.
<b>Нен</b>	truth	хад(в)	rock, cliff	харваач	archer	хожкей
үнэнч	loyal	хадаас(н)	nail	харвах	to shoot	хол
үнэт	valuable	хадах	to pin on	харгуй	path	холбогдох
йетену	expensive	хажуу	side	харилцаа	relations	холболтгүй
унэхээр	indeed	хазаар	bridle	харин	but	холбоо(н)
үнээ(н)	cow	хайнаг	yak-cow cross	хариулах	to answer; to	холбох
ур дун	result	хайрт	my dear		repay	хонгор
<b>PRINTERIOR</b>	continuation	хайрцаг	box, packet	кариулт	change	хонгор минь
xenyyæqy	to multiply	хайч(н)	scissors	мөнгө(н)	~	TOHOL
Ac(H)	hair	калаалга	heating	хариундага	responsibility	хонох
ycer	script, letter	халаах	to heat	харих	to return	хонх(н)
үүгээр	around here	халбага(н)	spoon	харуул	guard	хонь (хонин)
үүд(н)	door, gate	халих	to soar	харуулах	to turn, to cause	хоол(н)
үүл(н)	cloud	халуун	hot		to face	хоолны цэс
фунцер	breed	халууны шил	thermometer	харц(н)	look	хоёрдугаар
үүний	this one's; his,	халуурах	to be feverish	харь (харийн)	foreign, alien	KOOE
	her, its	хамаагуй	it doesn't	xacax	minus; to deduct	хоолой
үүрэгт ажил	duties	•	matter	хатагтай	Mrs, Miss; lady	кооронд
			711.411.41		,	

хорих	to secure,	хувилуур	duplicator
	restrain,	хувщас	clothing
	confine	хувь нэмэр	contribution
XOPOO(H)	district	хувьсгал	revolution
хороолол	residential	хувьсгалч	revolutionary
	district		(noun)
XOT	town	хувыцаа	share
нопо потох	everyone	хувьцаа	shareholder
хошуу	muzzle	PTHIIIMEEE	
хөвүүн	boy, son	хугалах,	to break
(хөвгүүн)		хугарах	
хөгжүүлэх	to develop	хугацаа	period
хөдлөх	to move, to set	худал	lie
	off, to get	худалдаа	trade
	busy	худалдаачин	trader
хөдөлмөр	labour	худалдагч	shop assistant
хөдөлмөрчин	worker, toiler	худалдан авах	to buy
ходоо	countryside	худалдах	to sell
хөл	leg, foot	хулгайч	thief
хөддөх	to freeze	хулгана	mouse
хөлс(н)	fee, wages; sweat	хундага(н)	glass, goblet
хөнгөн	light	хундагалах	to pour
хөңдлөн	across	хур бороо	rain
	(crossword);	хураах	to collect
	crossways	хурал	assembly:
хөндлөн гарах	to go across		conference
хөөх	to drive	хуралдах	to meet.
	(animals)	-38	assemble
хөрвүүлэг	translation	хурдан	fast
хөргөгч	refrigerator	хуруу	finger, toe
хөрөнгийн	stock exchange	хуруун зай	(torch) battery
бирж	arout anathriga	хурц	sharp, acute
херенге(н)	capital (money)	хутга(н)	knife
XOX(H)	breast	хуудас(н)	form, sheet
хөх	dark blue	хуучин	old
хөхүүр	koumiss bag		fried meat
хөшөө	monument	хуушуур	
	barracks	9710181	dumplings
хуаран	timetable	хүзүү	neck
хуваарь, хувиар		хүйтрэх	to grow cold
хуваах	to divide	хүйтэв	cold
хувилах	to divide, to	хүлэх	to tie up, to
	distribute		bind

хүлээн авах	to receive	KOM KOMESO	measures
хеекүх	to receive; to	хэмжих	to measure
	wait	хэн	who?
хүн	man; person	хэн нэгэн хүн	someone
хүндэт	respected,	хэнийх	whose?
	merited	хэрэв тийм бол	in that case
хүнс(н)	foodstuffs	хэрхэх	to do what?
хүргэх	to deliver	xəpər	matter
.mon +) <b>летqyx</b>	up to, limit	ажил хэргээр	on business
хүрэн	brown	хэрэггүй	unnecessary
хүрэх	to reach, to	хэрэглэх	to use
	arrive	хэрэгтэй	necessary
хүрээ(н)	monastery	хэрэм(н)	wall; fortress
хүрээлэн	institute	хэсэг	section
хусэлт	request	хэтэрхий	too much
хусэх	to wish	хялбар дөхөм	easy, convenient
хүү	son	жямж	cheap
хүүхэд	child	хямдрах	to reduce the
хүүхэн	girl		price
(н)Рүх	strength, power	Хятад	China
хучит	powerful	жатад	Chinese
хэвийн байдал	normal state	Ц	
хэдий	although; how	<b>цаана</b> (+ gen.)	beyond, that
	much?		side of
хэдий тийм	however, all the	цаас(н)	paper
боловч	same	<b>цаат</b> (+ abl.)	further
желдук йидек	till when?	ЦАГ	time; clock,
хэдийний	of which (day)?		watch
хэдэд	at what time?	цаг агаар	weather
хэдэн	how many?	цаг уурч	weather
	several		forecaster
диедех	on what date?	цагийн хуваарь	timetable
хэзээний	always, of old	цагаан	white
хэл(н)	tongue, language	цагаан будаа	rice
хэлбэр	form, kind	цай	tea
хэлмэрч	interpreter	цалин(г)	wage, salary
хэлтэс	department	цам	lama dance
хенаепех	to discuss	цамц(н)	shirt
хэлэх	to speak, to	цанаар гулгах	to go skiing
	say	царайлах	to look like
жэм	degree	цас(н)	snow
овор хэмжээ	dimensions	цас орох	to snow

цахилгаан	electric,	чармайх	to try, to do	шатах	to burn, to burn	9д	thing
	electricity;		one's best		out	эд юмс	things
	lightning	чацаргана	sea buckthorn	шатахуув	fuel	эдлэх	to use
цемент	cement	чемодан	suitcase	шахам	almost	хувыцаа	shareholder
цирк	circus	413	you (singular,	папра	religion	PINIMEEE	
цол	title		child or close	приг	like	элбэг дэлбэг	plenty, plentiful
понх(н)	window		friend)	шитэх	to inlay	элс(н)	sand
Цохилт	ticking	чиглэл	direction	шийлвэр	decision	элсэн чихэр	granulated sugar
цохих	to tick	чийдэн(г)	lamp	хедйни	to decide	PLE	messenger
цем	all	чийдэнгийн	light bulb	шил(н)	bottle; glass	элчин сайд	ambassador
цөөн	several; a few	Перы	ngin out	нудний шил	glasses	элчин дам(н)	embassy
цергий	cream	гар чийдэн(г)	torch	шилбэ(н)	shin	элэг(элгэн)	liver
цуг (+ com.)	together	чиний	yours, thy	DITHE	sign	эм, эмэгтэй	woman, female
пугтаа	all together	чинээ	-sized, of the	пинэ	new	9M	medicine
цуглах	to gather		size	RETTERRIT	reform	эмнэлэг	hospital
пус(ан)	blood	чих(н)	ear	шивэттэх	to rebuild, to	PMC	doctor, physician
цуу(н)	vinegar	чихэр	sugar; sweets		modernize	эмээл	saddle
цэвэр	neat, clean	ЧОНО	wolf	ширээ	table	энгэр	flap, lapel
цэвэр бичиг	handwriting	чөдөр	hobble	шницель	schnitzel	энд	here
дэвэрлэх	to clean	хөлөөлөг	to free, to	щороо	dust, earth	энх тайван	peace
пэг	sales point;		release	шохой	chalk, lime	3H3	this
	point, full	чулуу	stone	шөл(н)	soup	энэхүү	this very one
	stop	чухал	important	шөнө	night	эр, эрэгтэй	man, male
Цэлмэг	clear, cloudless	чухам	actually	шене орой	late at night	эргэлт	turnover
цэлмэх	to clear up	Ш		шувуу	bird	эргэх	to go round
дэнгэлдэх	stadium	шаардагдах	to be demanded	шугам	line, route	эрдэм	knowledge.
хүрээлэн		шаардлага	demand	шударга	loyal, just		science
цэнхэр	light blue	шавар	mud	(шудрага)		эрдэм	research
цэрэг	soldier, army,	market	insect	шулуун	straight	CERTAIN CHILD	
	troops	шагай	ankle, ankle-	шуудаг	wrestler's trunks	эрдэмгэн	scholar
цэс	list		bone	шуудан(г)	post, postage	эрдэнэ	jewel
педел	flower	шагнал	award	шуурга(н)	wind storm	эрдэнийн	precious
цэцэрлэг	garden	шагнах	to award	шуд(н)	tooth	эрс	sharp, direct
цээж(н)	chest	Шампанск	champagne	шудэнз	match(es)	эрт	early
Ч		шампунь	shampoo	шуү	certainly	эртний	ancient
чадамгай	skilfully	шанага(н)	ladle	еетүүш	cuphoard	днем пууде	health
чацах	to be able	шар	yellow	шүүс(н)	juice	эрх	power(s)
чанар	quality	шар айраг	beer	Э		эрхэм	dear, honoured
чанартай	in the nature of,	шар лууван	carrot	эвгүй	nasty	эрхлэгч	manager
	by way of	шарах	to roast	PIE	elder sister	эрхлэх	to be in charge
чанах	to boil	тосонд шарах	to fry	STRONG	vowel	эрхтэн	limbs, organs
чанга	firm, strict	шархирах	to ache	эд	these	дотор эрхтэн	internal organs

эрч	intensity		foot
90	not, doesn't	явган зорчигч	pedestrian
эсвэл	either or		pavement
эсгий	felt	явдал	event
<b>ЭСГЭХ</b>	to cut	явуулах	to send; to carry
ЭX	mother		out
9X(H)	source (river),	ABUTARX	to go together
	beginning	R	exactly
TEIRE	beginning	ядах	to be hardly
SMISK	to begin		able
эхнэр	wife	ядраж	to tire
TELLE	father	ядуу	роог
эцэс	end	язгуур	line of descent
39 <b>X</b>	mum, mother	язгуурын	original
99ЛЖ	shift, turn	япангуяа	especially
Ю		BBMR	goat
юйрэх	to fall to pieces	ямар	what (kind of)?
NOM	thing, something;	яндан(г)	stove pipe
	is/are	янькуур	cigarette(s)
юм уу	or; either or	SHS	form, kind
loy	what?	бүрийн	all kinds, all
R			sorts
яам(н)	ministry	Ноп	Japan
яарах	to hurry	ношк	Japanese
SAX	to do what?	ярна	talk, speech,
явах	to go		conversation
ABTAH	low	ярих	to speak, talk
явган(аар)	to walk, go on	AC(B)	bone

### **Abbreviations**

АНУ	Америкийн Нэгдсэн Улс
	United States of America
Ба	бавсан
	Friday
БНМАУ	Бүгд Найрамдах Монгол Ард Улс
	People's Republic of Mongolia (1924-1992)
БНСУ	Бугд Найрамдах Солонгос Улс
	Republic of Korea
БНХАУ	Бугд Найрамдах Хятад Ард Улс
	People's Republic of China

Construction Troops  Бя/Бям  бямба  Saturday
Saturday
r.m. rex mer
et cetera
Да/Дав даваа
Monday
ИБУИНВУ Их Британи Умард Ирланди Нэгдсэн Вант Улс
United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Irelan
Лх/Лхаг лхагва
Wednesday
metres per second; 1 m/cex is just under 2.25 mph
МАХН Монгол Ардын Хувьсгалт Нам
Mongolian People's Revolutionary Party
МИАТ Монголын Иргэний Агаарын Тээвэр
Mongolian Civil Air Transport Company
Монцамэ Монголын Цахилгаан Мэдээний агентлаг
Mongolian News (Telegraph) agency
МСДН Монголын Социал-Демократ Нам
Mongolian Social Democratic Party
МУИС Монгол Улсын Их Сургууль
Mongolian State University
МУАН Монгол Үндэсний Ардчилсан Нам
Mongolian National Democratic Party
Мя/Мяг мягмар
Tuesday
Ня
Sunday
ОХУ Оросын Холбооны Улс
Russian Federation
Пу/Пур пурэв
Thursday
TOF TOFPOT
tögrög, tugrik
түц тергингин үйлчилгээний цэг
fast service point (shop, stall)
УАЗ Уральский Автозавод
Urals Motor Vehicle Works (former USSR)
УБ Улаанбаатар
Ulan Bator

m/x

УБТЗ Улаанбаатар Темер Зам Ulan Bator Railway УИХ (Монгол) Улсын Их Хурал

Mongolian Great Khural

post office box (number)

# English-Mongolian vocabulary

A		alliance	холбоо
to be able	чадах	almost	шахам
about		also	бас
(concerning)	тухай	ambassador	элчин сайд
about (roughly)	мире	ambler	жороо
above	дээнг	America	Америк
accountant	нягтлан бодогч	ancient	эртний
accounts	санхуугийн	and	болон, бөгөөд;
	тайлан		хоёр
to ache	шархирах,	ankle	шагай
	өвдөх	anniversary	OĎ
achievement	ололт,	another	нөгөө
to make	танилцах	antelope	OOHO
acquaintance		apartment	байр
across	хөндлөн	to appoint	TOMBHOX
activities	үйлс	to appreciate	хепену
activity	(үйл)	to approve	сайшаах
actually	чухам; ер 🔤	archer	<b>Харваач</b>
acute	хурц	archery	сур харвах
to add	нэмэх	archery target	сур
to adjust	тохируулах	armchair	кресло
administration	засаг захиргаа	army	цэрэг
in advance	урьдаар	to arrive	хүрэх
advice	зевлел	arrow	сум
to advise	зовлох	artist	зураач
afterwards	дараа	to ask	асуух
again	дажиад	assembly	хурал
age	HAC	assets	artes
aid	тусламж	to assist	туслах
aim, purpose	зорилго	assistance	тусламж
all	бүх, цөм, бүгд	atom	атом

attaché	awame	beer	шар айраг,
attack	довтолгоо		пиво
to attack	довтлох, халдах	to do beforehand	урьдчилех
to pay attention	анхаарах	to begin	гарах: эхлэх
to attract	Tatax	beginning	
assembly	хурал	behind	хойно
autumn	намар	Beijing, Peking	Бээжин
available	сул	belief	сусэг, бишрэл
avenue	ерген челее	bell	хонх
award	шагнал	to belong to	хамаарах
axe	сух	below	доош
В		belt	бус
back (rear)	ар	Berlin	Берлин
back (spine)	нуруу	besides	гадна
bad	муу	to do one's best	чармайх
not bad	гайгүй, муугүй	better	дээр
badge	тедмет	beyond	цаана
hag	уут	big	BX,
baggage	ачаа	bill	тооцоо
ballet	бужгэн жүжиг	bin	сав
banana	гадил	bird	шувуу
bank	банк	biscuits	печень,
banknote	дэвсгэр, менген		нарийн боов
	тэмдэгт	a bit (more)	арай
banner	Tyr	to be bitten	хатгуулах
bar	баар	black	хар
barracks	хуаран	blacksmith	дархан
barrier	боомт	blood	нус
to base on	үндэслэх	blood clot	THE REAL PROPERTY.
bathtub	вани	to blow (storm)	тавих
battery	зай	dark blue	хөх
torch battery	хуруун зай	light blue	цэнжэр
battle	тулалдаан	body	бие
to be	байх	to boil	-
to be together	байцгаах	bone	яc
beautiful	roë	book	_
beauty	100	to book	бүрттүүлэх
because	учир, учраас,	(ticket, etc.)	
	тул	boots (modern)	ботинк
to become	болох	boots	гутал
hed	op	(traditional)	

border	XELT	Саіго	Канр
born (to be)	төрөх	to calculate	тооцоолох,
boss	дарга	to carculate	тооцох
bottle	пил	to call (name)	нэрлэх
bow (archery)	нум	to call (phone)	дуудах, утасдах
box	хайрцаг	camel	TOMOS
boy	хөвгүүн	campaign	аян дайн
bracelet	бугуйвч	(military)	and Marris
brain	тархи	can	лааз
brandish	далайх	to cancel	болиулах
brandy	коньяк	candle	лаа
bread	талх	canned food	консерв
to break	хагалах	capital (city)	нийслэл
break (to take a)		capital	хөрөнгө
		(investment)	AOPONI O
breast (female)	XOX	,	олзлох
breast (male)	өвөр	to capture carburettor	карбюратор
breed	деллуу		
hridle	хазаар	carrot	шар лууван
to bring	авчрах	to carry out	явуулах
Britain	Англи (Улс)	cart cash desk	тэрэг
British	англи		Kacc
broad	ерген	cashmere hair	ноолуур
broaden	<b>ергежүүлэх</b>	cave	агуй
brother, elder	ax	cement	цемент
brother, younger		centimetre	сантиметр
brown	жүрэн	centre	ТОВ
to build	байгуулах	ceremony	ёслол
in bulk.	бөөнөөр	certain, some	зарим
wholesale		certainly	шүү дээ
bureau	ООРЯОТ	chair	сандал
burger	бургер	chamber	Танким
to burn out	шатах	change, returned	хариулт менге
bus	автобус	change, small	задгай менге
on business	ажил хэргээр	change (alter)	хөлгүрө
businessman	бизнесмен	chapter	бүлэг
to get busy	хөдлөх	cheap	ДМЖ
but	гэвч, харин	to check	магадлах
butter	тос, цецгийн	cheek	хацар
	TOC	cheese	бяслаг
to buy	худалдан авах	chest (box)	авдар
C	4	chest (breast)	T(33)X
cabbage	байцаа	chicken	тахиа

chief	дарга	to have	зохиолгох
child	хүүхэд	composed	
China	Хятад	computer	компьютер,
Chinese	хятад		тооцоолуур
to choose	сонгох	concerning	тухай
cigarette(s)	янжуур	concert	концерт
cinema	кинотеатр	concrete	бетон
circus	цирк	condition	педіхен
citizen	нргэн	condom	бэшэвч
civil(ian)	иргэний	conference	хурал
clean	цэвэр	to confirm	батлах
to clean	цэвэрлэх	(statement)	
clear	тод, цэвэр	to confirm	баталгаажуулах
to make clear,	тодруулах	(booking)	
explain		to connect	залгах
clear (weather)	цэлмэг	consonant	гийгүүлэгч
to clear up	арилах	constitution	үндсэн хууль
(weather)		to construct	бүтээх
clerk	бичээч	container	CaB
cliff	хад	contents table	товъёг
clock	цаг	continuation	ургэлжиэн
clockwise	нар 🚃	contribution	хувь нэмэр
to close	XABX	conversation	яриа
to bring close	ойртуулах	cook	POOTOT
clothing	хувцас	cooker	114)11444
cloud	үүл	cooking pot	TOTOO
cloudless	цэлмэг	cool	сэрүүхэн
coach (railway)		cooperative	нэгдэл
coat	пиджак	(herding)	
overcoat	пальто	correct	30B
coffee	кофе	to correct	sacax
cold	хүйтэн	to cost	орох
to feel cold	даарах	country	орон
to grow cold	хүйтрэх	countryside	хөдөө
to collaborate	камтран	course (first,	KOOI
	<b>STREET, HAX</b>	second)	
colour	<b>өнгө</b>	to cover (over)	бүрэх
colt	даага	to cover	туулах
to come	ирэх	(distance)	
to command	Tymaax	covering	бүрээс
company	компани, пуус	cow	еенү
to compete	уралдах	crack shot	мэргэн

to craft	урлах	to develop,	барилгажуулах
cream	цецтий	build up	
cream (clotted)	өрөм	to develop,	хөгжүүлэх
to create	буй болгох	promote	
credit	399Л	dictionary	толь бичиг
to cross	хөндлөн гарах;	to die	нас барах, ухэх
	гэтл <b>э</b> х		тэнгэрт халих
crown	THT9M	difficult	амаргүй; бэрх
cucumber	ергест кэмх	difficulty	бэрхшээл
culture	соёл	dimensions	овор
cup	аята	dinosaur	үлэг гүрвэл
cupboard	шүүгээ	direct, sharp	эрс
curd, dried	ааруул	direction	3Yr
curd, sour milk #	аврц	director	захирал
to cut (injure)	эсгэх	director general	еренский
to cut (out)	OPTHOX		зажирал
Cyrillic	кирип(л)	to make dirty	хиртүүлэх
D		to discuss	хэлэлцэх
dad	8.8.B	disliking for	дургүй
dance	бужиг	to be dislocated	мултрах
daughter	OXEH	to display	дэлгэх, тусгах
day	едер	to dissolve	yycax
day after	негеедер	distance	38/1
tomorrow		distant	100
dear, honoured	эрхэм	to distribute	хувилах
debt	өр	district,	хороо, хороолол
to decide	пинидэх	residential	
decision	шийдвэр	district, rural	СУМ
to decline	супрах	district, urban	район; дүүрэг
decree	зарлиг	divide (share)	хуваах
to deduct	XACAX	to divide up	ангилах
degree	хэм	to do	хийх
to deliver	хүргэх	doctor	PMC
demand	шаардлага	document(ation)	баримт бичиг
to be demanded	шаардагдах	dog	нохой
to democratise	ардчилах	don't!	биттий! бүү!
demonstration	MINISTER OF THE PARTY OF THE PA	door	ууд, хаалга
deodorant	дезодрант	dragon	пуу
department	Tacar,	to draw	зурах
destiny	38.98	dress	KOCTTOM,
to destroy	сенеех	drink	ундаа, уух юм
to be destroyed	суйдэх	to drink	уух

to drive	xeex	to equal	тэнцэх	father	9E9r
(livestock)		equipment	техееремж	to fear	айх
driver (vehicle)		especially	ялангуяа	feature	овщиог
dumplings	банш, бууз,	Europe	Европ	feIt	эсгий
	хуушуур	European	европ	female	эм, эмэгтэй
dung (dry)	аргал	evening	орой	to fetch	авчрах
dung box	аргалын	this evening	енее орой	to be feverish	халуурах
	дервелж	event	явдал	to fight	байлдах
duplicator	хувилуур	every	бүр; болгон	to fill in, up, out	беглех
dust	шороо	everybody	бүгд, хүн бүр	fillet	гол мах
dustbin, dustcart	хогийн	everywhere	даяар	film (cinema)	KHIHO
duties	үүрэгт 🚃 🚃	exactly	SOT TO	finances	санкүү
to dwell	нутаглах	example	жишээ	to find	олох
dwelling	сууц	for example	жишээлбэл	fine!	зүгээр
E		exchange	солилцох	finger	хуруу
each	бур	to be exhausted	дуусах	to finish	дуусах
ear	чих	exhibit	үзмэр	fire	ran
early	эрт	exhibition	үзэсгэлэн	firewood	түлээ
earth	шороо	to expand	өргөжих	firm (strict)	чанга
east	дорно, зүүн	expenditure	зарлага	first (of all)	анх(ны)
easy	амар	expensive	үнэтэй	first (of series)	нэгдэх,
to eat	идэх	experiment	турпплага		нэгдугээр
egg	ондог	to export	гаргах	first (leading)	тэргүүн(ий)
either or	юм уу	external	гадуур	to come first	түрүүлэх
elbow	тохой	eye	нуд	fish	загас
electric(ity)	цахилгаан	F	-	to fit	ерех
element	махбод	face	нуур	to be fixed	TOITOX
elephant	3 <b>88</b> H	to face	xapax	flap	энгэр
embassy		fact	баримт	flat (apartment)	байр
emperor	жаян	in fact	тухайлбал	floor	шал
to emphasize	тэмдэглэх	factory	уйлдвэр, фабрик	floor (storey)	давкар
enclosure	хашаа	faith	сусэг	flour	гурил
end	эцэс, адаг	falcon	начин	to flourish	дэлгэрэх,
engineer	инженер	to fall	унах		мандах
England	Англи (Улс)	fame	аддар	flower	цэцэг
English	англи	famous	нэрд гарсан	to flurry	будрах
to enquire	лавлах	to be famous	дуурсагдах	foa!	унага
to enter	орох	far (distant)	xon	folder	Xabtac
enterprise	аж ахуй	far (e.g. east)	алс	food	хоол, идээ, зоо
entire	даян	farther	цааш	foodstuffs	хунс
entrance (flats)	подъезд	fast	хурдан; түргэн	foot	хөл
equal	тэнцүү	fat	90X	for, to	телее

foreign (alien) харь, харийн foreign (external) гадаад to forget мартах to forgive уучлах fork **c**9p99 form (paper) хууцас хэлбэр, янз form (shape) to found, to байгуулах build to be founded байгуулагдах foundations суурь France Франц to free хөлөөлөг free time 3**8**B to freeze хөддөх French франц Friday баасан friend найз, нехер in front өмнө to get frostbitten хөлдөөх fruit fruit (stewed) KOMITOT to fry тосонд шарах fuel шатахуун; түлш fund CAH funny, strange 10. furniture мебель, модон ЭДЛЭЛ G games, наадам traditional garage гарааш garden цэцэрлэг gas cylinder хийн баллон gate үүд, каалга to gather пуглах gelding AFT TIB general еренхий genitals бэлэг gentle зеелен

German

Germany

герман

Герман (Улс)

to get off	буух	to hang up	ешех
to get up	босох	(coat)	
giant	аврага	to happen	тохиолдох
girl	жүүхэн	happiness	жаргал
glass (material)	THEFT	to be happy	жаргах
glass (tumbler)	axra	hare	туулай
to go	XBAX	harvest	ургац
to go away	одох	he	тэр
to go round	тойрох, эргэх	head	толгой
to go together	явщаях	head (first, lead)	туруу
goat	ямав	health	бие, эрүүл
Gobi	LOBP		мэнц
gold	arr	to hear	сонсох, дуулах
golf	гольф	heart	зурх
good	сайн, аятайхан	to heat	халаах
good as to	сайтай	heating	халаалга
goodbye!	баяртай	heaven	тэнгэр
gorge	MJB	hectare	гектар
government	засгийн газар	to heighten	өндөржүүлэх
gown	дээл	her	ууний, түүний,
grammar	хэл зүй		шь
grandchildren	au, 399	herdsman	малчин
great-	гуч	here	энд
grandehildren		here (take it)	май
to grant	олгох	here (this here)	наад
grapes	усан үзэм	here (hither)	нааш
to grasp	attax	hero	баатар
grave	булт	high	ендер
greatly	нхэд	hip	гуя
green	ногоон	hire	прокат
grey	саарал	his	ууний, тууний,
grey-haired	буурал		НЬ
to grow	yprax;	history	түүх
guard	харуул	to hit the target	онох
guest	30ЧИН	hitching line	уяа
guidebook	лавлах бичиг	hobble	чедер
H		hockey (ice)	хоккей
hair	YC	holiday	амралт
half	хагас	to hold	барих
hall	тасалгаа, танхим	homeland	төрсөн нутаг
hamburger	бургэр	hoof	туруу
hand	rap	hopes	среел

horse	морь	intensity	Pqe
horse racing	морь уралдах	intention	санаа
horse(head)	морин хуур	to take an	сонирхох
fiddle		interest	
hospital	эмнэлэг	interesting	сонирхолтой
hot	халуун	internal	дотуур
hotplate	LLILWYYK	interpreter	<b>Р</b> Фемлех
housecoat	халаад	investment	хөрөнгө
to be hungry	олсох		оруулалт
hunting	AH	iodine	йод
to hurry	дарах	iron	төмөр
to hurt	овдох	is (are)	байна; бий; юм
husband	нөхөр	it	тэр
I		its	үүнжй, түүнжй,
I	би		Hb
ice cream	мехеелдес	J	
identity	паспорт	jacket	куртка
document		jam	жигнэмэг;
illiteracy	бичиг үл мэдэх		варень
	явдал	Japan	Япон (Улс)
illness	нирав	Japanese	ноше
import	импорт	to join	холбох
important	чухал;	joint (body)	уе
	холбогдолтой	joint (together)	хамтарсан
to improve	сайжрах	joke	шог
incorrect	буруу	joy	баяр
increase	нэмэлт	juice	шуус
indeed	үнэхээр	junction	уулзвар
individually	амивраа	junk	новии, хог
indoors	дотуур	just	шударга
industry	аж үйлдвэр		(шудрага)
information	мэдээ	K	
to injure	гэмтээх	key	тулхүүр
to be injured	тэмтэх	khan	хаан
to inlay	<b>ШИГТГЭХ</b>	kidney	бөөр
insect	шавых	to kill	алах
to insert	хавчуулах, хийх	kilo(gram)	кило(грамм)
inside	дотор	kilometre	кинометр
institute	BIRCHIPPAYI	kind, sort	төрөл, хэлбэр
	хүрээлэн	kingdom	вант улс
insufficient	дутуу	kitchen	гал тогоо
insurance	даатгал	knee	евдег
	, .		

мэдэх эрдэм янз бүр айраг хөхүүр	liabilities library life light light bulb	пассив номын сан амь гэрэл чийдэнгийн
янз бүр айраг хөхүүр	life light	амь гэрэл
янз бүр айраг хөхүүр	light	гэрэл
айраг хөхүүр		
хөхүүр	light bulb	
		шы
***	lightning	цахилгаан
хөдөлмөр	liking for	дуртай
үгүй		шиг
хатагтай, хатан	to like	таалах
нуур	limb	мөч
лам	limit	хүртэл
цам	line (descent)	язгуур
<b>чи</b> йдэн	1	зураас
газар		MATCAAX
буух	lion	арслан
		жагсаалт
		сонсох
		бичиг усгийн
	,	мэдлэг
*	litre	литр
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		бага
		жаал, жаахан
*		амьпрах
		суух
	1	элэг
- '		MAJI
		малчин
		999/1
		Лондон
		урт
_	-	удаан
	_	харц
		харах
		339H
		алдагдал
		явган
		шударга
	20,141	(шудрага),
песиих		журамт,
		үнэнч
	үгүй катагтай, хатан нуур лам цам чийдэн	итуй like (similar)  катагтай, катан to fike  нуур limb  пам limit  пам line (descent)  чийдэн line (drawn)  газар to line up  буух lion  кэл list  энгэр to fisten  уурга literacy  шене орой  дараа litre  жорлон, бие little  засах газар a little  давхар to live (dwell)  оройлох, гэргүүлэх livestock  удирдагч livestock herder  гүрүү, loan  тэргүүн(ий) London  гарах look  зав to look  нимбэгний look  зав to look  нимбэгний losses  уулд loyal  кичээл

Leveler		and dall a landle a	40-140-40
lucky	хийморьтой	middle, in the	дунд
lung	уушиг	middle	
de luxe	люкс	milk	сүү
M		milk (sour)	тараг
machine	Машин	of a mind to	саналтай
main	гол	mine	уурхай
mainly	голлон	mineral water	рашаан ус
to make	XIRIX	ministry	RAM
to make	урлах	minus	XBCBX
artistically		minute	минут
male	эр, эрэгтэй	Miss, Mrs	хатагтай
man	хүн; бүстэй	missing	алга
	(хүн), эр,	to make	алдах
	эрэгтэй	mistakes	
manager	<b>РІСІХ</b> ЯЕ	mister, Mr	ноён
to manage, be	эрхлэх	to mix	найруулах
in charge		modern	орчин цагий
Manchu	-	to modernize	принэттэх
many	олон	just a moment	одоохон
how many?	хэдэн	for the moment	одоохондоо
market	9AX	monastery	хийд
to marry off	хелүүлдег	Monday	даваа
to get married	гэрлэх	money	менте
mask	баг	Mongolia	Монгол (Уло
masses	ард түмэн	Mongolian	монгол
matches	шудэнз	monk	лам
matter	xəpər	monkey	PEM
it doesn't matter		month	сар
meaning	утта	monument	хөшөө
meaningful;	учиртай	moon	сар
should	,,	more than	гаруй, илүү
to measure	хэмжих	morning	оглое
meat	Max	Moscow	Москва
medal	медаль	most	ихэнх
medicine	ЭМ	the most	хамгийн
to meet	уулзах	mother	9Х
to hold a	хуралдах	mountain	уул
meeting	white was the same of the same	mountainous	уулархаг
member	FZIIDAZE	mouse	хулгана
memorial	гишүүн	mouth	am
	дурсгал	that much	тедий
menu	хоолны цэс		
method	apra	too much	хэтэрхий

to multiply	<b>уржүүдэх</b>	normal	хэвийн
mum	Ib—I Isose	north	умарц, хойно
muscle	булчин	nose	хамар
museum	музей	not	-гүй; үл, эс
must	ёстой	not (this but)	биш
muzzle	хошуу	now (this out)	
my	NOLLY)	number	одоо,
N			700
Naiman	Найман	O	сувилагч
name			anthor
name (honorific)	нэр	object	ayan
		ocean	далай
name (father's)	OBOL	OK (well, so	
to name	нэрлэх,	old	хуучин
	нэрийдэх	Olympics	ОПИМПКИЛ
nasty	эвгүй	on, onto	дээр
nation	улс	oneself	өөрийгөө,
nationality	<b>Ундэс</b>		өөртөө
nature	байгаль	onion	СОНГИНО
nature reserve	дархан цаазат	only	Ганцхан
	газар	to open	OHIOAMIOX,
near	дэргэд, ойр		задлах, хаах
quite near	ойрхон	to be open	OHTOEX
neat	пэвэр	opening	
necessary	ёстой, хэрэгтэй	орега	дуурь
neck	жүзүү	opinion	бодол
needle	зүү	OT	юм уу,
new	шинэ		бузоу
newly	тулгар	orange (colour)	улбар
established		orange (fruit)	амтат журж
news	сайхан	orange juice	журжийн шүүс
newspaper	and the same of	order (award)	одон
next	дараагийн	to order	
next to	дэргэд	organization	байгууллага
nice	сайхан,	organs (body)	дотор эрхтэн
	аятайхан	ornament	гоёл
night	шене: хоног	other	негее, еер
to spend a night	хонох	our (ours and	
no	угуй	yours)	
nomad	нирледуун	our (ours not	бидний
to nomadize	нуух	yours)	
none	алга	to go out	гарах
noon	уд	outside	гадаа

on one's own	ганцаараа	
other	бусад	
one's own	еерийн	
overcoat	пальто	
owner	A.	
ox	үхэр	
P		
pack (file)		
packet	хайрцаг	
palace	орд	
palaces	орд харш	
paper	цаас	
parade		
park	цэцэрлэг	
parliament	парламент	
to participate	оролцох	
party (political)	нам	
pass	өнгөрөх	
pass away	нас барах	
pass (mountain)		
passport	паспорт	
path	харгуй	
pavement	явган зам	
to pay	20000	
payment	телбер	
peace	тайван	
peaceful	тайван	
peculiar	евермец	
pedestrian	зорчигч	
pencil	харандаа	
people	улс	
pepper	поваарь	
perhaps	магадгүй	
perhaps?	болов уу?	
period of time	хугацаа: үе	
permanently	байнга	
to be permitted	болох	
person	нух	
petrol	бензин	
to phone	утасдах	
phonetics	зүй	
physician		

гахай pig to pitch (a ger) барих place газар to be placed тавигдах plane нисэх онгоц plate TABAL тавтай pleasant to please таалагдах plenty зендее; элбэг дэлбэг plug (electric) залгуур pocket карман; калаас point ЦЭГ pole гадас poor ядуу 30014 porter possibility бололщоо post (postage) шуудан post (column) багана potato ТӨМС to pour хундагалах power(s) эрх powerful хучит ереел prayers precious эрдэнийн pregnant жирэмсэн prescription жор to preserve дархлах (protect) president сренхийлегч to press дарах pressure даралт сайхан pretty prime minister сренхий сайд prince ноён printed дармал to be taken баривчлагдах prisoner probably бололтой product **Бүүхе**длеетүр productivity аппиг ппим profit amur

programme	программ	to receive	жүлээх, хүлээн
progress	ахиц		abax
prohibited	хориотой	recently	саяхан
to promise	апдах	receptionist	жижүүр
pronunciation	дуудлага	record player	тоглуулагч
proper	зүйтэй	to recount	өгүүлэх
to protect	батлах	red	улаан
province	аймаг	to reduce	татах
public	нийт	to reduce (price)	хямдруулах
publish	raprax	to reflect	тусгах
pull	Tatax	reform	шинэтгэл,
to be put	тавигдах		пелуениш
to put out	raprax	refrigerator	хергегч
Q		region	орон
quality	чавар	to register	бүртгэх
queen	хатан хаан	registration	буртгэл
question	асуулт	regret	харамсал
queue	оочир, дараалал	reins	жолоо
quiet	амар	relations	харилцаа
quick	түргэн; хурдан	relatives	төрөл
R		to release	хөцөөцөг
race	үндэс	reliable	найдвартай
to race	уралдах	religion	шашин
radish	улаан лууван	to remain	хедду
rafter (ger)	унь	to remember	дурсах, санах
railway	төмөр зам	repair	засвар
rain	бороо, хур	republic	бүгд найрамдах
	бороо		улс
to rain	бороо орох	to repeat	давтах
rainbow	солонго	repeatedly	удаа дараа
to raise	мандуулах,	to represent	телеелех
	eprex,	representative	РІӨЦӨӨЦӨТ
	хепуушнеед	requirements	болзол
range	нуруу	research	эрдэм
(mountain)			шинжилгээ
rat	үхэр хулгана	respected	хүндэт
to reach	херух	to rest	амрах
to read	унших	restaurant	ресторан
reading	уншлага	result	үр дүн
ready	бэлэн	to return	харих; бущах
really	ёстой	revenue	орлого
rear	ар	revolution	хувьстал

revolutionary	хувьсталч	sash	бус
(noun)		to satisfy	хангах
rib	хавирга	Saturday	бямба
rice	цагаан будаа	saucepan	кострюль
rich	баян	saxaul	заг
riches	баялаг	to say	гэх, хэлэх, ярих
to ride	ynax	schnitzel	шницель
right (side)	баруун	scholar	эрдэмтэн
right (correct)	зуйтэй	school	сургууль
to ring (of a	дуугарах	science	эрдэм
bell)		scissors	хайч
to ring (to	утасдах	script	Acat
phone)		sea	далай
river	гол, мерен	seal	тамга
road	38M	season	улирал
to roast	шарах, жигнэх	scal	суудал
rocks, cliff	хад	second (of time)	секунд
rocket	пуужин	second	засуул
Rome	Ром	(wrestling)	
roof cover (ger)	дээвэр	section	X9C9F
roof pole (ger)	унь	to secure	хорих
roof post (ger)	багана	security	аюулгүй
roof ring (ger)	тооно	to see	үзэх
room	ерее, тасалгаа	selection	сонголт
root	ундес	self	<b>00</b> p
round	тегрег, дугуй	to sell	худалдах
rubbish	хог	to send	явуулах
ruin, ruined	балгас	service	ееппирийү
town		to set (type)	өрөх
Russia	Орос (Улс)	settlement	суурин
Russian	орос	to serve	үйлчлэх
S		several	хэдэн
saddle	эмээл	shampoo	шампунь
safety	аюулгүй	shape	хэлбэр, янз
salad	салат	share	хувьцаа
salary	цалин	shareholder	хувьцаа
salespoint	цэг		939МППИГЧ
salt	давс	sharp	хурц
the same	мөн	to sharpen	хелдүүсү
sample	пирхэг	she	тэр
sand	элс	sheep	1000
sandwich	бутерброд	shelf	тавиур

shin	пилбэ	snow	цас
ship	онгоц	to snow	цас орох
shirt	цамц, сорочик	social-democrat	социал-демократ
shoes	туфии, ботинк,	society	нийгэм
2110.62	паахай	socket	
to about		sofa	розетк
to shoot	харвах		днван
(archery)	6	soldier	цэрэг
to shoot (gun)	буудах	some	зарим
shooting	харвая	something	IOM
shop	дэлгүүр	sometimes	заримдаа
shop assistant	худалдагч	son	хүү; хөвгүүн
short	богино	sort	терел
short of	дутуу	all sorts	янз бүр
to shorten	богиноттох	to sound	дуугарах
shoulder	мөр	soup	men
to show	388X	source	9X
side	тал, хажуу	south	емне, урд
this side of	наана	space	зай
that side of	цаяна	to speak	гэх, хэлэх, ярих
sign	шинж; тэмдэг	special	ОНЦ
silver	менте	specific	тодорхой
to sing	дуулах	spectacles	найний пини
single (just one)	ганц	speech (report)	нител
single (simple)	дан	speech (talk)	ярна
sister (elder)	9TG	to be spent	зарцуулагдах
sister (younger)	дүү	spine	нуруу
to sit	суух	sponge cake	торт
to sit together	сууцгаах	spoon	халбага
to be situated	орших, байх	sport	спорт
situation	байдал, нехцел	to be sprained	булгарах
size (clothing)	размер, хэмжээ	to spread	дэнгэрэх
the size of	ССНИТ	spring	хавар
skilfully	чадамгай	square	талбай
skin	арьс	stadium	дэнгэлдэх
skins and hides	арьс шир		непеедух
sky	тэнгэр	stallion	азарга
to sleep	унтах	stamp (postage)	птуудангийн
sleeping	унтлага	1 11	марк
slow	удаан	stamp (rubber)	тэмдэг
small	MODERIT	to stand	зогсох
to smoke	TAMKE TATAK	standard	хэм хэмжээ
snake	могой	starting line	гарааны зурхай
Make	MUIVE	other this item	a up autom of panels

state	төр, улс	suit	KOCTIOM
station	буудал	to suit	30XHX
to stay (remain)	улдэх	suitable	хялбар дехем
to stay (take	удах	suitability	тохиромж
time)		suitcase	чемодан
to steam	уураар жигнэх	to be suited	тохирох
steering wheel	жолоо	summer	зун
stirrup	дерее	summer quarters	зуслан
stock exchange	көрөнгийн	sun	нар
	берж	sunburned	наранд
stomach	гэдэс		түлэгдсэн
stone	чулуу	Sunday	HIM
stop	зогсоол	sunflower	наранцэцэг
to stop	sorcox	suntanned	наранд шарсан
to stop (rain)	TOITOX	supply	XAHTAMIK
store	CRH	sure	лав
storey	давхар	to swell	хавдах
stove	зуух	sweets	чихэр
stove pipe	яндан	T	
straight	шулуун	table	ширээ
strange	жачин	tableware	аяга халбага
street	гудамж	tail	суул
strict	чанга	to take	abax
to strike (clock)	дуугарах	Tartar	татаар
to strive	хеерих	tasty	амттай
stroke (script)	зурам	tax	татвар
stroke (long	орхиц	taxi	Takch
final)		tea	цай
to stroke	илбэх	tea (black)	байхуу
structure	тоггоц;	to teach	cyprax
	байгуулал	teacher	багш
to struggle	хедимет	telephone	утас
student	оюутан	television	телевиз
to study	сурах, суплах	temple	сум
to be stung	каттуулах	tennis	теннис
stupa	суврага	tent	प्रका
to subtract	xacax	territory	нутаг
success	амжилт; ахиц	thank you!	баярлалаа
such	тийм, ийм	thanks to	улмаар
sugar	элсэн чихэр	that	тэр
(granulated)		that one's	түүний
sugar (lump)	<b>ё</b> отон	that way	THÊMESS

to do that	7919X	tomb	бунхан
theatre	театр	tomorrow	маргааш
their	тэдний, нь	tongue	кэл
there	THE	tooth	шүд
thermometer	халууны шил	torch	гар чийдэн
they	тэд, эд	tourism	жуулчлал
thin	HOLO	tourist	жуулчин
thing	IOM	town	хот
to think	бодох	trade	наймаа,
to be thirsty	цангах		худалдаа
this (one)	<b>9B9</b>	trader	наймаачин,
this one's	үүний		худалдаачин
to do this	ингэх	traditional	уламжлал ёсоор
thorn	өргөс	train	галт тэрэг
those	тэд, тэдгээр	transcription	галиг
throat	хоолой	to translate	орчуулах
to throw	орхих	to transmit	дамжуулах
(wrestling)		transport	унаа; тээвэр
thunder	тэнгэрийн дуу	to get transport	унаажих
Thursday	пурэв	to travel	аллах
thus	уүхыйн	trip (journey)	рейс
to tick	цохих	trot, full	хатир
ticket	билет, тасалбар	trot, easy	хатираа
ticket office	билетийн касс	trousers	брюк
ticking	цохилт	truth	унэн
to tie	боох; уях	to try (test)	үзэх
to tie up	хелух	to try (strive)	чармайх
tiger	бар	to tuck in	хавчуулах
time (hour)	Lar	(clothes)	
time (occasion)	удаа	Tuesday	мягмар
time (period)	ye	tugrik	төгрөг
timetable	цагийн хуваарь	tumult	уймээн
tin, can	лааз	turn	оочир
to tire	ядрах	to turn	харуулах
title, rank	цол	turnover	эргэлт
to (for)	телее	twins	нхэр
tobacco	TAMKE	U	
today	өнөөдөр, өнөө	ugly	муухай
toe	хуруу	Uighur	уйгар
together	хамт, цуг	Ulan Bator	Улаанбаатар
all together	цугтаа	unconnected	холболттуй
tomato	улаан лооль	under	дор
	•		-1-2

undermentioned	дор дурдсан	watch	ttmi
to understand	OTITIOX	water	yτ
unified	нэгдмэл	watt	/1 M G
union	холбоо	this way	aginta.
to unite	холбох	(direction)	
university	их сургууль	in this way, thus	ннгэж
unnecessary	хэрэггүй	we	бид
up to (until)	хүртэл	wealth	баялаг
upright	босоо	weather	цаг агаар,
to use	хереглех		тэнгэр
to put to use	ашиглах	weather	цаг уурч
V		forecaster	
vase	ваар	wedding	гэрлэх ёслол
vegetable	ногоо	Wednesday	лхагва
vegetarian	ногоон хоолтон	week	долоо хоног
vehicle	машин	well (good)	сайн
very	маш	well (OK)	38
vessel	онгоц	west	баруун, өрнө
video player	приставк, видео	what?	юу
, ,	тоглуулагч	what (kind of)?	ямар
vinegar	цуу	to do what?	яах, хэрхэх
vodka	архи	where?	хаана
voltameter	вольтметр	to where?	xaamaa
vicinity	хавь	to go where?	хавчих
to visit	очих, зочлох	which one?	аль
visitor	ЗОЧИН	of which date?	хэдийний
voice	дуу	which way?	хаагуур
vowel	эгшиг	whip	ташуур
vulture	ёл	whirlpool	эргүүлэг
W		white	цагаан
wage	цалин	who?	ХЭВ
to wait	хүлээх	whole	даян
waiter, waitress	зөөгч, үйлчлэгч	whole number	бухэл
to walk	явганаар явах	wholesale	бөөнөөр
wall (incl. tent,	хана	wide	өргөн
lattice)		wife	гэргий, эхнэр
wall (tent, felt)	туурга	wind	салхи
wall (fortress)	хэрэм	wind storm	шуурга
war	дайн	window	цонх
warm	дулаан	wine	дарс
to grow warm	дулаарах	winter	овол
	1 4		

wise man	мэргэн
wish	среел
to wish	хүсэх
wolf	ОНОР
woman	бусгуй (хүн),
	эм, эмэгтэй
wood	мод
wool	-
work	8.3KHUI
to work	
working man	хеделмерчин
world	дэлхий
world-famous 🎢	дэлхийд
	алдартай
world-wide	нихад йихиец
to be worried	бачимдах
to worry	30BOX
to worsen	муухайрах
to wrap round	opoox
to wrestle	барилдах
wrestler	бөх
wrestler (leading)	магнай
wrestler's jacket	зодог
wrestler's trunks	шуудаг

wrestling	барилдаан
wrist	бугуй
to write	бичих
writing	бичиг
wrong	буруу
X	
to be x-rayed	гэрэлд харуулах
Y	
yak	сарлаг
year	жел, он
year-end	оны эцэс
yellow	шар
yes	THĖM
yes indeed	зүйтэй
yesterday	ечигдер
you (polite	та
singular)	
you (plural)	та нар
you (thou)	dit
young	запуу
your (plural)	танай
your (singular)	таны
your (thy)	чиний
yurt	гэр

## Grammar index

abbreviations 300 addresses 247 adjectives 30 56 intensifiers 128 modifiers - brap, -gyy 127 -маар, -шгуй 38 48 -шиг 143 225 adjectives from nouns 56 57 237 adjectives from adjectives 237 adjectives from verbs 238 adverbs 30 44 69 236 age 44 arithmetic 142 articles 18 to be 18.58 because 68 calendar, animal 154 241 colours 119 126 suffixes 127 comparative 78 compass 56 57 100 243 days of the month 107 days of the week 74 100 242 decimals 186 direct speech 97 echo words 129 family relationships 45 243 farewells 31 fleeting n 20 166 fractions 186 ger 147

greetings 20 hidden g 20 if 82 indirect speech 97 interrogative particles 19 yy/yy/10y/10y 19 months 106 155 241 names 19 21 26 37 247 negatives 30 double 101 nouns 30 64 past tense 63 questions 63 verbs 30 31 nouns 220 derivation 29 -гч. -ч, -чин 149 -лга, -вч, -уур 149 attributive use 56 166 gender 29 nouns from verbs 231 plurals 24 30 101 223 Russian words 167 noun cases 19 ablative -aac 23 62 101 accusative -ыг 36 49 82 short form 190 comitative - Tan 37 dative/locative -д 24 69 double declension 196 genitive -ын 23 29 190

noun cases cont. instrumental -aap 61 69 suffixless (nominative) 62 numbers approximate -аад 148 cardinal 43 57 111 186 239 + dat./loc. 107 case suffixes 240 collective -уул(аа) 44 decimals 186 distributive ner neren 143 fractions 186 limited -xan 148 ordinal -дажь 100 -дугаар 106 239 months, years 106 telephone numbers 167 particles бол (final) 118 дахь/дэх 100 л 88 нар 24 учир 68 g 83 place and direction 44 56 62 postpositions 39 232 руу/рүү/луу/лүү 62 пит 143 225 pronouns 224 demonstrative 44 interrogative 225 personal 24 36 49 61 101 224 possessive 25 40 190 reflexive -aa (noun) 49 163 (verbal noun) 63 Russian words 167 174 superlative 78 temperatures 141 time 78 242 topic indicators 101 verbs 226 авах 195

болох 49 89 гэж 58 63 195 erex 189 тэгэх 69 83 узэх 195 яаж 39 77 83 89 verb: converbs concessive -By 125 132 conditional -6an 82 107 207 continuous -caap 105 imperfective -x 26 118 modal -H 110 opportune -Hraa 167 optative -aacam 133 perfective -aaд 60 70 190 successive -HryyT 156 temporal -хлаар 133 134 -магц 134 terminal -тал 105 verb: derivational suffixes causative -yyn- 88 110 162 -Jr- 207 cooperative (reciprocal) -mintensive -чих- 87 163 190 participatory -uraa- 38 89 passive -гд-, -д-, -т- 111 verbs, interrogative, 39 69 77 83 89 verbs from adjectives 144 verb: imperative, voluntative etc. admonitory -yy3an 173 concessive -Tyran 87 imperative future -aapan, 48 negative 48 polite -r/-rryn 87 polite -aay 99 present (stem) 38 48 short action -аадах 162 voluntative -xx 77 -сугай 156

verb: verbal nouns short action -aanaxus 162 want to, need to recent now 48 of agent -14 29 149 accusative case ending 196 would like - маар байна 38 48 imperfective -aa 63 129 iterative -даг 25 possibility - rya and - raa 77 perfective -can 25 191 -лггүй 126 present-future -x 25 verb: tenses + -can etc. 99 118 past definite -B 68 past finite -xx99 58 + dative/locative 'when' 173 past perfect -лаа 39 48 70 88 + reflexive 174 present-future -Ha 19 + юмсан 62 past tense negation 63 weather 98 140 tense sequence 63 70 word-pairs 29 129

Addenda: Mongols disagree whether the interrogative particles after -ryx (page 30) and руу/луу (page 62) should be юу от юу (page 19); the classical Mongolian script makes no distinction. In Mongolian Cyrillic the word xan 'khan' is sometimes written жаан because the intervocalic 'g' in the classical Mongolian 'qagan' has been replaced by a long vowel in the modern language. In theory xann is reserved for Genghis Khan, but in practice there is confusion (pages 201, 202 and 205). The text says сайн хоол for 'good food' (pages 75 and 90), but сайхан хоол is more usual. On page 46, one might also say, for 'How long are you going to stay in Mongolia': Та нар Монголд аль хэр удах вэ? (аль хэр: 'how long?'). And the reply could be: Ирэх сарын сүүл хүртэл (сүүл: 'tail', e.g. of a sheep). On page 51 Та ундаасч байна уу? means literally 'Would you like something to drink?' (yenaa, a soft drink), while 'Are you thirsty?' is Та цангаж байна уу? (цангаа, thirst).

## Suffix index

-(r)aa/oo/ee/ss (reflexive) 49 163 -(r)aa/oo/ee/se (verbal noun) 63 -аад (numerals) 148 -(г)аад/оод/ээд/ээд 60 -аадах/оодох/өөдөх/ээдэх 162 -аадахаарай/ээдхээрэй, etc. 162 -аадахаач/өөдөхөөч/ээдэхээч 162 -аадахъя/оодохъё/өөдөхье/ээдэхье 162 -(г)аар/оор/өөр/ээр/иар 61 -аарай/оорой/еерэй/ээрэй 48 -(г)авс/оос/еес/ээс/нас 23 -аасай/оосой/еесэй/ээсэй 133 99 гес/гоо/гав--бал/бол/бөл/бөл 82 -в/ав/ив/ов/ев/эв 68 -вал/вол/вол/вэл 82 -втар/втор 127 -вч/авч/овч/овч/эвч 125 -r/ar/or/er/er 87 -гд- 111 -гтун/гтүн 87 -гуй 30 PIE/PIO/PIO/PIE/PI--гчин 149 -д- 111 -д 30 -д/т/ад/иц/од/ед/эд 24 -д-оор, -д-ын 197 -даг/дог/дөг/дэг 25

-дахь/дэх 100

-дугаар/дугээр 106 -дүү 127 -m/q 26 -**жээ/чээ** 58 -ийг/ыг/г 36 **-ий/гийн/ын/ны/ы/ж** 23 -ийн-д 196 -лаа/лоо/лее/лээ 39 -JTT- 207 -лгүй яах вэ 77 -лгай 77 -лттуй 126 -лц- 38 -маар/моор/меер/меер 38 -магц/могц/мегц/мэгц 134 -н/ан/он/эн 110 -на/но/не/нэ 19 -нгаа/нгоо/нгее/нгээ 167 -нгуут/нгүүт 156 -c 30 -caap/coop/ceep/ceep 105 -сан/сон/сон/сон 25 -сугай/сугэй 156 -T- 111 -T 57 -таа/тоо/тее/тээ 120 -тай/той/тэй 37 -тал/тол/тел/тел 105 -той-г 197 -тугай/түгэй 87 -(н)(ч)ууд/үүд/д 30

-х/хан/хон/хөн/хэн 19 148 -уузай/үүзэй 173 -x/xx 236 -уул/үүл- 88 -хлаар/хлоор/хлөөр/хлээр 133 -уул(аа)/үүл(аа) 44 -цгаа- 38 -yyp/yyp 149 -чих- 87 -ууштай 38 -x/ax/Hx/ox/ex/ex 25 -шаа/шээ 44 -mry# 48 -х + -ад 173 -ъя/-ье/я/e/ё 77 -х + -юмсан 62 -х + -сан 99

## Bibliography

#### Mongol-English dictionaries

- Bawden, C. R. (1997) Mongolian-English Dictionary, London and New York: Kegan Paul International.
- Hangin, J. G. and Krueger, J. R. (1986) A Modern Mongolian-English Dictionary, Indiana University Press: Bloomington (recent reprints).
- Lessing, F. D. (ed.) (1960) Mongolian-English Dictionary, Berkeley: University of California Press, (recent reprints; ordered according to own system of transcription of classical script, with Cyrillic key).

#### **English-Mongol dictionaries**

- Akim, G. (1995) Concise Dictionary of English-Mongolian and Mongolian-English Proverbs, Ulan Bator: Il Tovchoo.
- Altangerel, D. (1997) Mongol-angli tol': Mongolian-English Dictionary, Ulan Bator: Interpress Printing Company.
- Hangin, J. G. (1970, reprinted 1992) A Concise English-Mongolian Dictionary, Bloomington: Indiana University Press.
- Narangerel, S. (1994) English-Mongolian-Russian Legal Dictionary, Ulan Bator: Mongol Tsaaz Khuuli Co.

#### **Grammars and Phrasebooks**

- Kullman, R. (1996) Mongol khelzüi/Mongolian Grammar, Hong Kong: Jensco Ltd.
- Sanders, A. J. K. and Bat-Ireedüi, J. (1995) Mongolian Phrasebook, Hawthorn, Australia: Lonely Planet.

#### **Books about Mongolia**

- Bawden, C. R. (1989) The Modern History of Mongolia, London Kapan Paul International.
- Bruun, O. and Odgaard, O. (1996) Mongolia in Transition, Richmond VA Nordic Institute of Asian Studies and Curzon Press.
- Bulag, U. E. (1998) Nationalism and Hybridity in Mongolia, Oxford: Clarendon Press.
- Goldstein, M. C. and Beall, C. M. (1994) The Changing World of Mongolia's Nomads, Sevenoaks: Odyssey Guides.
- Greenway, P., Storey, R. and Lafitte, G. (1997) Mongolia: A Travel Survival Kit, Hawthorn, Australia: Lonely Planet.
- Man, J. (1997) Gobi: Tracking the Desert, London: Weidenfeld and Nicolson.
- Morgan, D. (1987) The Mongols, Oxford: Basil Blackwell.
- Nordby, J. (1993) World Bibliographical Series: Mongolia, Oxford and Santa Barbara: Clio Press.
- Onon, U. (1990) The History and the Life of Chinggis Khan, Leiden and New York: Brill.
- Sanders, A. J. K. (1996) Historical Dictionary of Mongolia, Lanham and London: Scarecrow Press.
- Severin, T. (1991) In Search of Genghis Khan, London: Flutchinson.

MONGOLIAN

COLLOQUIAL MONGOLIAN is easy to use and completely up to date!

Written by experienced teachers of the language, COLLOQUIAL MONGOLIAN offers a step-by-step approach to written and spoken Mongolian. No previous knowledge of the language is required.

#### Features include:

- guide to reading and writing the alphabet
- lively dialogues in true-to-life situations
- concise grammar explanations
- a variety of exercises with full answer key, grammar summary, suffix index and two-way glossary
- explanatory notes on Mongolian culture and customs

By the end of this rewarding course you will be able to communicate confidently and effectively in Mongolian in a broad range of everyday situations.

120 minutes of audio material, recorded on either two cassettes or two CDs, is available to accompany this course. Recorded by native speakers, this will help you perfect your pronunciation, listening and speaking skills.

Cover photograph: Courtesy of Alan J. K. Sanders

11 New Fetter Lane, London EC4P 4EE

29 West 35th Street, New York NY 10001

www.routledge.com

Printed in Great Britain



